KIM IL SUNG
WORKS
WORKING PEOPLE OF THE WHOLE WORLD, UNITE!
KIM IL SUNG

WORKS

29

January–December 1974

FOREIGN LANGUAGES PUBLISHING HOUSE
PYONGYANG, KOREA
1987
CONTENTS

NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1974 ...................................................................................................................... 1

LET US CONSOLIDATE AND DEVELOP THE GREAT
SUCCESES IN BUILDING A SOCIALIST RURAL COMMUNITY

Speech Delivered at the National Congress
on Agriculture, January 10, 1974 ................................................................. 14

ON THE DUTIES OF THE SECRETARIES
OF RI PARTY COMMITTEES

Speech Delivered before the Secretaries of Ri Party
Committees, January 14, 1974 ................................................................. 38

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY L’UNITA,
ORGAN OF THE ITALIAN COMMUNIST PARTY

January 29, 1974 ............................................................................................................. 59

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS PUT BY THE CHIEF EDITOR
OF THE YUGOSLAV NEWSPAPER VECERNJE NOVOSTI

February 22, 1974 ........................................................................................................... 70

CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE TO THE TENTH
CONGRESS OF THE GENERAL ASSOCIATION
OF KOREAN RESIDENTS IN JAPAN

February 23, 1974 ........................................................................................................... 79

TALK TO THE DELEGATION OF THE GOVERNMENT
OF THE ALGERIAN DEMOCRATIC AND PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC

March 2-3, 1974 .............................................................................................................. 83
THE PEOPLES OF THE THIRD WORLD ADVANCING UNDER THE UPLIFTED BANNER OF INDEPENDENCE WILL CERTAINLY WIN THEIR REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE

Speech at a Mass Rally in Pyongyang to Welcome Houari Boumedienne, President of the Council of Revolution and Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic, March 4, 1974 ............................................................. 99

ON PROMOTING A FRESH ADVANCE IN SOCIALIST ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION

Speech at the National Industrial Congress, March 7, 1974 ...................................................... 112
1. On Attaining the Goals of the Six-Year Plan Ahead of Schedule ............................................. 112
2. On the Ten Long-Term Goals of Socialist Economic Construction ...................................... 126
3. On the Tasks of Shop Managers of Factories and Enterprises ............................................... 129

ON ABOLISHING THE TAX SYSTEM

A Law Adopted by the Fifth Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea at Its Third Session, March 21, 1974 ....................................................................................................................... 136

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY THE CHIEF EDITOR OF AL SAHAF A, ORGAN OF THE SUDANESE GOVERNMENT

April 25, 1974 ........................................................................................................................................ 142

ON SOME TASKS FOR IMPROVING EDUCATION IN SCHOOLS

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, May 3, 1974 ................................................................. 152

ON ACCELERATING THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE T AEDONGGANG POWER STATION

Speech Delivered to the Consultative Meeting of the Officials in Charge of the Construction of the Taedonggang Power Station, May 8, 1974 ......................................................... 166

2
ON FURTHER STRENGTHENING PARTY WORK

A Letter to Those Attending a Short Course for the Party’s Organizational Workers, July 31, 1974 ................................................................. 320

1. On Strengthening the Party Ranks and Organizations Still Further ................................................................. 321

2. On Adhering Strictly to the Mass Line of the Party .................................................................................... 327

3. On Strengthening the Party’s Guidance of the Building of Socialism ......................................................... 332

4. On Improving the Methods and Style of Party Work ................................................................................ 335

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY A DELEGATION OF THE NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF SENEGALESE JOURNALISTS

August 21, 1974 ................................................................................................................................. 340

TALK TO A PANAMANIAN JOURNALIST DELEGATION

September 1, 1974 .......................................................................................................................... 353

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS PUT BY A DELEGATION OF ARGENTINIAN JOURNALISTS

September 18, 1974 .......................................................................................................................... 370

TALK TO THE DIRECTOR OF THE DA HO EXPRESS, THE OFFICIAL NEWSPAPER OF THE DAHOMEYAN GOVERNMENT

September 19, 1974 .......................................................................................................................... 381

ON THE SITUATION IN OUR COUNTRY AND TASKS OF THE LEAGUE OF KOREAN YOUTH IN JAPAN

Speech to the Group of Art and Sports Delegates of Korean Youth in Japan, the Second Group of Korean Educational Workers in Japan and the Group of Korean High School Students in Japan Visiting Home, September 24, 1974 ......................................................... 400

1. On the Situation in Our Country .............................................................................................................. 401

2. On the Tasks Facing the League of Korean Youth in Japan ........................................................................ 422

THE US IMPERIALIST ARMY OF AGGRESSION MUST WITHDRAW UNCONDITIONALLY FROM SOUTH KOREA
Speech at a Mass Rally in Pyongyang to Welcome the Party and Government Delegation of the Syrian Arab Republic, October 1, 1974.................432

TALK TO THE DIRECTOR OF THE ECUADORIAN PUBLISHING HOUSE VOLUNTAD

October 9, 1974....................................................................................................................442

TALK TO A DELEGATION OF THE GENERAL COUNCIL OF TRADE UNIONS AND THE LIAISON COUNCIL OF NEUTRAL TRADE UNIONS OF JAPAN

October 12, 1974................................................................................................................455

LET US DEVELOP AGRICULTURE IN THE MOUNTAIN AREAS STILL FURTHER

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Agricultural Scientists in Jagang Province, November 2, 1974..........................................................478

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS RAISED BY AUSTRALIAN JOURNALISTS

November 4, 1974..............................................................................................................503

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS PUT BY THE GENERAL MANAGER OF THE KUWAIT NEWSPAPER AL QABAS

November 6, 1974..............................................................................................................515

SOME PROBLEMS ARISING IN THE COMPLETE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE THESES ON THE RURAL QUESTION

Speech at the Fourth Session of the Fifth Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, November 29, 1974.................................527

CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE

To the Workers, Technicians and Office Employees Who Have Participated in the Construction of the Large Blast Furnace of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, December 31, 1974........................................544
NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1974

Dear comrades,

We have seen out the year 1973, the year of glory which witnessed great successes in the revolutionary struggle and construction, and are welcoming a hopeful new year 1974, which will sparkle with a new struggle and victory.

Allow me to offer, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, warm New Year congratulations and greetings to our heroic working class and cooperative farmers and all other working people who worked courageously for socialist construction last year.

Allow me also to extend warm New Year greetings to the valiant officers and men of the People’s Army and People’s Security Forces, the public security personnel, Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen and Young Red Guardsmen who are stoutly defending the security of the motherland and the gains of the revolution.

I extend my New Year greetings to the south Korean revolutionaries and democratic figures, young people, students and people of all levels who are fighting courageously for the democratization of south Korean society and the independent, peaceful reunification of the motherland.

I warmly congratulate the members of the delegation of Koreans in Japan headed by Comrade Hong Pong Su, Vice-Chairman of the Central Standing Committee of Chongryon (the General Association
of Korean Residents in Japan), and the members of different Chongryon delegations who are greeting the New Year with us in the homeland, and extend my New Year greetings to Comrade Han Tok Su and all the officials of Chongryon and the Koreans in Japan and to all other Koreans abroad.

The year 1973 was a year of victory in which brilliant successes were gained, both internally and externally, politically and economically, in the fight to fulfil the magnificent programme put forward by the Fifth Congress of the Party.

Last year our people worked hard to carry out the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions under the leadership of the Party, holding high the banner of three revolutions, and scored great achievements in all the political, economic and cultural fields.

Last year we brought about a great improvement in the work of revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society by keeping the ideological revolution decisively ahead of all other work.

An effective campaign was carried out to strengthen organizational life and to establish the habit of study amongst Party members and the working people. As a result, all of them now take an active part in organizational life and the revolutionary habit of study, the habit of studying while working and working while studying, has been firmly established throughout the country.

Last year the revolutionary working class and Party nuclei and young intellectuals performed a very important part in revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society. Our Party nuclei and young intellectuals mixed with the working people and worked hard to combat all shades of outmoded ideas and carried on ideological education tirelessly. In particular, the junior cadres of factories, enterprises and cooperative farms took part in all work with the attitude of a master, and the cadres led the masses in working hard.

With the vigorous progress of the ideological revolution last year, all Party members and working people were armed more firmly with the Juche idea of our Party and the monolithic ideological system of the Party was thoroughly established in the whole of society. The level
of political consciousness and revolutionary enthusiasm of Party members and the working people were raised immeasurably and everyone acquired the habit of carrying out his assignment in a responsible manner with the attitude of a master towards the revolution.

Great success was also achieved in the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution.

The most important task facing us in the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution last year was to concentrate efforts on the rural technical revolution to meet 1974, the momentous tenth anniversary of the publication of the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*.

Our heroic working class, infinitely faithful to the Party, built the Kum Song Tractor Plant into a large-scale, modern plant in a very short period and mass-produced tractors and sent them to the rural districts. This raised the number of tractors for every 100 hectares of cultivated land to 2-2.5, and in the plain areas to 3-4, last year.

The workers and technicians of the Sungni General Motor Works successfully hit the target of vehicle production by displaying all their ingenuity and creativeness, thus making a great contribution to the rural technical revolution.

Last year a great deal was done to develop fertilizer plants, and the material foundations were laid for applying more than one ton of chemical fertilizer per hectare in terms of weight and over 200 kilogrammes in terms of ingredients. In particular, apatite mines were developed on a wide scale, which made it possible to produce an abundance of phosphatic fertilizer from domestic raw materials. And the foundation was laid for the adequate supply of microelement fertilizer suited to the properties of the soil and the specific qualities of crops.

Last year many officials who graduated from agricultural universities and young intellectuals went to the rural districts and removed the conservatism and empiricism which remained among officials, gave scientific and technical guidance in farm work, strictly
observed the principles of the right crop for the right soil and the right crop at the right time and thoroughly established a scientific system of fertilizer application.

The active progress of the rural technical revolution and the improvement of guidance over farm work led to a great change in agricultural production. Our cooperative farmers, infinitely loyal to the Party, carried out all the farm work effectively and once again reaped an unprecedentedly rich harvest last year, and opened up broad prospects for successfully fulfilling the assignment of grain production under the Six-Year Plan.

Last year, in the heavy industry sector, the technical revolution was successfully continued to bring about real progress in the work of mechanizing, semi-automating and automating the production processes, markedly lessen burdensome labour, save a great deal of manpower and bring about a further improvement in production. In particular, workers, technicians and young intellectuals took an active part in the technical innovation movement and put forward many new technical proposals. I am very satisfied with this.

Last year the Party and the state paid a great deal of attention to transportation and established various new transport systems and, at the same time, worked hard to establish new shipbuilding bases and expand the existing ones. We have thus laid the solid material and technical foundations for building a great many ships of various types, including large ships, from this year onwards.

In the light industry sector we built many textile mills and knitwear, footwear, daily necessities and foodstuff factories and established a clothing factory in each county and workers’ settlement. As a result, we are now in a position to ensure a better proportionate development of heavy and light industries and supply the people with a greater amount of high-quality consumer goods and lessen many of the housekeeping burdens of women.

The technical revolution was energetically carried out in all branches of the national economy and economic construction accelerated rapidly, with the result that the foundation of an
independent national economy has been more firmly consolidated. Although the world is being swept by very serious economic changes and many countries are undergoing a fuel crisis and various other economic difficulties, the economy of our country is steadily developing on a very stable basis, free from the impact of these worldwide economic changes and crises. This provides added proof of the correctness and great vitality of our Party’s line of building an independent socialist national economy.

Last year great success was also achieved in the endeavours to carry out the cultural revolution.

Last year we adopted the Law on Universal Compulsory Ten-Year Education at the Second Session of the Fifth Supreme People’s Assembly and made vigorous efforts to put it into practice. Thanks to the energetic exertions of all the people, a great advance was made last year in introducing universal compulsory ten-year education, and it has already been introduced fully in some areas. There is no doubt that universal compulsory ten-year education will be completely introduced ahead of schedule if our people make sustained efforts with such a high degree of enthusiasm as now.

As in school education, great strides were made in the work of bringing up the preschool children under public care. Many nursery schools and kindergartens were built and their operation was improved, with the result that more than 3.5 million children are being raised in nursery schools and kindergartens at state and public expense and women are able to go to work free from cares.

Last year the habit of study was thoroughly established and technical expertise was widely disseminated amongst the working people to raise their overall technical and cultural levels significantly.

Last year we carried out a strong campaign to introduce refined practices in production work and daily life in the urban and rural areas. The result was that the factories and enterprises were kept neat and tidy, the appearance of town and country underwent a radical change and a great improvement was effected in the way of life of the working people. The mass movement for introducing water and bus services in
the rural areas led to the completion of this work in many local areas.

Last year our writers and artists created revolutionary and militant literary and art works, contributing greatly to the revolutionization and working-classization of the working people and widely demonstrating to the whole world the vitality of the socialist literature and art of our country. In particular, our writers, artists and pressmen went to the production sites and gave great encouragement to the workers and peasants in the production drive, while tempering themselves at the same time. The Party highly appreciates the contribution made by the writers, artists and pressmen to the fulfilment of the three revolutions through their revolutionary and militant literary, art and information activities and their direct participation in labour.

Last year our valiant officers and men of the People’s Army and People’s Security Forces further increased the combat capacities of their units and stoutly defended the security of the motherland and the people. Our public security personnel, with heightened revolutionary vigilance, firmly protected the socialist gains from the subversive activities and sabotage of the enemy, and the Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen and Young Red Guardsmen improved their combat preparedness by intensifying their combat and political training.

In welcoming the New Year, I express deep thanks to our heroic working class, cooperative farmers, working intellectuals, student youth, officers and men of the People’s Army and the People’s Security Forces, and the public security personnel, Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen and Young Red Guardsmen who have performed great deeds on all fronts of socialist construction, holding aloft the banner of the three revolutions.

Last year a great advance was also made in the fight for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

During that period, our people, with the active support and encouragement of the progressive people of the world, curbed and frustrated the schemes of the US imperialists and the south Korean reactionaries for the simultaneous admission of “two Koreas” to the United Nations, dealt a fatal blow at both internal and external forces
of division, who were bent on perpetuating the partition of Korea and brought about the disbandment of the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea”, the US imperialists’ tool of aggression and interference in our internal affairs. This is a brilliant victory for our Party’s line of independent and peaceful reunification.

Last year the south Korean young people, students and people again rose courageously in the national deliverance struggle, despite the “state of emergency” in which the fascist repression was so harsh. Now the south Korean young people, students and people are fighting resolutely against the anti-popular, treacherous acts of the south Korean authorities who are trampling on democracy, harshly suppressing the people and selling out the country and the nation to the US and Japanese aggressors. Their struggle is a just one for the right to existence and democracy, a patriotic fight to save the country and the nation and reunify the motherland.

Seeing the New Year in, I extend full support and encouragement to the just, patriotic fight of the south Korean young people, students and people for the democratization of south Korean society and the deliverance of the country and the nation.

The energetic external activities of our Party and the Government of our Republic last year raised the international position of the Republic and further strengthened the international solidarity of our revolution.

The Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Nations held in Algeria last year denounced the schemes of the US imperialists and the south Korean authorities to create “two Koreas”, expressed firm solidarity with the Korean people in their fight for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country, and unanimously adopted a resolution in full accord with our Party’s line of national reunification. At the 28th Session of the United Nations General Assembly many countries supported the line of our Party and the Government of our Republic for independent, peaceful reunification and displayed firm solidarity with the revolutionary cause of our people.

Greeting the New Year, I, in the name of all the Korean people,
offer warm congratulations and greetings to the peoples of the socialist countries, the newly independent states and many other countries of the world who have supported and encouraged our people’s fight for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

Comrades,

The year 1974 is a year when our people should strive with redoubled efforts to fulfil the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule. Whether we carry out the grand tasks of the Six-Year Plan put forward at the Fifth Congress of the Party ahead of the set time or not depends on how we carry out our tasks this year. All Party members and working people must make a decisive advance in the fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan by working hard for the early fulfilment of the national economic plan for this year.

This year we must turn the efforts of the whole Party and the whole state to capital construction and bring about a great improvement in construction.

The key to the fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan in all branches of the national economy ahead of schedule, lies in successful capital construction this year. The Central Committee of the Party defined this year as a year of construction and decided to concentrate on capital construction.

All Party members and working people must make another great advance in building socialism by accelerating construction at a new Chollima speed, a new Pyongyang speed. This year we must concentrate our efforts on the expansion project of the Kim Chaek Iron Works, the expansion project of the April 13 Iron Works, the second-stage project of the Sodusu Power Station and the second-stage project of the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant, the construction of the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant, the Taedonggang Power Station, the Youth Chemical Works, the Nampho Chemical Works, the Sunchon Cement Factory and other major construction projects. We must hasten their construction by the method of finishing one project at a time and thus bring them into operation at the earliest possible date.
An important duty facing us this year is to fulfil the main tasks of the rural technical revolution as set forth in the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* and to boost agricultural production greatly.

This year we shall celebrate the tenth anniversary of the publication of the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*. In accordance with the line laid down in the theses, this year we should effect an improvement in the rural technical revolution by strengthening the support of towns to the rural areas and the assistance of industry to agriculture in every way and by giving active, nationwide help to the country areas. In the engineering industry, in particular, large numbers of modern farm machines such as tractors, lorries and tractor-drawn farm machines should be manufactured and supplied to the rural areas; in the chemical industry, a wide variety of high-quality chemical fertilizers and agricultural chemicals must be produced in large quantities.

By making a decisive advance in the rural technical revolution this year, we should greet the tenth anniversary of the publication of the theses more impressively, relieve the peasants of burdensome labour to a great extent and capture the grain height of the Six-Year Plan without fail.

In the mining industry, existing installations must be replaced by large, modern, high-speed equipment, and transport must be diversified to boost production at the present mines. At the same time, new mines must be developed rapidly to increase the ore output, and the output of nonferrous metal ores, in particular, must be resolutely increased. In order to deal with the rapidly increasing nonferrous metal ores quickly, the use of equipment should be further increased at the nonferrous metallurgical works, and a new, large modern nonferrous metallurgical base has to be built in the Tanchon area.

In accordance with the line advanced by the Seventh Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party, this year we should increase investments in the coal industry, replace the coal mine facilities with large, modern ones and give absolute priority to
prospecting and tunnelling at these mines to increase coal output considerably.

The engineering industry should devote its efforts this year to the production of equipment which has already been ordered, and must manufacture and supply this equipment to various branches of the national economy without any interruption.

In order to develop the fishing industry and marine transport and carry on foreign trade successfully, it is necessary to develop the shipbuilding industry further and build many large ships. This year the workers and technicians in the shipbuilding industry must think boldly and get down to building many large ships, over the 10,000-ton class, by relying on the existing foundation of the shipbuilding industry. The production of engines of various types should be increased in step with the growth of shipbuilding and the base for manufacturing shipping accessories must be consolidated so that these will be produced in larger quantities, and be of high quality.

In light industry, locally-controlled industry should be extensively developed, in conjunction with centrally-controlled industry, to bring about an improvement in the production of consumer goods. The provincial, city and county Party organizations and senior officials must build light industry factories on a large scale, including cornstarch factories, foodstuff factories, textile mills, knitwear mills, clothing factories, furniture factories and daily necessities factories by tapping local reserves from the standpoint of a master, so that a wider variety of high-quality daily necessities can be produced in greater quantity.

This year we should speed up socialist economic construction dynamically so as to consolidate the material and technical foundations of the country and make the people’s life more prosperous and cultured. By doing this, we will bring into full play the inexhaustible vitality and superiority of our advanced socialist system.

This is the era of science and technology; today the main reserves for the growth of production in our country lie in their rapid development. The scientists and technicians must increase their
scientific research from the Juche standpoint and solve the scientific and technical problems arising in the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution and the Six-Year Plan successfully. They have to raise the level of our country’s science and technology to the world level as soon as possible.

In the domain of education the principle of socialist education must be thoroughly applied to improve this work; the material foundation of schools must be strengthened and a revolutionary habit of studying has to be established amongst the teachers and students.

Writers and artists must create a large number of revolutionary and popular literary and art works, which will help arm the working people firmly with the Juche idea of our Party and rouse them to work hard for the revolution and construction.

This year, too, we have to continue to make a great effort in the work of increasing the defence capabilities of the country. The officers and men of the People’s Army and the People’s Security Forces should arm themselves firmly with the Juche idea of our Party and energetically conduct combat training to increase the fighting power of their units in every way, and they should always keep themselves taut and prepared. The Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen and the Young Red Guardsmen must increase and improve combat and political training, while successfully carrying out their revolutionary tasks, and thus prepare themselves as trustworthy reserves and replacements for the People’s Army.

For the successful fulfilment of the enormous revolutionary tasks confronting us this year, it is necessary to increase the fighting capacity of the Party organizations and determinedly raise the sense of responsibility and role of senior officials.

The Party organizations at all levels should give absolute priority to the ideological revolution in order to continue to broaden the work for the revolutionization and working-classization of all the working people. They should do work with people well to bring into full play the revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activity of the working people.
The senior officials of the Party, state and economic organizations should rid themselves of subjectivism, bureaucratism, formalism, expediency and all other vestiges of obsolete ideas, strive to enhance their Party spirit, working-class spirit and the spirit of faithful service to the people, and apply the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method fully. The officials of the state and economic bodies, in particular, must further improve enterprise management and scrupulously carry out the work of managing the economy as required by the Taean work system and the new system of agricultural guidance, so that the daily, monthly and quarterly national economic plans are fulfilled without fail.

This year we shall also work tirelessly to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country. We shall make a sincere effort to implement the three principles of national reunification laid down in the July 4 North-South Joint Statement thoroughly and combine our strength with all the progressive forces of south Korea to fight resolutely against internal and external divisionists who are bent on perpetuating the country’s partition.

This year the Chongryon organizations and the Korean nationals in Japan must work even harder to expedite the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and make unceasing endeavours to strengthen international solidarity with the Japanese people and the progressive people of the world. The Chongryon organizations must carry out a powerful campaign to establish the ideological system of Juche more thoroughly, strengthen the unity and cohesion of their ranks and revolutionize all the Korean nationals in Japan.

Today, the general international situation is developing in favour of the revolutionary cause of our people. Our Party and the Government of our Republic will strive this year, too, to strengthen solidarity with all the progressive people of the world and wage the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle with redoubled vigour.

Comrades,

The revolutionary tasks confronting us this year are enormous and very difficult. All Party members and working people should continue to make innovations and to advance without slackening their
heightened revolutionary spirit in the slightest degree and must effect another great revolutionary improvement in socialist construction. By doing this, they will overfulfil the national economic plan for this year and lay solid grounds for carrying out all the assignments of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule.

Holding aloft the banner of Marxism-Leninism, the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea, and united rock-firm around the Central Committee of the Party, let us all march forward to fulfil the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the motherland.
Comrades,

On behalf of the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic and on my own behalf, I should like to express warm thanks to all our cooperative farmers, management workers of the cooperative farms, Party workers and senior officials who have worked conscientiously on the agricultural front to develop our socialist rural economy, to reap an unusually rich harvest last year, and to the working class, state officials, teachers, young people and students and officers and men of the People’s Army and the People’s Security Forces who have given generous assistance to the rural areas.

Last year many cooperative farms made a tremendous advance by doubling or more than doubling their 1972 output. The world knows no precedent in the history of agriculture for doubling or more than doubling agricultural output in a single year. We can say that last year we set an agricultural record which startled the world. This great victory in the development of agriculture is possible only in Chollima Korea, a victory that can only be won by our heroic people firmly united around the Workers’ Party of Korea.
I am highly satisfied with these successes.
I am sure that all the comrades present at this congress are satisfied with them. And I am certain, too, that all the Korean people listened with excitement to the proud reports that you made on the rostrum of this congress and applauded them.
I highly appreciate the proud achievements you made in agricultural production last year and wish you new victories in building up the socialist rural community.
During this past week we have summed up last year’s great victory in agriculture. We must consolidate these successes and create a further improvement in agriculture on this foundation, so that in 1974 and 1975 we unfailingly hit the grain target envisaged in the Six-Year Plan. I am delighted that all the agricultural workers are confident of their ability to do this and are determined on a positive advance in agricultural production.
Ten years ago we published the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*. We put forward the theses on the rural question at a time when people in capitalist countries were slandering the agricultural policy of socialist countries, claiming that they were useless at farming, and that they could never catch up with the capitalist countries in agriculture however hard they tried.
When we published these theses, some of our own people, obsessed with capitalist ideas, cast doubts on whether we could carry out the tasks set in the theses.
Our analysis at this congress of the construction of a socialist rural community during the past period has proved beyond doubt that our agricultural achievements are tremendous and, in particular, that material and technical foundations have been completed and full ideological preparations have been made to carry out these tasks. Because our Party is firmly resolved to capture both the material and ideological fortresses in building socialism and communism, no fortress is, for us, impregnable and we shall certainly complete the tasks defined in the theses successfully.
In her speech yesterday a girl team leader said that, with two
tractors working every 100 hectares of cultivated land, her team had mechanized farm work last year, thus considerably reducing the farmers’ backbreaking work. She expressed her resolve that, given just two more tractors for each 100 hectares, her team would, in line with Party policy, bring about the comprehensive mechanization of farm work, enabling each farmer to cultivate 10 hectares of land completely freed from heavy work. And many comrades at this congress made good speeches similar to hers.

When we published the theses on the socialist rural question many people called them idealistic. And yet today the theses are becoming a reality. Now we can say with confidence that we have moved into the era of modern, industrialized agriculture.

Listening to your speeches at this congress I remembered a conversation I had in 1947 with a peasant called Kim Je Won at Namuri Plain in Jaeryong.

Kim Je Won was a patriotic peasant and a peasant hero; he was the first to donate rice to the country out of patriotism in the year following the agrarian reform. He died a hero in the Fatherland Liberation War, as becomes a peasant of the Republic, courageously fighting the enemy up to the moment that he laid down his life defending the Republic. We will always remember him.

When we met Kim Je Won in 1947 we asked him which he thought was more important; to build schools with the proceeds of the rice donated by our peasants to the state or to buy tractors from foreign countries. He said it was a good idea for the state to buy tractors for the peasants with the proceeds of the rice donated, because rich peasants exploited them with their draught animals even after the peasants had become the masters of the land as a result of the agrarian reform; but he added that after hearing what the General said today, he thought it would be better to build schools with the proceeds of the rice. I proposed to him to set up farm machine hire stations on the one hand and build a university on the other, although the country was not yet rich enough to do so.

It seems like only yesterday when we chatted with Kim Je Won and
made this resolution. But 26 years have passed, and during these years there have been tremendous changes in our country areas. Today, there are large numbers of tractors and tractor drivers and the peasants farm with machines. And young intellectuals trained at Kim Il Sung University, agricultural universities and other higher educational institutions have gone out to the rural areas to help in the three revolutions and guide farming on scientific lines. What a joyous and proud thing this is!

The steps taken by our Party after liberation were absolutely correct and peasant Kim Je Won was also right. Remembering that time strengthens my conviction once more that when the Party Central Committee works with the peasants, nothing is impossible.

Our Party has stuck firmly to the principle of pressing ahead with the fight to occupy both the material and the ideological fortresses to create a socialist rural community. Our Party has built a host of factories for tractors, chemical fertilizer, and trailing farm machinery as well as other factories to equip agriculture and power stations on the one hand and, on the other, has founded many universities and colleges to educate large numbers of new intellectuals well armed with Marxism-Leninism and our Party’s Juche idea. Young intellectuals, trained in our universities, have gone to rural areas to carry on the dynamic work of teaching our agricultural workers our Party’s monolithic ideology.

Our Party has so far achieved enormous successes in building up a socialist rural community by pressing ahead to capture both the ideological and the material fortresses. There was a time when our people, far removed from modern civilization, did not even know what industry meant. But now they have completed the irrigation and electrification of agriculture and are now dealing with overall mechanization and use of chemicals; they have entered a new age of modern, industrialized agriculture. This is a great victory for our Party’s revolutionary agricultural policy.

In this age of the overall modernization and industrialization of agriculture in our country, we shall soon be able to free our farmers for
ever from the backbreaking work that has for thousands of years been theirs. This delights our people immensely and greatly inspires the revolutionary people of the world.

Like you comrades present at this congress, I am proud and overjoyed about our people’s great achievements in building a socialist rural community. I firmly believe that it will not be long before our agriculture is modern and fully industrialized and our country areas are converted into an earthly paradise with a high standard of civilization.

Our Party and our people’s revolutionary path to build socialist country areas was by no means always smooth.

Soon after liberation, our Party carried through the agrarian reform, confiscated the landlords’ land and distributed it free to the small and landless peasants; then came a struggle against exploitation by rural usurers and rich farmers. After the war, our Party completed agricultural cooperativization, establishing an advanced socialist rural economic system, that freed the peasants from exploitation and oppression for ever; then we abolished the agricultural tax in kind to relieve the peasants of tax burdens. Our Party has turned the country into a land free from exploitation and oppression, where there is no agricultural tax in kind, a land where all pupils and students get free education and working people get free medical care, a happy land where the people’s lives are secure from the moment they are born.

Fighting to build a socialist rural community, we also faced an acute class struggle, based on increased working-class support to the peasantry and a firmer worker-peasant alliance.

It was the worker-peasant alliance and the workers’ support to the peasants which really guaranteed success in building a socialist countryside. Our working class supported and assisted the peasants in their battle to eliminate feudal land tenures and capitalism in the rural areas and set up an advanced socialist system. Once this system was established the state abolished agricultural tax in kind, supplied tractors and other kinds of farm machines to the rural districts and built modern housing for the peasants free. All these changes in our rural areas are a result of the thorough assistance our working class gave to the peasants.
Cooperative farmers should repay this active support. And they can do this only if they thoroughly working-classize and revolutionize themselves, farm with machines and chemicals by industrializing and modernizing agriculture quickly and work to convert cooperative property into the property of all the people and create a classless society along the lines shown in the theses on the rural question.

I hope that all cooperative farmers will consolidate their alliance with the working class, industrialize agriculture and bring in a classless society with enthusiastic working-class support as soon as possible, expediting the complete victory of socialism in the rural areas.

The path we are following is to build a classless society, without exploitation and oppression, a happy society where all the people, freed from heavy labour, work with ease to create ever more material wealth. However, a tiny handful of landlords, comprador capitalists and reactionaries in the south have turned south Korea into a society where “the rich get ever richer and the poor get ever poorer,” that is, where the wealthy amass larger fortunes, while those in want become still more impoverished. And they are hurling malicious slanders at our socialist system.

We must fight still more determinedly to frustrate every enemy manoeuvre and demonstrate all the superiority of our socialist system. We must completely deliver our farmers, who have already been freed from exploitation and oppression, from backbreaking work and build a happy rural community where every farmer lives a full and highly civilized life—a developed society without classes.

I believe that all the working people in agriculture will surely emerge victorious from the honourable revolutionary struggle to build a happy socialist rural community, a developed socialist and communist society.

This year we celebrate the tenth anniversary of the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*.

The theses on the rural question point out that the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions must be fully carried out and undivided ownership by all the people must be established in rural
areas to eliminate the differences between town and country, class distinctions between workers and peasants, and that we must build a classless society. It is no easy matter, but we are certain that we can achieve it. Through the last ten years of struggle we have laid a solid foundation for completing the tasks set out in the theses in a short span of time.

Today we have the solid material foundations needed for this.

Our country has large, modern tractor factories and motor vehicle works, as well as farm trailer machinery factories and tractor accessory factories in many areas. We used to consider how we could buy tractors from other countries and how much we should charge our peasants for tilling their fields with those tractors. Today, however, we produce large numbers of tractors of our own to send to the villages. We plough the land without collecting fees from the farmers. We also make all our own lorries, farm trailers, tractor accessories and tyres.

The number of tractor drivers—the vanguard in the rural technical revolution—has increased to tens of thousands. When we sent out the first few score of tractor drivers we had trained, we told them that they were the advance guard of the working class sent to the villages and that they must train thousands, tens of thousands, of new members of the working class. That wish has now come true. In our rural areas today there are tens of thousands of tractor drivers, and many of them are women.

In the tasks of technical revolution set out in the theses it is essential to produce many tractors and send them to the country areas. The state has already put great effort into the production of tractors and has supplied a number of them. But there are still not enough. When we visit villages and ask the cooperative farm chairmen or workteam leaders what their farming problems are, the answer is always the same: the shortage of tractors. Here at this congress on agriculture, too, many comrades have said that if they had more tractors their farming would improve.

As you know, immediately after liberation the state enforced the
agrarian reform and then lent money to the peasants so that they could buy draught oxen for their farms. But now, we must produce a tremendous number of tractors to replace them in the country areas.

The large, modern tractor factory built last year has enabled us to supply as many tractors as the farmers need. The state intends to produce many small tractors such as the Jonjin and Chungsong, for the villages in addition to Chollima and Phungnyon tractors.

We shall soon be able to do all our farm work with tractors. For this the number of tractors for every 100 hectares of arable land will have to rise to at least eight or nine. We are endeavouring to raise the number to six or seven during the current Six-Year Plan. So if we work hard for two or three years after we have completed the Six-Year Plan, the number will reach eight or nine. Then we shall have mechanized agriculture comprehensively and we shall be able to call our agriculture industrial.

A great success has also been achieved in our attempts to provide many lorries for the country areas. Last year we visited the Sungni General Motor Works and set the workers and technicians the task of increasing motor vehicle production rapidly, in order to complete the tasks involved in the technical revolution set out in the theses. In wholehearted response to the Party’s call, the workers there worked tirelessly day and night and fulfilled their production assignment splendidly last year.

Ten years ago, we put forward an ideal programme for industrializing agriculture and turning our peasants into workers. Today solid material foundations have been laid for accomplishing this quite soon. This is a great victory for our heroic working class in the fight to implement the theses and emancipate the peasantry from difficult, backbreaking work.

As we are observing the tenth anniversary of the theses this year, the senior agricultural officials and cooperative farmers must take another great step forward in agricultural production by waging a dynamic battle for the grain production goal envisaged in the Six-Year Plan. This will make it possible to strengthen the alliance between
working class and peasants and fulfil the tasks set out in the theses as soon as possible.

We have also built solid foundations for success in the ideological and cultural revolutions in the rural areas.

Our Party has given primary consideration to training a large number of able personnel for the successful accomplishment of the ideological and cultural revolutions side by side with the technical revolution in the country areas. A few years ago our Party took steps to set up an agricultural university, a medical university and educational universities in every province, so that every area could train its own agricultural technicians, public health workers, teachers and other specialists. The Party’s measures to set up comprehensive training centres in the provinces to train the specialists each area needed have already borne fruit. Experience has shown that the policy was undoubtedly correct.

Many young revolutionary intellectuals armed with Marxism-Leninism and our Party’s Juche idea are now working in our villages and at agricultural research institutes. They are discharging their duties well as educators who put over our Party’s revolutionary ideas to the peasants and are playing a vital role in fulfilling the tasks set out in the theses.

Our young intellectuals and young officials have a deep understanding of Party policies and have the indomitable courage to fight to get them carried through, and they make many constructive suggestions. Last summer, at the National Congress of Agricultural Activists young intellectuals who had gone into the country made good speeches. At the present congress, too, young intellectuals and rural officials came up with many constructive ideas.

Thanks to the energetic efforts of the young revolutionary intellectuals and rural officials, our agricultural technology has developed considerably during recent years and farming has been put on a scientific basis. One of the major factors of the bumper harvest in agriculture last year was the tireless efforts of the young intellectuals and rural officials to carry out the Party’s agricultural policy.
We have opened agricultural, medical, educational and other universities in every province. This has enabled us to train a large army of revolutionary intellectuals for the country areas who are capable of achieving the ideological and cultural revolutions with credit. If we work harder in the future and send scores of agricultural university graduates to every cooperative farm, our agriculture will develop very quickly and there will be great progress in building socialism in the country areas.

With the development of comprehensive cadre-training centres in the local areas and many universities being established or enlarged in the capital, solid foundations have been laid to create an army of a million intellectuals soon. This is due to the great efforts made by our Party in the past to educate the younger generation, despite all economic difficulties. No country has so many students as our country in proportion to the population. There are more than 240,000 regular students at our universities, colleges and higher technical schools now. In our present situation it is by no means easy to educate all our young people at state expense. However, we do not treat this high figure for students as a problem; we are very proud of it. The competent young people whom we trained by pulling in our belts, are working on the ideological and cultural fronts, actively contributing to transforming the whole of our society on revolutionary lines and improving its cultural standards. How fine and honourable this is!

By working tirelessly to carry out the tasks put forward in the theses, we have laid solid foundations for taking both ideological and material fortresses successfully for building socialism and communism. This is a base from which we can move still further forward in the days to come and an asset beyond price for a great victory in building socialism in the country areas.

While celebrating the tenth anniversary of the theses this year, we know with great pride and confidence that we shall fulfil nearly every task set out in them within the next 10 years, and prepare new theses on the rural question.

Comrades,
We must draw on our present successes and speed up our work in building socialism in the country areas.

Above all, we must continue to press ahead with the rural technical revolution.

We must fulfil the tasks of the rural technical revolution set out in the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*. Irrigation and electrification have been splendidly completed and mechanization and the application of chemicals are making successful progress in our countryside. The most urgent task confronting us today in the rural technical revolution is quickening the pace of finishing mechanizing and of using agricultural chemicals.

In order to mechanize and introduce the use of chemicals in agriculture rapidly, the rural areas must be supplied with more and better tractors and other modern farm machinery and with great quantities of different kinds of efficient chemical fertilizers and other agricultural chemicals. Meanwhile, land realignment must be conducted properly and tractor-repair centres built up in every county and province to make the best possible use of the tractors we have.

We should complete the comprehensive farm mechanization and introduction of chemicals in agriculture at an early date to make the machines and chemicals work on our farms. Thus we shall not only free all the farmers from hard work but also increase labour productivity substantially so that each farmer can tend more than five hectares of paddies or more than 10 hectares of fields and the eight-hour day can be introduced in agriculture as in industry. In other words, we must complete mechanization and the application of chemistry to industrialize all our farm work. This is the goal we aim to reach in the rural technical revolution.

All the agricultural officials attending this congress and the agricultural working people across the country must work courageously to reach this goal set by the Party, and make this congress a congress for mechanization and the use of chemicals in agriculture.

In order to succeed in our rural technical revolution, we must work well with scientists and technicians.
Thanks to our Party’s sound policy of educating our own personnel, large numbers of scientists and technicians have already been trained in our country. It is true that their qualifications are not very high because we had to train tremendous numbers in a short period, but we should not complain about this.

Today our intellectuals are working faithfully without pause in the interests of the Party and the revolution. Our factories and enterprises are all run by intellectuals whom we trained ourselves. Our intellectuals are quite dauntless. When we were making our first tractor, our technicians stripped a tractor and copied the parts one by one in order to manufacture the tractor. A great many modern factories, machines and equipment have all been made by our technicians through their own efforts. Although our scientists and technicians still lack experience and their technological level is still low, they will, from now onwards, broaden their experience and raise their technological level through their work. If we work well with scientists and technicians and stimulate them to action, we shall be able to develop our science and technology rapidly and step up our technical revolution without difficulty.

However, at present our senior officials are not doing their work well with scientists and technicians. The work of educating scientists and technicians is almost neglected once they have been assigned posts. As a result, many of them fail to understand their own merits and shortcomings and, contaminated with outworn ideas, do slipshod work.

Because of the failure to work with them well, our scientific and technological levels as a whole are not high enough and this is particularly so in agriculture, where science and technology are falling behind. At present, many countries are increasing grain production many times over by what they call the “green revolution”, or a full-scale improvement of seeds. But our scientists and technicians are not doing this work properly.

The main reason why our science and technology are lagging behind is that our Party organizations and senior officials have not
worked well with the scientists and technicians. If we are to carry out
the technical revolution, we must work well with those who have
acquired technology, that is, those who have graduated from
institutions of higher learning or managed to acquire technical
qualifications through private study.

The most important thing in work with scientists and technicians is
to set them definite study assignments.

We must give them specific assignments, telling them what
problems they should study and what books they should read.
Otherwise, they will not study hard. At present, scientists and
technicians are not given firm study assignments. So there are quite a
few who, because they are not fully engrossed in their scientific
research, just while away their time, doing nothing in particular.

In order to develop our nation’s science and technology speedily,
we must give every scientist and technician definite research tasks so
that they can pursue their scientific research with energy.

Next, the cultural revolution must be advanced forcefully.

This is also an essential for the successful progress of the technical
revolution.

In the cultural revolution in country areas, great effort must first be
directed to raising our farmers’ technical and cultural levels by giving
them a better technical education.

In order to make the rural technical revolution a success, it is
imperative to increase both farmers’ and agricultural officials’
knowledge of science and technique rapidly, while at the same time
supplying more tractors and chemical fertilizers to the rural areas. The
rural technical revolution cannot be carried out successfully by the
agricultural university graduates in the country areas or a few
agricultural scientists alone. A general without an army is no general,
as the saying goes, and a few individuals cannot achieve anything on
their own. The scientists and technicians must pass on their scientific
and technical knowledge to the farming masses and train many of them
who will be able to advance the rural technical revolution. Only then
will the tasks of this revolution be fulfilled with credit.
I heard that a student of Kim Il Sung University who is being trained in Hyangsan County, North Phyongan Province, taught herself how to drive a tractor and then taught other girls and even housewives how to drive. That is very good. And just like that student, we must spread technical knowledge properly so that all farmers may acquire knowledge of soil science, biology, fertilizers, farm machinery, growth accelerants and other agricultural expertise.

Farming cannot be done scientifically without disseminating scientific and technical knowledge throughout the rural areas, without giving the farmers instruction. Sub-workteam and workteam leaders, the chairmen of cooperative farms and ri Party committee secretaries who are attending this congress must themselves study to acquire scientific and technical knowledge. And scientists and technicians must go on studying hard even though they have graduated from institutions of higher learning.

In order to increase the working people’s technical expertise rapidly, they must be given suitable conditions for their studies.

First of all, it is important to publish many books of science and technology. With the forthcoming national meeting of teachers as an occasion, the Party Central Committee set each university and college lecturer the task of writing a book or translating a foreign one. There are 600,000 intellectuals in our country. So, if each one of them writes or translates a book we will have 600,000 new books.

At the same time we need to open a lot of libraries.

Today every cooperative farm has a room for studying revolutionary history and a publicity hall, and the former is also useful for meetings. So you need not erect new buildings, but should rather reorganize your publicity halls so that the farmers can acquire some scientific and technical expertise there. You might call them agricultural technique information rooms or agricultural science and technology publicity halls, preserving the present name. You should exhibit specimens of your farm’s soil, of various crops, diagrams on your farm’s output, with data on the manuring system and on other farms’ experience and blow-up diagrams of a tractor. The publicity
halls should also have a large stock of books on agricultural science and techniques.

Instead of the present newspaper *Agricultural Workers*, it is a good idea, in our opinion, to publish a bimonthly magazine, with enough copies to circulate to every sub-workteam. The magazine should, of course, carry a brief account of current topics, but a lot of space should be given to technical knowledge for agriculture, because this is the main thing. It should deal with a wide range of technical expertise on farming, such as experiences of double-cropping and inter-row crop cultivation and of the application of three major and microelement fertilizers in different districts. The magazine should be written simply so that those who attended middle school can understand it. All the agricultural workers must endeavour to attain middle-school leaving standards or over so that they can read the magazine.

The agricultural science and technology publicity hall must be developed by the teachers from the senior middle school in the ri, and should be under the direction of the agricultural university in the province. Since the agricultural university graduates are supposed to work on the cooperative farms in their own provinces, the agricultural universities should take upon themselves the guidance of the agricultural science and technology publicity halls. They must arrange lecture tours and short training courses in the villages.

The next important factor in the cultural revolution is to establish modern and hygienic production practices.

The cooperative farmers must cultivate the habit of looking after their tools. They must garage the tractors and put other farm machinery into sheds after use. Before farm implements are put away, they must be cleaned, polished and greased. In order that the farm machinery and implements are handled carefully, well kept and tended, it is necessary to set a farm machinery inspection week and introduce a system under which the Administration Council and the provincial rural economy committees check and take an inventory of farm machinery and implements at cooperative farms once or twice every year.

The threshing grounds need to be well built and properly looked
after. But some cooperative farms do not do this, causing themselves a great loss of grain. All the cooperative farms should make a neat job of paving their threshing grounds.

In order to establish modern and hygienic production practices in the country areas, there must also be separate storehouses. The cooperative farms must have storehouses to preserve the crops and keep their farm implements well. All cooperative farms should endeavour to build storehouses for rice, maize and farm implements as well as garages for their tractors. They can be built of brick where bricks are available, or if they are not, of weathered granite. The storehouses for maize will best be built along the lines of those built by the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm in Samsok District.

In addition to modern and hygienic production practices, a cultured way of life must be encouraged.

First, the villages and houses must be tidied up in a hygienic and cultured way. The walls of all the farmhouses must be whitewashed every spring and autumn. Where there is no lime, the walls should at least be cleanly plastered with clay. Thus, the peasants will live in neat, clean houses all the time.

A campaign must also be launched in the country areas to pave the yards of the houses and village roads with stone. The people in Paeksok-ri, Sinchon County, South Hwanghae Province, paved the whole road from the surfaced highway to their village with stone. Now, the road is no longer dusty, people’s shoes do not get muddy, and the houses are kept clean. This is very good. Through a campaign to build stone-covered roads leading from the surfaced highway to the village as well as the lanes leading to houses and yards, all rural ri must keep village lanes and farmyards neat and tidy.

Rural construction corps and the members of the Children’s Union must play a major part in sprucing up the houses and the villages. The rural construction corps must not only build many new modern houses; they should also help peasants to repair their houses. The Children’s Union members must always keep their houses and villages neat and trim and develop them in a cultured and hygienic way. To stimulate the
CU members to take an active part in this work, the schools must give them proper education.

Keeping houses and villages neat and tidy must go side by side with a dynamic housing programme in the rural areas, so that every farmer is provided with a practical modern house by the 30th anniversary of the founding of our Party. All the modern houses to be built in these areas must have facilities such as service pipes, water closets and bathrooms, so that they are as practical as urban houses. In this way, the differences in housing between town and country will be gradually eliminated.

The cultural and welfare facilities must also be developed.

Now our rural ri have most necessary cultural and welfare facilities, including bathhouses. But many of them cannot be used properly. Some bathrooms are too cold to bathe in in winter. For more than ten years now we have been stressing the necessity to build good bathhouses in rural ri, and still they have not yet been equipped properly. This means that the senior officials in agriculture lack a sense of duty to the Party, the working class and the people. Bathhouses must be built quickly where there are none, and poorly furnished ones must be better equipped and kept in good condition.

Laundries must also be set up in the farming villages. This will lighten the burdens of our rural women.

Heating systems must be introduced in existing houses of culture in the farming areas, so that they will be used effectively. This can be done in various ways. Some time ago, I saw the heating system installed on an experimental basis for two-storeyed village houses in Pyongyang. It was not bad. In this system, the heat warms downstairs and then goes up through the walls to warm the rooms upstairs. The heating systems for the village houses of culture must be modelled on this pattern or heating must be provided by installing simple boilers for villages. These boilers must be so made as to burn not only coal but also rice bran or straw.

Waterworks must be completed speedily in the rural villages to develop them in a cultured way and improve the rural population’s
living conditions. This is honourable work to save our women carrying water jars on their heads; it is also important because it will eliminate various diseases in the country areas. It also has a positive influence on the south Korean people. We are told that the south Korean people and youngsters are now saying that water lines are even being installed in the villages in the northern half of Korea and that they want to live in villages with water mains. Rural Party organizations and leadership personnel must not merely shout slogans, but speed up the introduction of water mains in villages. And sewage pipes must also be laid.

In this way we shall turn our whole countryside into a cultured socialist countryside by the time we celebrate the 30th anniversary of our Party next year.

Another important task in the cultural revolution in the rural areas is to eliminate the way of life left over from the old society and establish a new socialist way of life.

In a socialist society people must not follow a backward way of life left over from the feudal society or try to copy the bourgeois way of life. A socialist society requires a strictly socialist way of life. The socialist way of life is the collectivist way of life of the socialist working people who strive to make everyone equally prosperous.

If we are to establish the socialist way of life, we must first eliminate all the manifestations of the outworn way of life which have been handed down by the old society.

Quite a few outmoded habits still remain in our working people’s lives. Let me give an example. Some people think that the best way of celebrating a wedding is a sumptuous feast with a great deal of pomp. You must have seen the feature film *A Wedding Day*. This film presents two conflicting views. One is that a wedding is celebrated only once in one’s life, so, a pig must be slaughtered, spirits distilled and plenty of dainties prepared, and the other is that a small gathering of friends and a pleasant time with quite simple food and a sing-song, are just as good. Which view is right? In our opinion, it is better to have simple food for a few friends to spend a pleasant time, congratulating
the bride and the bridegroom than to invite a great many people to a sumptuous feast and to waste food.

It is also an outdated custom to lay on a great amount of food for a memorial ceremony. It is quite meaningless to place numerous dishes before the grave or picture of the dead person and bow. A memorial ceremony is held to remember the departed. Therefore, it would be better to put flowers on the grave on the commemorative day or for the family to get together and reverently recollect the past struggle of the dead and renew their resolve to work harder to accomplish what he left undone.

We must endeavour to root out the old habits and establish a new socialist way of life among the working people. Since the old way of life is largely related to people’s level of ideological consciousness, we must not try to do away with it at a stretch or by coercive methods. The old habits still left in our way of life should be altered one by one as ideological consciousness develops.

In establishing the socialist way of life, we communists, the pioneers, should first discard the old way of life. We may say that all of you present here are communists, and you should be the first to uproot the old habits. When the awakened people first eliminate old habits one by one, other people will gradually follow suit and all manner of worn-out ways of life handed down from the old society will finally be cleared away and a new socialist way of life thoroughly established in the whole of society.

For the establishment of the socialist way of life, it is also necessary to lead all people to love their collective and get used to the collective way of life. In inducing people to love their collective and adhere to the collectivist principle of life, it is essential to educate them to accustom themselves to the collective life from childhood and, particularly, bring our children up properly in nurseries and kindergartens. Only when the children acquire early good habits while at their nurseries and kindergartens, can they lead cultured lives and play their full part in the collective after leaving school and going out into the world.

Next, we must carry on a dynamic ideological revolution.
In this revolution it is most important to fight capitalist and all other obsolete ideas.

At present some officials lack the attitude of masters and are often concerned with expediency in their work. This is because they still have obsolete revisionist and capitalist ideas working on their minds. We must combat these ideas which remain in the minds of our officials energetically and root out their expediency and formalism which cause them to work in a haphazard, irresponsible manner.

To eradicate capitalist and revisionist ideas remaining in the minds of our officials, we must arm them firmly with Marxist-Leninist ideology, the Juche idea of our Party. By closely equipping all officials with our Party’s Juche idea we must convince them that they are the masters of revolution and construction and all that they produce benefits them as well as society and that they should, accordingly, do all work faithfully with the attitude of masters.

We must also combat the inclination to be indolent, disliking work. In a socialist society he who does not work has no right to eat and there is no room for him. If everyone avoided work and liked to waste his time, there could be no socialist society. Under the motto “He who does not work shall not eat!” we must strongly combat the tendency to be lazy.

At present, our state supplies factory and office workers with rice at eight jon per kilogramme. Getting their rice at this nominal price, both factory and office workers should work harder to repay the state for these benefits. However, some workers and office employees do not work faithfully nor do they observe labour discipline well.

We have not yet reunified the country, nor have we accomplished the Korean revolution. At this very moment, the south Korean people are fighting against the reactionaries’ fascist rule. How can we waste time, doing nothing, when the revolutionaries and patriots of south Korea are fighting, shedding their blood, facing prison and the gallows? While intensifying the ideological struggle against the dislike for work, we must establish a strict work discipline to do away with idleness.
A campaign must be waged against misappropriating the common property that belongs to the state and society. In the rural areas today there are many tendencies to neglect and waste common property. We must resolutely combat practices such as wasting communal property in the rural areas.

In managing the common property of the state and society, it is of great importance to tighten financial discipline. The accounts of cooperative farms must be made regularly available to all members so that they are kept informed of the monthly income and outlay and balance; this makes it possible to correct errors in financial management through timely criticism.

One of the important points in carrying out the ideological revolution is to induce all working people to adhere to state regulations.

All members of a socialist society must obey state regulations in their work and lives. You must go through the set procedures even when you take something out of the warehouse; officials must observe state regulations when they take a train or a bus on their business trips.

You do not fight strongly enough against people who neglect state regulations. This is a serious fault today. It is necessary to work out correctly various work rules and regulations on the basis of the Socialist Constitution and explain them to all members of society so they voluntarily observe the laws and regulations and, at the same time, wage a powerful ideological struggle against breaches of these laws and regulations.

Party work must be done well for a successful ideological revolution in the country areas.

As we always say, Party work is working with people. However, the Party organizations involved in the rural economy have not yet completely converted their work into work with people, and they quite often abuse Party authority.

The county and ri Party committees and all other Party organizations assigned to the rural economy must rectify this shortcoming as soon as possible and do a good job with officials as
well as Party members, and also work well amongst the masses by allowing the working people’s organizations to have full rein. In this way, they will educate and reform all the people and rally them closely around the Party.

In order to rectify shortcomings in the rural economy promptly and educate the agricultural officials and working people, there must be effective annual work analysis meetings. In the past there were Chongsanri work analysis meetings annually in the rural areas, but in future, you had better hold meetings for summing up the implementation of the tasks set out in the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*.

The Chongsanri work analysis meetings used to review the work done to carry out the tasks we had proposed during our guidance in the village of Chongsan-ri in February, 1960, but now it will not do only to discuss the problems we pointed out in Chongsan-ri at that time. Now that our socialist construction in country areas has entered a higher stage, it is necessary to discuss new problems.

Every year, all Party organizations related to the rural economy must hold an efficient annual work analysis meeting on February 25, the anniversary of the publication of the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*. These meetings should make a detailed analysis mainly of the progress of the technical, cultural and ideological revolutions proposed in the theses on the rural question. And these meetings must be held in an atmosphere of acute criticism and ideological struggle, so that the cadres and Party members engaged in agriculture can be educated and reformed as revolutionaries.

Lastly, I should like to touch briefly on the question of raising the county’s role.

The county plays a very important role in the construction of a socialist countryside. Therefore, the theses on the rural question emphasize the need to enhance its role.

Since the publication of the theses, the county’s importance has increased greatly and it has done much work in accelerating the building of a socialist countryside. Take the local industries for
example. Once every household had to make its own bean paste and soya sauce. Today the county foodstuff factory supplies these to the farmers. So the women have been freed from the toil of making bean paste and soya sauce.

But one could hardly claim that the counties are now doing a satisfactory job; many defects are being revealed in the work of the county organs. Many county officials are adopting bureaucratic attitudes towards the farmers, instead of serving them faithfully. Just take the purchasing agencies for example. Their workers harass the peasants. Now the purchasing regulations fix prices in three grades—the first, second and third, offering high prices for the first grade. But they say that no one has ever got first grade prices for the agricultural products or sideline products he has sold to the state because purchasing workers pick holes and do not give first grade rating even to superior goods. Since the purchasing workers are so hard to deal with, the peasants are totally indifferent to sideline production.

These tendencies should have been rectified promptly by the county Party committees, but they did not play their proper role in the past. The county Party committees should improve their work and always see to it that the county organs, the lowest executive bodies of the state, implement the Party’s policy and Government’s decisions and directives correctly and should correct their errors before it is too late.

In addition to the county Party committees, the county administrative committees, the county cooperative farm management committees and the county farm machine stations must also work better. Local industries must also be further developed to provide better service to the farmers, supplying them not only with bean paste and soya sauce but with riced corn flour and noodles, and they must sell them cooking oil, processed fruits, bean curd, and so on. In this way counties could give the farmers better service.

To enhance the county’s role, county officials must be developed and encouraged to work in good faith. It is advisable, I think, that the work analysis meetings on the basis of the theses on the rural question, which should from now on be held every year, are held not only in
By increasing the county’s role decisively we must further strengthen the worker-peasant alliance, accelerate the course of revolutionization and working-classization in the rural areas and achieve a classless society as soon as possible where all the farmers live prosperous lives and there are neither differences between town and country nor class distinctions between the worker and the peasant.
Comrades,

Secretaries of ri Party committees from all parts of the country are present here today. I would like to take this opportunity to talk about how the ri Party committee secretaries should manage their work and their lives.

The ri Party secretaries have very important duties, and things will only go well in the rural areas if they play their part creditably.

The ri Party is a basic organization of our Party. Our Party is built up of cells, and the ri Party organization can be called one of the big cells that make up our Party. That is why it is so important to strengthen the ri Party organizations. Just as an organism will be healthy if its cells are sound, so for our Party to be sturdy, its basic organizations, including the ri Party organizations, must be sound.

Geographically, too, the ri Party organization is very important. Each ri is a 4,000th part of our country, a 4,000th part of our territory and population, of farmland, farm machinery and other means of production and various other kinds of property. In addition, it has schools, hospitals, nurseries, kindergartens and other educational, cultural and health service institutions, telecommunication facilities, various amenities and services. The ri Party organization is the
manager of all these things within the ri and the ri Party secretary is in charge of the ri Party organization.

Having confidence in the ri Party secretaries, the Party Central Committee has committed a 4,000th part of our territory, population and property to their care. The Party Central Committee has also charged them with the duty to guide so that state power may be exercised properly within an area that is a 4,000th of the country.

Only when ri Party secretaries accomplish all their revolutionary tasks satisfactorily, consolidating and steering their organizations correctly, will it be possible to strengthen our Party and our power and to build up all our socialist forces. In other words, the consolidation of ri Party organizations is essential to strengthen our revolutionary forces for the stability and development of our socialist system.

If the ri Party secretaries are to perform their duties smoothly, they should be competent enough to run a 4,000th part of the country efficiently. They should be able to guide ri Party organizations and their members, the working people’s organizations and the masses, schools, hospitals, shops, amenities and so on, to say nothing of giving proper guidance in farm production. In short, they must be skilled enough to guide all aspects of work in the rural areas.

Today the whole of our countryside can be likened to a sleek horse. Our villages are rich and beautiful. On the hills behind them are orchards with rows of tiled houses in the foothills. There is a flowing brook in the foreground and tractors chug through the fields crisscrossed by brimming irrigation canals. Truly our countryside is like a beautiful picture scroll.

There is lovely rural scenery in every area of our country. In Changsong, way up in the mountains, for example, when you come out of a ravine, an attractive scene spreads before your eyes—there is a limpid stream flowing, tiled houses line the foothills and tractors are working the fields. Climbing up the ridge of the pass from Sakju to Changsong, you see a village down below that is called Kumbu-ri. It is so beautiful that you want to sit down there and draw a picture. Indeed, Kumbu-ri is like a fairyland, the land where legend has it the fairies
came to live. Yet Kumbu-ri is not exceptional. All our villages are rich and beautiful and we might well call each of them a fairyland. Once backward and poverty-stricken, our villages have now all grown into prosperous modern villages like this and our peasants’ long-cherished dream that they might one day eat rice and meat soup regularly and live in a house with a tiled roof has now come true. How wonderful this is!

The sight of our rich and beautiful villages always makes me feel refreshed and very happy.

Foreign guests, too, are unanimous in their admiration of our beautiful countryside. One man said that after a long journey through Korea by car, he was not tired at all because the scenery was so varied and so beautiful, it was a feast for the eyes. Our guests from Asia, Africa, Latin America and Europe all say the same.

It is you ri Party secretaries present here and the cooperative farm chairmen who have taken the lead in building such fine villages throughout our country. It was you who took part in the struggle for the agrarian reform after liberation, who were in the agricultural cooperative movement and fought to put through the rural technical revolution. You grew up and went to school in rural areas and today you are proud to be masters of our countryside.

Our people defeated Japanese imperialism and won independence after a long and arduous struggle; after liberation they rid themselves of landlords and capitalists and built in our beautiful country with its picturesque mountains and clear streams a happy land free from oppression and exploitation where all can live a life of plenty. Today all our villages are modern and prosperous. They are like Chollima, the sleek steed, who gallops forward towards the heights of communism.

The Party policy for building up a socialist countryside is clear. We have the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*, our programme of socialist rural construction, and practical steps set out by the Party for every stage of rural construction.

The question will be decided by the ri Party secretaries assembled here, by how fast they will race forward on these sleek steeds, by how
efficiently they work to put the Party’s policy into practice. Even a fine steed is useless if the rider is stupid and clumsy. And just as a poor rider is likely to be kicked or thrown, so a ri Party secretary who lacks the ability to race ahead on his steed, who fails to play his part properly, cannot push socialist rural construction forward fast. And only when all our ri Party secretaries are capable of riding their steeds at a gallop, of playing their proper role, will it be possible for our farmers and indeed all of our people to be more prosperous and to achieve a classless society and the complete victory of socialism.

And are all our ri Party secretaries capable of riding their steeds at a gallop now? No, indeed. There are some who can ride at a gallop, but there are others who at best could only ride a donkey; still others, unable to ride even a donkey, could barely stay on the back of a calf.

Some ri Party secretaries are at present failing in their duty and role, and have shortcomings in both their work and their lives.

They do not take too kindly to state discipline. Those who at present undermine state discipline in rural areas are primarily the ri officials, including ri Party secretaries. Because ri officials lead the way disobeying state discipline, others follow suit. Because they themselves are the first to break state discipline, the ri officials cannot deal firmly with others when they see them do the same.

There are quite a few among the Party secretaries and other ri officials who throw their weight around. Their breaches of state discipline are often a result of their desire to be important. Security men in charge of the ri abuse the power of their uniform, the ri Party secretaries misuse Party authority and cooperative farm chairmen act as though they were “headmen”.

I have heard that nowadays, as soon as quality goods are put on sale in rural shops, there are ri officials who buy them over the heads of the farmers. They think that they are somebodies and above ordinary people and think it right that they should live better than others. This is a mistaken idea. If cadres consider themselves above the rest, they will become divorced from the masses, will be unable to identify with them.
and, consequently, unable to carry out their revolutionary assignments creditably.

Ri Party secretaries must promptly rectify such shortcomings in their work and lives, and fulfil their duty and play their part properly, to strengthen the ri Party, our Party’s basic organization, and lead the farm villages of Chollima forward on the right path.

Before all else, ri Party secretaries need a high degree of revolutionary and class spirit in order to strengthen the ri Party organizations and steer Chollima’s farm villages forward on the right path.

We have organized the Party in order to fight for communism successfully. The basic organizations of the Party including the ri Party are our Party’s combat units fighting to build socialism and communism. Therefore, the ri Party secretaries in command of these combat units need to be more revolutionary, to have a stronger working-class spirit than all the others.

By equipping themselves thoroughly with Marxism-Leninism and our Party’s revolutionary ideas and continually tempering themselves, ri Party secretaries should qualify as genuine revolutionaries who can subordinate everything to the revolution and the interests of the working class, uphold revolutionary principles, and overcome trouble despite all adversity.

They should lead the masses in the revolutionary struggle and construction. When officials take the lead and steer the masses in the right direction, all work will turn out well. One of the factors in last year’s good harvest in our country lies in the fact that the junior cadres on cooperative farms worked energetically at the head of the masses. The ri Party secretaries should continually temper themselves in practical activities and endeavour to lead the masses in all activities, including Party and state work and the work of economic construction.

If they are to acquit themselves well of their charge, the ri Party secretaries must fashion their activities and lives to the following working rules:
First, they should play an active part in the life of the Party organization.

Ri Party secretaries should take an active part in the Party’s organizational life if they are to show revolutionary spirit, abide by revolutionary principles, take the lead in the revolutionary struggle and construction and remain faithful to the Party and the revolution as long as they live.

If they stand aloof from the organizational life of the Party, the Party members will be in the dark as to what the Party organization has discussed and decided, what it is up to, and will be unable to work and live as the Party expects.

Party members should participate in Party life, no matter when and where, except when they are ill in hospital. A Party member who does not take part in Party organizational life is not qualified to be one. Our Party Rules stipulate that a Party member who stays away from Party life for more than six months without a legitimate reason will be expelled from the Party. Only if all members take an active part in Party organizational life is it possible to increase the Party’s fighting capacity and for the members to become tempered revolutionaries.

Ri Party secretaries should play an exemplary part in Party organizational life more than anyone. They should not ever absent themselves from organizational life in the Party. They should not only take an exemplary part in it; they should persuade all their Party members to follow suit, and should encourage members of the League of Socialist Working Youth, the Union of Agricultural Working People and the Women’s Union to play their part well in the organizational life.

It is the bounden duty of every member to be active in Party organizational life. The ri Party secretaries must temper their Party spirit constantly and thoroughly revolutionize and working-classize themselves through faithful participation in the organizational life of the Party.
Second, they should actively participate in Party studies.

I have heard that nowadays some workers who have graduated from institutions of higher education neglect Party study meetings on the pretext that they cannot learn much there. This is a very haughty attitude.

A Party study meeting should be attended by all whether they are learned or not. It is a dictate of the Party’s revolutionary discipline that members must attend Party study meetings.

Only by attending Party study meetings with keen interest can Party members raise their political consciousness and always be up-to-date with Party policy and the situation at home and abroad. By attending each and every Party study meeting, you can be knowledgeable about the new issue you were ignorant of yesterday and can gain information from one lecture that you could not get from another.

By applying themselves to Party studies, ri Party secretaries should be equipped closely with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, and they should be continually increasing their level of political consciousness.

Third, they should be active in production work.

While carrying out Party work with expertise, they should be active in production, setting an example for the masses. But at present there are some of them who, on the pretext of the stress of Party work, rarely do any work in production.

It is quite true that ri Party secretaries have less time than others because they have to attend many meetings and to guide Party study meetings. But this should not excuse them from production work. If they miss work in the daytime because of some meetings, they should still make up the day’s work even if it means staying up all night. If
they cannot even find time at night, then they should work harder the next day to compensate.

I think you have all seen the feature film *A Red Motivation Worker*. When the heroine has to attend a meeting or a study course in the daytime, she spends the night doing her weeding for the day; she even weeds the plot some laggard left unweeded.

In days gone by the commanding officers and political workers of the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army used to walk more and suffer more to take care of their units on march in the winter, but upon arrival at the bivouac site, they were the first to pick up saws and axes and cut down trees to build the campfires, and helped their men make beds. They themselves only used to go to bed after the men had fallen asleep.

Imitating the work style of the commanders and political workers of the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army, ri Party secretaries should take the lead in tackling heavy or difficult jobs and be active in production, thus being in the vanguard in building socialism.

Fourth, they should value and look after the common property of the state and society.

There are many people now who are neglectful and wasteful of the common property of the state and society.

Ri Party secretaries should set an example in the way they prize and look after the common property of the state and society.

They should begin by making it a habit to look after farm implements and machinery. If they use a hoe or weeder, they should clean it before they put it in the store, and when they use a tractor, they should clean it before taking it into the garage. They must train themselves in such habits in the handling of farm implements and machines.

In the past the commanders of the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army always looked after their arms and combat equipment well. Their arms were always clean and shiny and the bullets they carried were without
a speck of rust. Because they set the example in handling their weapons and combat equipment, all their men looked after theirs well and were always able to fight the enemy efficiently.

The most important thing in Party work is to control, first, the administration of personnel; second, the running of the economy; and, third, the activities of the organs of power. The ri Party secretary should fully control and guide the way the economy, particularly the finances, of the cooperative farm is run. The ri Party secretary whose duty it is to give guidance on the financial management of the cooperative farm, should not make free with the farm’s money or do anything questionable in money matters. No one can be a communist who is not clean in his financial affairs.

The ri Party secretary must not borrow money from the cooperative farm or embezzle the property of the state or society. If he does, other people may well follow his example, and it will become impossible to run the cooperative farm properly.

He should have no say in the cooperative farm’s spending of money and should not meddle in it unnecessarily. The cooperative farm should lay out funds entirely on the responsibility of its chairman and treasurer. The ri Party secretary should discuss and approve the cooperative farm’s management of its finances at a ri Party committee meeting.

**Fifth, they should set an example in obeying the laws and regulations made by the state.**

Since our Party is in power, Party workers must obey all state laws and regulations voluntarily. If the state gives instructions not to fell trees recklessly or not to dig earth at the roadside, ri Party secretaries should see that the instructions are followed. Even when the regulation issued by the upper body is wrong, they should not denounce it or pick holes in it, they should state their opinions through proper channels.

The ri Party secretaries should take the lead in obeying all state laws and regulations.
Sixth, they should love the Party members and the people.

The ri Party secretaries should be polite to Party members and people and speak to them politely. When they call someone, they must always address him by his name or official title, with the suffix of “tongmu” or “tongji” (both meaning comrade). When addressing the cooperative farm chairman, they should say “Comrade Cooperative Farm Chairman”, and in addressing a Party cell secretary, they should call him “Comrade Party Cell Secretary”.

They should not be rough when talking to Party members and people nor scold them unsparingly. Even when speaking to a man who has committed a misdemeanour, a ri Party secretary must refrain from using bad language and banging his fist on the desk, but should admonish him with dignity. If you allow yourselves to curse and swear at people at every opportunity, this will become a habit and you will eventually become overbearing. Once they have formed the habit of abusing people, Party officials and political workers can no longer do effective work.

Ri Party secretaries should be polite and modest in their speech and behaviour. If a ri Party secretary has made a mistake in talking to someone, he should apologize, and if he has committed a breach of manners by stepping on a person’s foot or accidentally giving him a shove, he should say, “I’m sorry. Please forgive me.” It may seem a trifling matter to observe this kind of courtesy, but this is very important in endearing yourselves to people. The ri Party secretaries should always be cultured and courteous in both word and deed.

Loving the Party members and people is no justification for treating them uncritically and not taking them to task even when they do wrong. It means that you always keep in touch with them, that when they err, you criticize them immediately, and when they do something good, you praise them, thus guiding all people to be faithful to the Party. At present some workers do not criticize others but take an
unbiassed attitude towards them even when they know they are at fault, trying to be “a good fellow”. Such workers cannot be considered as good.

The ri Party secretaries have to criticize Party members and others immediately when they make mistakes in life and work, and praise them when they behave well, doing justice to them, calling right right and wrong wrong. They should love all Party members and people in a principled way and thus unite them firmly around our Party.

Seventh, they should hold fast to the working-class position.

Our Party is a party fighting to defend the interests of the working class. Therefore, ri Party secretaries should always stick firmly to the working-class position, the position of those people who suffered from exploitation and oppression in the past, and fight resolutely to defend the interests of the working class.

In our rural areas, the capitalist system was wiped out a long time ago, but many ideological remnants of capitalism still linger on; acts of misappropriating state and social property are found, and there are also people who damage worker-peasant power and slander and vilify the socialist system. The ri Party secretaries should strive to root out the ideological remnants of capitalism in the country areas and wage a keen battle against things which damage the socialist system. Those ri Party secretaries who do not fight things which are detrimental to the working-class interests are not qualified to hold their posts.

Adherence to the working-class position means fighting to consolidate the dictatorship of the proletariat and the socialist system, to raise the Party’s authority and prestige in the eyes of the masses, and to ensure that the Party becomes the beacon that lights the path for the masses, shining at all times like a star. Ri Party secretaries should make positive efforts to maintain this class position.

Ri Party secretaries should always exercise a keen class vigilance. At present the enemy is trying to break down our socialist system and
we are fighting the capitalist system. This is a fierce class struggle to decide who will be the winner. The struggle to decide who beats whom is a violent class struggle the issue of which is whether the workers and peasants overthrow the capitalist system and build a socialist system, or whether the landlords and capitalists preserve the capitalist system as before. In our country this class struggle is not yet over. Therefore, we must always have a high degree of class vigilance. The ri Party secretaries should view all the political, economic, cultural and military problems not just from the practical angle but from the standpoint of the working class.

They should always think and act from the working-class standpoint and adhere firmly to the standpoint of class struggle. From the class standpoint, they should be firmly resolved to defend the workers and peasants’ power, to oppose the landlord and capitalist system and to fight resolutely against anybody doing harm to the socialist system.

**Eighth, they should live in a political and cultured way.**

Ri Party secretaries should always look neat and tidy and keep their homes clean.

They should make it a rule to watch films. I have heard that some sneer at those who watch films as though only people who have leisure go to see them. They are wrong. The film is an important weapon of ideological and cultural enlightenment. Moreover, the films produced in our country now are of very high educational value. So ri Party secretaries should see many films.

They should read the newspapers every day. Party workers should read the editorials of the *Rodong Sinmun* without fail no matter how busy they are. They say some officials do not even read the editorials of this newspaper. This will not do.

Ri Party secretaries should also listen to the radio and diffusion broadcasts and watch television.
This will keep them in touch with what is happening each day, what our Party wants and appeals for and what kind of things are going on in our country; they should know all about announcements made by the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and the Korean Central News Agency and suchlike.

The ri Party secretaries should not think that all that is required of them is to raise good crops. If they are to acquit themselves creditably of their part, they should be familiar with the situation, have considerable political, economic, cultural and military knowledge, and lead cultured lives.

**Ninth, they should not become bureaucrats.**

A Party organ does not wield power nor is the post of Party secretary similar to old-time government posts. Nevertheless, some ri Party secretaries still build up a bureaucracy, regarding the Party organ as an organ of power. Some Party secretaries put on airs as if they were old-time high government officials and like to ride a high horse. When invited to dinner, such people are flattered only if they are put right at the head of the table. Even if he is put in the place of honour, a ri Party secretary should not accept it. He should give way to the eldest person present.

Some people lead a simple life and are humble in their speech and behaviour before they are appointed to a position, but once they are promoted to the post, their gait and manner of speaking change. And as soon as they are promoted to high posts, they start to demand luxury cars and mansions. And those who speak very politely over the telephone before their appointment, howl abuse at their subordinates and speak insolently as soon as they pick up the receiver, after their promotion.

Whether one’s position be high or low, one should never be rude or overweening on the telephone. In a telephone conversation the speakers cannot see each other, so they should speak diffidently. When
an official rings up a person or answers a call on the telephone, he should first announce himself quietly and speak politely, and when the conversation is over, he should politely say good-bye before hanging up.

It is all a manifestation of bureaucracy that an official likes to have the place of honour at table, talks and behaves rudely, and demands a mansion and a luxury car. Our officials must not behave like bureaucrats.

Our Party is categorically opposed to bureaucracy. We must detest an odour of bureaucracy in officials. Those officials who act like bureaucrats should give themselves a good rubdown to get rid of their bureaucratic smell. In particular, ri Party secretaries should have a good wash to eliminate their bureaucratic smell.

If ri Party secretaries act like bureaucrats, they cannot play their part properly. They should rid themselves completely of bureaucratic attitudes and become the people’s servants who serve the Party and the people faithfully.

**Tenth, they should resolutely fight all kinds of outdated thoughts that are incompatible with our Party’s Juche idea.**

Each ri Party secretary has been appointed by the Party Central Committee and the state to the task of guiding the Party members and people in an area that is a 4,000th part of the country. Therefore, they need to arm themselves better than anyone with our Party’s Juche idea and do all their work responsibly from the master’s standpoint. They should work consistently to implement our Party policy and fight all shades of reactionary thinking including capitalist, feudal, revisionist ideas and the worship of great powers which contradict our Party’s revolutionary thinking, the Juche idea.

In our Party only revolutionary thinking, the Juche idea, can exist; ideas that contradict this cannot be tolerated. We should arm the whole Party with our Party’s monolithic ideology.
Ri Party secretaries should fight determinedly against all obsolete ideas which are incompatible with our Party’s monolithic ideology, so that our Party’s Juche idea prevails throughout their whole ri.

I can think of many other things that ri Party secretaries should do in their work and lives. But these ten points are the most important. Ri Party secretaries should manage their work and lives in accordance with these ten working rules.

At the same time, they should enhance the function and role of the ri Party committees by every possible means. The secretary working alone is incapable of dealing successfully with the revolutionary tasks that face the ri Party organization.

In order to improve the way ri Party committees function, these committees should be built up solidly, formed with hard-core Party members with strong class consciousness, who jealously defend the Juche idea of our Party and work selflessly to consolidate and develop the socialist system. Ri Party committee elections must always be democratic.

The ri Party committees, built on solid foundations, should meet regularly. There are people who say that frequent Party committee meetings interfere with farm work, but they are wrong. Of course, too many meetings in the busy farming season can interfere with farm work—that is why the Party has often said that there should be as few meetings as possible in the farmers’ busy season. But even then the ri Party committees should meet regularly no matter how busy they are.

However pressed by work, we regularly call meetings of the Political Committee and the Secretariat of the Party Central Committee. As the saying goes, it is better to ask the way even when following the beaten path. So if many gather together and discuss a matter which could have been decided by one person’s judgment, quite a number of wise suggestions are put forward.

The ri Party secretaries should call regular ri Party committee meetings and raise all matters for collective discussion so as to take correct decisions.

They should be proficient in organization in order to implement
their committee’s decisions. They should give assignments to the committee members and Party members to go amongst the masses and encourage them to work to put those decisions into practice.

If ri Party secretaries build up their committees solidly, hold regular meetings and organize work scrupulously, all the revolutionary tasks facing the ri Party organizations will be carried out smoothly.

The ri Party secretaries should pay special attention to making adequate provision against war.

We now stand face to face with the American imperialists, the chiefs of world reaction. The enemy is waiting for us to relax our vigilance and lower our guard, eagerly watching for a chance to invade us. The moment we are off our guard and dozing the enemy will pounce.

We do not want war and will never start it first. But if the enemy attacks us, then we shall have to fight. Since the enemy persists in aggressive tactics, nobody can tell when our country may again be at war. Therefore, we should not lapse into a pacifist mood but make thorough provision against war so that we can deal with a surprise attack.

The most important thing in making provision against war is to prepare the people well politically and ideologically.

Because we had given inadequate revolutionary education to the people before the war, we suffered a great loss during the temporary retreat. In that period many Party members and people lacked fighting spirit and did not know how to fight, and so they were meekly taken away by “peace maintenance corps” ruffians who were carrying hunting guns which were not loaded, and then were cruelly slaughtered. We should not forget this bitter lesson and should prepare the people well politically and ideologically.

The ri Party secretaries must educate Party members and the people to hate the enemy without entertaining any illusions about him and to acquire ideological readiness to fight him resolutely.

It is important for the people to make a close study of the Reminiscences of Anti-Japanese Guerrillas in their revolutionary
education. The study of the reminiscences is conducive both to educating the people to hate the enemy and to teaching the fighting experiences of the revolutionary forerunners to those who have no experience of the revolutionary struggle. Ri Party secretaries should organize the study of the reminiscences on a wide scale to allow all working people to get to know how their revolutionary forerunners fought the enemy in the past and induce them to meditate on how they would fight in similar circumstances.

In future many books about the experiences of the anti-Japanese armed struggle should be published to be used extensively in giving revolutionary education to the working people.

Revolutionary novels also play an important role in increasing the revolutionary preparedness of the people and tempering their thoughts and willpower. When we were held in Jilin Prison, we read the novel *The Iron Flood* which impressed us deeply, and that helped us greatly later in overcoming difficulties in the course of the revolutionary struggle. This novel has as its theme the story of a unit in Russia breaking out of the enemy encirclement, overcoming great odds during the civil war. The Arduous March we had during the anti-Japanese armed struggle was many times as hard as anything described in *The Iron Flood*. Last year I saw a musical epic drama portraying the Arduous March of the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle. This is a very good work that will help give our people a revolutionary education. It is necessary to educate people well with such a revolutionary work of art.

Another important aspect of providing against war is to make adequate material preparations.

We must unremittingly carry on the Party’s policy on arming all the people, fortifying the whole country, modernizing the whole army, and making it an army of cadres.

We already have all the weapons which are needed to equip the people. If war breaks out, we shall be able to provide every one of them with a rifle. Ri Party secretaries must build up the ranks of the Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen and the Young Red Guardsmen in
their ri and strengthen their combat training so as to increase their fighting capacities steadily.

Ri Party secretaries must also pay particular attention to obtaining sufficient reserves of war materials including food.

The ri Party secretaries should make thorough arrangements to manage successfully in the event of war and, if war does break out, should lead all the armed force and people of their ri in fighting to help the People’s Army, and defend their own district bravely.

Advance is not the only essential in a war. Some area may be given up to the enemy for strategic reasons, and there may be a case of unavoidable retreat because some units have lost battles. There are very many such cases in the history of war. Therefore, ri Party secretaries should be prepared to defend their own district by mobilizing the local people in any situation that may arise in war.

During the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we fought for four years, from 1932 to 1935, to defend the guerrilla bases. At that time, we were poorly armed and short of everything. But by mobilizing the people of the bases, we repulsed the enemy’s desperate attacks and firmly defended the bases. The ri Party secretaries must learn from these fighting experiences of the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

Every area in our country has favourable zones you can fall back on as bases of operations to fight the enemy in the event of an invasion. South Hwanghae Province, for example, has many densely wooded high mountains with deep ravines. If you set up bases in such places, you would be able to go on fighting for many years.

Ri Party secretaries should continue to make very thorough preparations against war, firmly determined to face up and fight the enemy no matter when he might start an invasion.

Now I should like to pass to a few immediate tasks of agriculture.

At the recent National Congress on Agriculture, we took stock of the great successes achieved in the struggle for implementing the tasks set forth in the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country and, on this basis, advanced the historic task of completing the industrialization of our agriculture in the near future by pressing ahead
more vigorously with the rural technical revolution.

Industrializing agriculture is very important for the complete victory of socialism, and it is also a very difficult problem.

In accordance with the policy set out in the theses, we have gone ahead with the rural technical revolution, with the result that the irrigation and electrification programmes have been completed throughout the country and great achievements have been made in mechanizing farming and using chemicals. A little more effort in future, and we shall lead Asia in the industrialization of agriculture.

Agricultural personnel must endeavour to complete the comprehensive farm mechanization and use of chemicals as soon as possible and industrialize agriculture in line with the policy laid down in the theses.

Above all, there must be a bold attempt to make effective use of modern farm machinery such as tractors and lorries.

The state sends a large number of tractors and lorries to the country areas every year for comprehensive agricultural mechanization. But in some areas, owing to the neglect of land realignment and road building, although they have many tractors and lorries these are not used effectively, and they do not last as long as they should. Agricultural personnel should pay better attention to land alignment and road building, so that tractors and lorries can be used more and longer. Rural roads should be paved with stone or covered with gravel and hardened so that tractors and lorries do not get stuck in the mud when it rains.

Machine parts factories should be developed well in the provinces to produce and supply the country areas with large quantities of spares for tractors and lorries, which should be repaired promptly and well maintained for better use.

In addition to efficiently used modern farm equipment, such as tractors and lorries, conventional equipment such as carts should also be used widely in agriculture. Some agricultural workers are now reluctant to use carts. This will not do. Conventional farm implements must also be used effectively until enough modern farm equipment
such as tractors and lorries is available to do all farm work by machine.

An important current task in agriculture is making good preparations for this year’s farming.

The cooperative farms should work out good plans for farm production this year. The ri Party secretaries should help cooperative farm chairmen make farming plans which are fully in line with the principle of planting the right crop in the right soil at the right time.

On cooperative farms large quantities of slaked lime and manure should be produced and taken out to the fields before the thaw. In many farm villages now, they say, large-scale slaked lime production is impossible because of a lack of coal. The State Planning Commission and the Agricultural Commission should see that there are sufficient supplies of coal for lime production.

This year we should also put emphasis on stock farming and bring about an innovation in the production of animal products.

Orchards should be well looked after. They are badly kept at present, and so the output of fruit is very low. At least 20-30 tons of fruit must be produced per hectare of orchard. The cooperative farms should tend and look after their orchards well to obtain a large increase in fruit production.

There must be a major drive for planting trees. When the mountains are planted with many trees it will be possible to prevent landslide and flood damage and to solve the problem of the supply of timber. All cooperative farms should carry out the Party’s policy of planting 10 hectares of trees every year.

The cooperative farms should improve streams and rivers. Since our country has a heavy rainfall, it is necessary to improve streams and rivers every year to make water drain away well. At present the cooperative farms are very neglectful of this work and this is wrong. All cooperative farms should make a habit of cleaning out ditches and controlling streams and rivers every spring.

Building a great deal of modern rural housing should receive great attention this year. Recently, modern two-storey, two-flat houses have been built in the rural areas around Pyongyang. They are better in
appearance, and their interior structure is also more functional than the slightly earlier flat-roofed houses. A house of that style should be erected as a model in every county and the idea should be widely copied.

The achievements made so far by our people in the agricultural field are only a first step in industrializing agriculture—we have still a great deal to do. Therefore, ri Party secretaries and cooperative farm management personnel must assume full control of farm activities, and press ahead more energetically with all aspects of the work. The provincial, city and county Party committees should give effective guidance to the cooperative farms.

Agricultural workers should, above all, endeavour to raise good crops this year, and all Party members and working people in the field of agriculture should make another effort to achieve the Six-Year Plan grain production target without fail. The Party Central Committee intends to hold an agricultural congress again towards the end of the year after this year’s farm work is finished. I should like all comrades present at the recent National Congress on Agriculture to make continuous innovations without falling behind in the struggle to reach the Six-Year Plan goal for grain and to have the honour of attending the next agricultural congress, too.

By continuing to press ahead vigorously with the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions in the country areas in line with the policy set out in the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country, we must industrialize agriculture and build a classless society where there is no disparity between town and country and no class difference between worker and peasant as soon as possible. By doing this, we shall demonstrate more clearly the advantages of our socialist system to the exploited and oppressed people in south Korea and to the peoples of Asia, Africa and Latin America who are fighting to build a new society.
January 29, 1974

**Question:** One year ago we heard with great expectation that an agreement had been reached between the two parts of Korea on the peaceful reunification of the country, free from outside interference. Later, however, we learned that new difficulties had arisen.

Will you please explain what these difficulties are and how they can be overcome?

**Answer:** In 1972 a North-South Joint Statement whose keynote is the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity put forward by our Party, was published in our country following the dialogue held between the north and the south. This was a great step forward in the struggle of our people for the independent, peaceful reunification of their motherland. People throughout the world, to say nothing of the entire Korean people in the north and the south, rejoiced at this step and welcomed it warmly.

After the North-South Joint Statement had been published every possible effort was made on our part to give effect to it and achieve national reunification as early as possible. But here we ran up against a large obstacle because of the schemes of internal and foreign divisive elements to perpetuate national division.

Under the manipulation of US imperialism, the south Korean...
authorities scrapped the North-South Joint Statement the day after it was signed, saying that it was nothing more than an untrustworthy scrap of paper. After that, they kept perpetrating acts totally contravening the principles of the North-South Joint Statement and turned down all the reasonable proposals put forward by us to accelerate national reunification. Then, last June they openly announced to the world a “policy” of fixing and perpetuating national division. The south Korean authorities asserted that north and south Korea should enter the United Nations separately. This was designed, in the last analysis, to perpetuate the division of the nation and keep our country divided into two parts for ever.

The national-splitting actions of the south Korean authorities are a product of the “two Koreas” policy of US imperialism. Seeing that it was impossible to bring about their crazy plan to invade the northern half of Korea and turn the whole of Korea into their colony, the US imperialists put forward the “two Koreas” policy with the sinister aim of keeping at least south Korea within their grip. At the United Nations General Assembly session last year the US imperialists, in company with their followers, resorted to all sorts of tricks to get a “resolution” on “two Koreas” passed.

The Japanese militarists support the US imperialists most zealously in their “two Koreas” plot. While stepping up their renewed invasion of south Korea, the Japanese militarists, hand in glove with the US imperialists, are actively pressing ahead with the scheme to create “two Koreas”. It is not for nothing that a Japanese journal recently wrote that “the ‘two Koreas’ policy is a drama acted by the Park Chung Hee regime on a US script and under US direction and Japanese stage management.”

We consider that the road to the solution of our country’s reunification question can be cleared only by smashing the “two Koreas” plot of the US imperialists, the Japanese militarists and the south Korean authorities and by putting an end to foreign interference in the Korean question.

The Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic
resolutely oppose any attempt to fix and perpetuate the division of our country and reject outright any outside interference in the domestic affairs of our country.

Last year’s session of the United Nations General Assembly, the first ever to be attended by a representative of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, checked the “two Koreas” plot of US imperialism and its lackeys, expressed support for the three principles of national reunification laid down in the North-South Joint Statement and adopted a decision on the immediate dissolution of the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea”, a tool of US imperialism for its interference in our internal affairs. This was a welcome step which created a favourable situation for the solution of the reunification question and a great victory for our Party’s policy of independent, peaceful reunification.

The Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic will continue to make every possible effort to thwart all attempts to perpetuate the division of our nation and to hasten the independent, peaceful reunification of the motherland.

First of all, we shall work hard to strip the “UN forces” helmet off the US imperialist army of aggression in south Korea, the main obstacle to the solution of Korea’s reunification question, and to force them to withdraw. At the same time, we shall strive to continue the dialogue between the north and the south and achieve comprehensive cooperation and interchange between them in accordance with the principles set down in the North-South Joint Statement.

In order to press ahead with the dialogue between the north and the south, the south Korean authorities must refrain from any acts contravening the principles of the North-South Joint Statement. They are still persisting in their actions to perpetuate national division and their policy of dependence upon outside forces, harshly repressing democrats and patriotic young people and students of south Korea who are calling for national reunification and democracy. These actions of the south Korean authorities constitute the chief obstacle to dialogue between north and south.
If the south Korean authorities give up their divisive attitude, respect the North-South Joint Statement and make genuine efforts to have it carried out, the north-south dialogue will make successful headway.

If the south Korean authorities continue to ignore the North-South Joint Statement and follow a road running counter to it, the people will not forgive them. The south Korean young people, students and people in general, are indignant at the south Korean authorities’ increasingly undisguised policy of fascist repression and stratagems to perpetuate national division and their policy of dependence upon Japan, and have risen in an anti-“government” and anti-fascist struggle for democracy. For months now they have been valiantly fighting under the slogans: “Down with the Park regime!”, “Establish democracy!” and “An immediate end to dependence on Japan!” It is natural that the south Korean young people, students and people at large should fight against those who cling to outside forces, while betraying the nation and repressing the people by force.

The just, patriotic struggle of the south Korean young people, students and other people will certainly be crowned with victory, and the cause of national reunification will be achieved for sure through the united strength of the entire Korean people.

**Question:** You live in a region which has witnessed two protracted, bloody wars over the past 25 years and where imperialism suffered a heavy blow from the heroic struggles of the Korean and Vietnamese peoples. How do you view the prospects in this region now that the Vietnamese people have won a brilliant victory and new relationships have been established in the international arena?

**Answer:** In the past the struggle of the peoples against the imperialists’ aggression and intervention was fiercer in Asia than in any other region and the imperialists have sustained a severe blow.

The US imperialists suffered a major political and military defeat in the Korean war, which marked the beginning of their decline. Beaten
again in the Viet Nam war, they have sunk deeper into the abyss of ruin. In Cambodia today the US imperialists are having a bitter experience all the time. Everywhere in Asia they are meeting with defeats and rebuffs.

All the facts indicate that in Asia in the past the situation has developed in favour of its peoples and the US imperialists have suffered a serious defeat.

However, the US imperialists have not yet given up their aggressive designs against the Asian countries. They are making desperate efforts to extricate themselves from their predicament. The crafty US imperialists produced the so-called “Nixon doctrine” to set Asians against Asians by inciting their satellite states and puppets in Asia. Under the zealous aegis of the US imperialists, the Japanese militarists are stepping up their infiltration of many Asian countries to achieve their ambition of overseas expansion.

The aggressive designs of the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists against Asian countries will never be achieved. I think that in future the general situation in Asia will turn more and more in favour of the Asian peoples.

Asia has many fighting and revolutionary countries. The revolutionary peoples of Asia are presenting a solid, united front against the imperialists’ aggression and intervention. The Asian peoples have been awakened and tempered through their protracted struggles against colonialism old and new.

In all areas of Asia today the voices calling for independence are ringing out loudly and the fighting spirit is rapidly mounting against US imperialism and Japanese militarism. Under the impact of the Asian peoples’ fight, the US imperialists will soon be kicked out of Asia for good and the Japanese militarists’ dreams of overseas aggression will eventually come to grief.

Indeed, the US imperialists may resort in future to still shrewder tricks and various kinds of manoeuvres in Asia. But however cunningly they scheme, the revolutionary peoples of Asia will maintain a firm anti-imperialist stand to the end and the future of Asia
will be decided by the Asian peoples, its masters.

The Asian peoples will not fail to build an Asia where there is neither imperialism nor exploitation and oppression, an independent and prosperous new Asia.

**Question:** The Workers’ Party of Korea holds a very prestigious position in the international communist movement and has made an important contribution to the world anti-imperialist movement. Please tell us what the prospects of the struggle against imperialism for peace are now in the light of your experiences and what role the international communist and working-class movements can play in this struggle.

**Answer:** As you know, there is a growing argument in the international arena today that the present era is an era of a shift to peaceful coexistence and cooperation from cold war and confrontation. Our people, too, want peace and wholeheartedly hope for a lasting peace. The Korean people are well aware, however, that peace can never be achieved by begging the imperialists for it but can be won only through a persevering battle against imperialism.

The more difficult their position becomes, the craftier the double-dealing tactics of the imperialists. This is an old trick employed by the imperialists whenever they find themselves in a difficult position.

The US imperialists are now improving their relations with large countries and easing the tension temporarily under the pretence of “peace” in an attempt to gain a breathing space, while continuously intensifying their manoeuvres of aggression against small countries and interference in their internal affairs. Recently the US imperialists instigated the Israeli aggressors to unleash a war of aggression against the Egyptian and Syrian peoples. The US imperialists also engineered a fascist military coup to overthrow the legitimate Popular Unity Government in Chile. It is also the US imperialists who are perpetrating acts of aggression and interference in the domestic affairs of Korea, Cambodia, Viet Nam, Laos and a number of African
countries and many other countries of the world.

As the facts show, the people want peace, but the imperialists are always engrossed in aggression, war and intervention.

We consider, therefore, that vigilance should be heightened and the struggle intensified against the imperialists all the more so when they put up the sign of “peace”.

When the imperialists put up the sign of “peace”, some people may cherish an illusion about imperialism and shun struggle against it and there are also those who try to seek security through an unprincipled compromise with it. These people are either tired of the revolutionary struggle and are going to give up revolution or cowards who are afraid of making revolution. But the anti-imperialist struggle as a whole will not be weakened even though there may be some such people.

As long as imperialism exists, there will always be exploitation and oppression, aggression and intervention by it. Where there are imperialist exploitation and oppression, aggression and intervention, the revolutionary struggle of the people will always break out against them. The people can free themselves from imperialist exploitation and oppression and win independence and peace only through struggle.

There are still many peoples on the globe subjected to imperialist oppression and exploitation. Therefore, there will be more and more people in the future who turn against imperialism and want to make revolution. The peoples of many countries now suffering from imperialist aggression and intervention are calling for continued struggle and courageously rising in the anti-imperialist struggle without wavering in the face of hardships and trials.

However hard the imperialists may try to paralyse the revolutionary consciousness of the people and stamp out the anti-imperialist struggle under the sign of “peace”, the anti-imperialist struggle will continue to grow in strength. The people will certainly win class liberation and national independence and attain world peace and security through their staunch struggle against imperialism.

As for the role of the international communist and working-class
movements in the anti-imperialist struggle, today these movements constitute the most powerful revolutionary force standing opposed to all the imperialist and other reactionary forces and the decisive force holding in check the imperialist policy of aggression and war and guaranteeing world peace and security. It is thanks to the strengthening of the international communist and working-class movements that the general international situation is now developing in favour of peace, democracy, national independence and socialism.

There is no doubt that if the international communist and working-class movements advance as a united force in future, they will play a far greater role than now in the struggle against imperialism and for peace. We sincerely hope that all the revolutionary forces will unite firmly and act in concert in the struggle against imperialism and US imperialism in particular. Our Party will in the future, as in the past, actively work for the unity of the international communist movement and the solidarity of all the anti-imperialist revolutionary forces.

**Question:** In the past 20 years the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea has achieved great social and economic progress in spite of the ravages of war. Please tell us about the future goals and prospects of development.

**Answer:** As you have mentioned, the economy of our country was severely damaged in the three-year war forced upon us by the US imperialists. Following the war we started rebuilding the economy on the desolate ruins.

By waging a heroic struggle under the correct leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, our people not only rapidly healed the war wounds but also converted our once backward colonial agrarian country into a powerful socialist state with an independent, modern industry, a developed agriculture and a brilliantly flowering and developing science and culture. They accomplished this in a very short period of time. In the past two decades the appearance of our country has changed beyond recognition. Our people are extremely proud of this.
But these successes are only initial ones. We have far more work ahead of us than we have accomplished in the past.

You asked about the goals of our struggle and prospects of development. To answer your question, I think it will suffice to explain the principal objectives of the Six-Year Plan set out at the Fifth Congress of our Party and how these objectives are now being carried out.

The three major tasks of the technical revolution are part and parcel of the Six-Year Plan. The three major tasks of the technical revolution set forth by our Party aim to considerably narrow the distinctions between heavy and light labour, between agricultural and industrial work and to free women from the heavy burden of household chores through an extensive technical renewal movement in industry, agriculture and all other branches of the national economy.

We have already achieved marked success in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution and opened up bright prospects for their successful fulfilment. We have made remarkable progress in the production of machine tools which are the key to the technical revolution, and have laid the foundations of the electronics and automation industries to introduce semi- and full-automation in all fields of the national economy.

By making energetic efforts to narrow the distinctions between heavy and light labour in the field of industry, comprehensive mechanization in the coal and ore mines and automation in the metal and chemical plants have been accomplished to a considerable extent. In particular, an energetic drive is afoot to introduce remote control step by step in those branches where there is heat-affected and harmful labour.

The technical revolution is also being dynamically pursued to narrow the distinctions between agricultural and industrial work and bring agricultural work closer to industrial labour.

This year marks the tenth anniversary of the publication of the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*. On this occasion, we are now striving to carry out the main tasks of the rural technical revolution set forth in the theses.
In our country irrigation in agriculture was achieved long ago and its electrification was also admirably carried out. Now a vigorous struggle is going on to complete farm mechanization and the wider use of chemicals. We plan to supply the country areas with 70,000-80,000 tractors (in terms of 15 hp units) by July this year, a task set forth in the theses. The task put forward in the theses to supply over one ton of chemical fertilizer per hectare in terms of quantity will be fulfilled in the first half of the year.

The prospects for grain production are also quite bright. Last year a good crop was harvested in our country. I think you know this well enough because you have toured our countryside. We have set ourselves the target of producing 6.5-7 million tons of grain this year while consolidating the successes achieved last year. It can be said that when this goal is reached, the grain target of the Six-Year Plan will have been reached.

The task of the technical revolution for freeing women from the heavy burden of household chores is also successfully being fulfilled.

Great efforts are now being made in our country to develop the food and consumer goods industries so that women can do their cooking and other household work quickly and with ease. In addition, rapid progress is being made to introduce water services in the country areas. When this project is completed, our women will no longer have to carry water jars on their heads.

The living standards of our people will improve noticeably in the near future. Our people no longer have to worry about food, clothing or housing. However, the living standards of our people as a whole are not yet as good as we would like. There are still differences in the living standards of workers and farmers and distinctions between urban and rural population in living conditions. We are making efforts to raise the living standards of the people as a whole considerably and, at the same time, to improve it evenly. If we work industriously for a few more years after carrying out the Six-Year Plan, our people’s living standards will show a marked improvement and will be inferior to none.
In the future great progress will also be made in public education and the training of cadres. The universal compulsory ten-year education which was started in 1972 will be fully introduced during the Six-Year Plan to give all children complete general secondary education at state expense until they reach working age. Higher education will be developed rapidly and the number of technicians and specialists will exceed one million in the near future.

In brief, the prospects for our country’s development are very bright indeed and our people’s struggle is truly worthwhile.

Our workers and cooperative farmers are now going all-out to fulfil the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule with bright hopes for the future.

Seeing the enthusiasm with which the working people are tackling the Six-Year Plan we are firmly convinced that it will be carried out successfully ahead of time. When the Six-Year Plan is fulfilled, the entire appearance of our country will undergo a still greater change and our people will rise to higher peaks of socialism.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I should like to extend warm greetings to the Italian communists and the Italian working class for their active support to our people in their struggle to build socialism and for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. I wish the Italian Communist Party further success in its struggle against imperialism and for peace, democracy and socialism.
ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS PUT BY THE CHIEF EDITOR OF THE YUGOSLAV NEWSPAPER VECERNJE NOVOSTI

February 22, 1974

**Question:** Yugoslavia is familiar with and supports the consistent efforts of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea for the country’s independent and peaceful reunification.

Would you please explain the present political situation in the context of the dialogue between north and south and the prospects for Korean reunification?

**Answer:** As you know, as a result of the persevering efforts of our Party and the Government of the Republic for the country’s independent and peaceful reunification, dialogue between north and south Korea was started and in July 1972, the North-South Joint Statement was published, its keynote being the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity.

After the publication of the North-South Joint Statement the Government of our Republic put forward a number of specific and reasonable proposals to translate it into practice and made every sincere effort to ensure the successful progress of the dialogue. However, because of the stratagems of internal and external divisive elements, the north-south dialogue reached deadlock and great difficulties and obstacles have been put in the way of the reunification of the motherland.
Even after the publication of the North-South Joint Statement the south Korean authorities, egged on by the United States, intensified war preparations and fascist repression, keeping more stubbornly than before to the policy of dependence on outside forces, in total contravention of the principles set out in the statement. Then, in June last year, they published the so-called “special statement”, announcing to the world a “policy” to perpetuate the division of the nation.

At the UN General Assembly last year the US and Japanese reactionaries and the south Korean authorities put forward a proposal for simultaneous UN membership for “two Koreas” and employed every conceivable trick to force it through. But this scheme was completely frustrated by the just efforts of the socialist countries, non-aligned states and many other countries of the world who support our Party’s policy of independent and peaceful reunification. The UN General Assembly expressed full support for the three principles of national reunification laid down in the North-South Joint Statement and adopted a resolution on the dissolution of the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea”, a US instrument for aggression and interference in our internal affairs. This is a great victory for the policy of our Party and the Government of the Republic for independent and peaceful reunification and a staggering defeat for those who seek the permanent division of Korea.

The south Korean authorities’ attempts to perpetuate the division of the nation at the instigation of the imperialist forces have aroused the national indignation of the entire Korean people who aspire to the reunification of the motherland and inevitably compelled them to struggle against internal and external divisive elements.

Harsh as fascist repression is today, the south Korean student youth and people of all walks of life are fighting valiantly to bring about the democratization of south Korean society, save the country and the people and reunify the motherland.

We put forward a five-point policy: to eliminate military confrontation and ease tensions between north and south, to give effect to multilateral collaboration and exchange between the north and the
south, to convene a Great National Congress composed of representatives of people of all levels, political parties and social organizations in the north and the south, to set up a north-south Federation under the name of the Federal Republic of Koryo and to enter the UN under that name. This is an epoch-making save-the-nation plan aimed at preventing the division of the nation and reunifying the motherland.

The only obstacle to our country’s reunification today is the manoeuvres of the internal and external divisive elements to keep our nation divided indefinitely. If the problem of our country’s reunification is to be solved smoothly, it is necessary first of all to put an end to the “two Koreas” plot of the US and Japanese reactionaries and their interference in Korea’s domestic affairs and for the south Korean authorities to renounce the policy of dependence on outside forces and genuinely observe the principles of the North-South Joint Statement. The south Korean authorities must discontinue their fascist repression of the south Korean people who demand democracy and the country’s independent and peaceful reunification, and open the way for representatives of all parties, groupings and people of all levels in south Korea to participate directly in solving the problem of reunification. Only then will the dialogue between north and south make smooth progress and the problem of reunification be solved quickly.

Because of foreign interference we are now experiencing vicissitudes in solving the problem of reunification. However, we shall win the cause of national reunification without fail by the indefatigable united struggle of all the north and south Korean people with the active support and encouragement of progressive people the world over.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I should like to express my deep thanks to the Government of the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia and the Yugoslav people for their active support for the DPRK Government’s policy of independent and peaceful reunification and for the Korean people’s struggle to put it into effect.
**Question:** We are well aware that the Korean people have converted their country into a powerful socialist industrial state by scoring great successes in the socialist construction of the country.

Tell us please what is the motive force and basic factor of these successes?

**Answer:** All our victories and successes gained in the socialist revolution and socialist construction have been possible thanks to the correct leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the unbreakable unity of the Party and the masses of the people and the immense revolutionary enthusiasm and creative work of our people.

Our Party takes the Juche idea as the irreplaceable guideline in leading the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction. At each stage of revolutionary development, basing ourselves on the Juche position, we worked out a line and policy to conform to the specific conditions of our country and strove to carry our revolution through to completion by our own efforts, refusing to depend on others.

Because we established Juche and relied on our own efforts, we have been able to lead our revolution along the straightest path, surmounting many difficulties and trials.

Each time we encountered difficulties and trials in the course of the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction, we placed our trust in the masses of the people and consulted them and overcame the difficulties and trials facing us by bringing their strength and wisdom into play.

As we strengthened political work amongst the working people and armed them firmly with the Juche idea, they took the Party’s policies to heart and dedicated all their strength and wisdom to the struggle to carry them out.

Today all the workers, cooperative farmers and working intellectuals of our country are firmly united around the Party with one ideology and purpose. They are working and living, filled with revolutionary passion and optimism.

All the people are firmly rallied and welded around the Party,
politically and ideologically, and are working with revolutionary enthusiasm and creative initiative. Herein lies the source of our invincibility and the solid guarantee for all victories.

Our Party will continue to develop the revolution and construction uninterruptedly at high speed by uniting the masses of the people more firmly around itself and giving full rein to their inexhaustible creative energies.

**Question:** Yugoslavia supports the position of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea in its attempt to liquidate the consequences of imperialist interference in Korea’s domestic affairs and to force the US troops to withdraw from south Korea in order to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

Friendship and bilateral cooperation between the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia are now developing successfully in all spheres. But it seems that much still remains to be done in this respect.

What is your opinion of the prospects for further developing friendship and cooperation between the Korean and Yugoslav peoples?

**Answer:** Today the relations of friendship and cooperation between the DPRK and the SFRY are developing more and more satisfactorily. Visits and contacts between our two countries are becoming frequent, and liaison and cooperation are increasing in all spheres. We are satisfied with the ever-strengthening bonds of friendship between the Parties, Governments and peoples of the two countries. You said that much still remains to be done in developing friendly relations between Korea and Yugoslavia. We also think so.

Henceforth, the Government of our Republic will make every possible effort to further expand and develop the relations of friendship and cooperation with the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia in many fields of politics, the economy and culture.

It is my firm belief that friendly relations between Korea and Yugoslavia will continue to develop favourably on the principle of
Marxism-Leninism and on the principles of complete equality, independence, mutual respect and noninterference in each other’s internal affairs.

At the same time, I sincerely wish further success to the fraternal Yugoslav people who are working hard for the prosperity and progress of their country under the leadership of the Yugoslav League of Communists.

**Question:** Yugoslavia, an active member of the non-aligned movement, and other non-aligned nations maintain that international problems cannot be solved by groups of nations or by great powers, and that they must become a matter of concern for the entire international community. This idea and the practice based on it must prevail in international relations.

Peace is indivisible and nations, both large and small, should participate on an equal footing in guaranteeing it.

This was pointed out in the resolutions of the Fourth Conference of Non-Aligned States. The countries of the non-aligned world are taking this stand with regard to the Middle East crisis and other pressing international events.

In this connection, we shall be grateful if you will give us your opinion of the activities of the non-aligned states and the results of the Fourth Conference of Non-Aligned States held in Algiers.

**Answer:** The activities of non-aligned states have had a considerable influence on the fight against all forms of aggression and interference, subjugation and inequality and for the achievement of peace and a just settlement of international issues.

It is very good that the forces of the non-aligned states are growing and their role increasing.

It has now become an irresistible trend of the times that imperialism is going downhill and many countries of the world claim complete equality in international relations and are advancing along the road to independence.

The activities of the non-aligned states are powerful, for they reflect this trend of the present time.
The Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States held in Algeria last year was an event of epoch-making importance in the struggle of the peoples of the third world against imperialism, colonialism, old and new, and racism and for national liberation and sovereignty, peace and social progress.

The conference convincingly demonstrated the firm unity of the peoples of the third world and made a notable contribution to the further promotion of the national-liberation movement and preservation and consolidation of world peace.

Special mention must be made of the fact that the Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States unanimously adopted a resolution on the termination of all forms of foreign interference in Korea’s internal affairs, the withdrawal of foreign troops occupying south Korea under the UN flag, the dissolution of the “UN Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea” and the admission of Korea to the UN under a single name, either after the country’s complete reunification or after the setting up of a Federation. This gave strong encouragement to our people battling for national reunification and was a powerful blow against the imperialists and their lackeys bent on obstructing the reunification of Korea and perpetuating its division.

The Korean people highly value the results of the Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States and express their heartfelt gratitude to all the countries for their sincere efforts for the adoption of the resolution on the Korean question at the conference and for their active support and encouragement for our cause of independent and peaceful reunification.

Because of their common plight in the past when they were maltreated and oppressed and their common struggle of today against imperialism and colonialism and for the creation of a new life, the Korean people are closely united with the peoples of the third world and actively support and encourage their national-liberation movement and revolutionary struggle. The Korean people will, in the future, too, remain firmly welded to the peoples of the third world in the common cause of peace and democracy, national independence and social
progress, holding aloft the revolutionary banner of anti-imperialist struggle.

**Question:** The imperialist forces of aggression are openly interfering in the internal affairs of Asian countries, constantly endangering peace in this part of the world.

What should be done to turn Asia into a secure continent and what is its prerequisite?

What are the most fundamental features of recent political developments on the Asian continent?

**Answer:** What is characteristic of recent developments in the Asian situation is that the battle of the peoples against imperialist aggression and intervention and for national independence and the independent development of the countries is mounting as never before, while the imperialists’ stratagems for aggression and intervention in this area are becoming totally ineffectual.

The overwhelming majority of Asian peoples have already cast off the yoke of colonial slavery and won national independence and are fighting vigorously against imperialist aggression and intervention under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence.

The US imperialists are running up against the powerful resistance of peoples everywhere in Asia and are being chased out.

However, this does not mean that the imperialists have been completely destroyed in Asia or that they will no longer commit the crime of aggression.

Increasing its moves towards aggression and intervention against the Asian countries, the United States is craftily working to achieve its aggressive aims by making Asians fight Asians in accordance with the notorious “Nixon doctrine”.

In order to prevent a new war and remove tension in Asia and turn it into a continent of peace, it is necessary, above all, to drive the US imperialists out of all parts of Asia and prevent them from suppressing the national-liberation movement of peoples in this area and interfering
in the internal affairs of other countries.

At the same time, the expansion of Japanese militarism revived under the aegis of the United States and its ambitions for overseas aggression must be checked and frustrated.

The Asian peoples are fully aware, from historical experience, that only through their own struggle can they repulse imperialist aggression and intervention and achieve national independence and the security of their countries.

In future all progressive people in Asia, rallied close under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence, will certainly build a new, peaceful and prosperous Asia by keeping up their persistent fight against all moves of the imperialists towards aggression and intervention.
CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE
TO THE TENTH CONGRESS
OF THE GENERAL ASSOCIATION
OF KOREAN RESIDENTS IN JAPAN

February 23, 1974

On the occasion of the Tenth Congress of the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan (Chongryon), I should like to express, in the name of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and on my own behalf, the warmest congratulations to Comrade Chairman and other deputies and all the participants of the congress.

Three years have passed since the Ninth Congress of Chongryon which set forth a very important task on establishing the ideological system of Juche thoroughly in the movement of Koreans in Japan. This was a period of proud struggle during which the Korean compatriots in Japan, under the leadership of Chongryon and upholding the revolutionary banner of our Party’s great Juche idea, have striven to implement this idea in all spheres of their activity; it was also a worthwhile period which has witnessed great progress in the patriotic work for the homeland and the people.

During the period under review, all the activities of Chongryon were dogged by subversive activities and sabotage of the enemy from both within and without. Despite these difficulties, it set forth a correct policy on the movement of Koreans in Japan basing itself solely on our Party’s Juche idea without wavering in the slightest and proficiently
mobilized the compatriots to implement it. As a result, it has added to its honour as an organization of overseas citizens of Juche Korea and accomplished great deeds for the country and the nation.

Regarding the establishment of the ideological system of Juche as the key factor for the strengthening and development of the movement of Koreans in Japan, Chongryon has firmly united all the Korean compatriots behind our Party and the Government of the Republic with one ideology and will and firmly built itself to become a powerful and authoritative organization of overseas Korean citizens which does not waver in any adversity.

As a result of the firm establishment of the ideological system of Juche in all its organizations from the central body down to the subchapters, Chongryon can now reliably defend the national dignity of the 600,000 Korean compatriots in Japan and resolutely protect all their democratic, national rights including citizenship of the Republic.

Chongryon has powerfully mobilized the united patriotic forces of all sections of the Korean compatriots in Japan in the struggle for the country’s independent and peaceful reunification. It is giving positive support and encouragement to the fight of the south Korean people against imperialism and fascism and for democracy and plays an important part in the nationwide cause aimed to achieve the country’s independent and peaceful reunification.

In addition, Chongryon has exalted our Party’s Juche idea in the international arena. It has become an authoritative organization of overseas Korean citizens which is widely known to the world and it enjoys the unanimous support and active encouragement of the Japanese people and other progressive people in many countries.

As the ideological system of Juche has been firmly established in Chongryon and its might increased as never before, during the period under review the Korean compatriots in Japan have indeed achieved many successes in their noble patriotic movement for the reunification and independence of the country and the prosperity and development of the nation and rendered great service to the country and the nation.
The Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea highly esteem the valuable exploits which the Korean compatriots in Japan, out of their warm love for and intense loyalty to our Party and the socialist motherland and displaying matchless patriotic devotion, have performed under the leadership of Chongryon in the struggle to advance the movement of Koreans in Japan onto a new level and attain the prosperity and development of the country and its independent and peaceful reunification. They regard these exploits as a great national pride.

In the name of the Central Committee of our Party and the Government of the Republic, I express warm thanks for this to the officials of Chongryon and all the Korean compatriots in Japan.

The Tenth Congress of Chongryon opens at a momentous time when a great revolutionary change is taking place in the struggle of our people to hasten the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea and achieve the country’s independent and peaceful reunification.

The congress will review the proud victory and successes which the Korean compatriots in Japan have achieved in the past under the leadership of Chongryon and upholding our Party’s Juche idea. It will contribute greatly to further improving the work of Chongryon to meet the requirements of the prevailing situation and mobilizing the 600,000 Korean compatriots in Japan to the nationwide struggle for the prosperity of the nation and the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, matching the general advance of the people in their motherland for magnificent socialist construction.

The great Juche idea is the steadfast guiding idea which runs through all the policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic and the sole guiding principle of Chongryon, an organization of overseas citizens of the Republic.

If Chongryon is to consolidate its success and win a still greater victory in its noble patriotic cause, it must in the future, as in the past, follow the Juche idea as its guiding principle and thoroughly
implement it in all spheres of its activities.

I firmly believe that the Tenth Congress of Chongryon will mark a great turning point in further developing all the patriotic work of Chongryon for establishing our Party’s Juche idea more thoroughly in the movement of Koreans in Japan, uniting different sections of our compatriots in Japan more closely around our Party and the Government of the Republic, defending their national rights and interests and hastening the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

In conclusion, I sincerely wish great success in the work of the congress which will demonstrate the united might of our compatriots in Japan and their patriotic spirit to the whole world.
TALK TO THE DELEGATION
OF THE GOVERNMENT OF THE ALGERIAN
DEMOCRATIC AND PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC

March 2-3, 1974

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Republic and all the Korean people, I warmly welcome the visit to our country by the government delegation of the Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic headed by Your Excellency President Houari Boumedienne, our most intimate friend, comrade and brother.

The Korean people are delighted that you have accepted our invitation and have come to visit our country.

You and we established the most intimate comradely relations long ago on the same front against imperialism. Today I am extremely happy to meet you personally, our brothers, because in the past we supported each other and cooperated closely with each other in our common fight against imperialism. Although we are meeting you for the first time today, we feel as though we are seeing our old friends.

We should like to express thanks to you once again for your having accepted our invitation and visited our country despite the long journey of 10,000 kilometres.

Your present visit to our country not only contributes to strengthening friendship and solidarity between the Korean and Algerian peoples, but it also contributes a great deal to the common struggle of peace-loving people the world over.
You say that here in Korea everything seems strange to you. Korea has her own taste. Amongst the Eastern countries Korea, China and Japan have a time-honoured history and culture. Looking back upon that history, Japan began to make progress later than Korea.

Recently an ancient tomb was excavated in Japan, which is attracting the interest of many people. This tomb is said to be similar to those of the Koguryo era in our country. Therefore, the on-the-spot investigation and scientific discussions on the tomb were participated in by our scientists as well as by those from China and south Korea. Our scientists took with them a documentary film on the tombs of the Koguryo era and other material. Now, it has been confirmed that the tomb discovered in Japan has been greatly influenced by the Koguryo culture.

Japan was the first country to carry out the bourgeois revolution in Asia. Japan accepted capitalism by carrying out the Meiji Restoration in the mid-19th century. When Japan was making a bourgeois revolution, this did not happen in our country and China. Needless to say, at that time there were some people in our country who tried to carry out this kind of revolution. However, they could not do so because they were repressed by the feudal ruling circles.

You have said that Korea and Algeria have a great deal in common in their opposition to the control of big powers and in their firm defence of their independence. It is very important to persevere in adhering to independence. We do not allow the chauvinists to command and pressure us, and categorically oppose them.

I should like to express my gratitude to Your Excellency President for your detailed explanation of the valiant struggle of the Algerian people to build a new society and of the internal and external policy you are pursuing.

The Korean people rejoice over the victory of the Algerian people as over their own.

Through what Your Excellency President have said, we have come to understand the policies which you pursue, better. Your policy can be said to be almost the same as ours, rather than being similar to it. I
think it is very important that you hold fast to independence, and that the essential factor in the success of your work lies precisely in this.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I should like to express deep thanks to you for the active support which Your Excellency President and all of you extended to us at the Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States held in Algeria last year and also for the great efforts you are making at the UN and in other international arenas to create favourable conditions for the struggle of our people for national reunification.

Now I shall speak briefly about the situation in our country.

The general goal of our Party is to build an independent and sovereign state in our country and furthermore construct a socialist and communist society. If we are to achieve this goal on a nationwide scale under the condition of a divided country, we must first attain its independent and peaceful reunification. To this end, we have put forward three tasks.

They are first, to accelerate socialist construction in the northern half of Korea so as to strengthen the revolutionary base of the country still further in the political, economic, cultural and military spheres; second, to strengthen the revolutionary forces in south Korea by awakening the people there politically and ideologically and uniting them firmly; and third, to increase international solidarity with the socialist countries and the third world countries. In other words, they are first, to strengthen the revolutionary forces in the northern half of Korea; second, to increase the revolutionary forces in south Korea; and third, to maintain closer unity with the international revolutionary forces. The most important of these three tasks is to strengthen the northern half of Korea still more politically, economically, culturally and militarily. The northern half of Korea is the main base for national reunification. Therefore, today I shall talk about some problems which arise in strengthening the revolutionary forces in the northern half of Korea.

The most important factor in this regard is to implement the Juche idea, our Party’s guiding idea, thoroughly in all spheres of social life.
Our Party’s Juche idea is expressed in the principles of independence in politics, self-sustenance in the economy and self-defence in guarding the nation. “Let us thoroughly implement the principles of independence in politics, self-sustenance in the economy and self-defence in national defence!”—this is our Party’s slogan. Basing itself on the Juche idea our Party works out its policies with regard to politics, the economy, culture, military affairs and all other spheres and carries them out with consistency.

Why, then, do we lay special emphasis on the Juche idea? It has something to do with the geographical conditions of our country and the peculiarities of its historical development.

From the geographical point of view, ours is a small country totally surrounded by large countries. In the period of the Ri dynasty our country fell victim to large countries, which dominated it as they pleased. In the closing years of this dynasty the feudal ruling circles revealed extreme flunkeyism towards three countries, that is, pro-Qing ideas, pro-Russian ideas and pro-Japanese ideas. Because our country was under the influence of large countries for a long time, flunkeyism found its way into the minds of our people, too. After liberation, south Koreans were even infected with pro-American ideas. In consequence, flunkeyism was deeply seated in the minds of the Koreans, a belief which belittles everything that is their own and worships foreign ideas without discrimination.

We cannot fall a prey to flunkeyism even in our era. Unless we categorically eliminate flunkeyism and establish Juche, we shall not be able to build a sovereign and independent state. For this reason our Party has put forward the Juche idea as its constant guiding idea and places special emphasis on it.

Another reason we particularly stress the Juche idea is that this idea has clarified the principle that the masses of the people are the master of the revolution and construction and they have also the power to change nature and society.

The masses of the people are the master of everything and the main factor which decides everything. They are the master of the revolution
and construction and are responsible for changing nature and society. However, in the past the reactionary bureaucrats of our country did not give preference to them as the master of society, but merely regarded them as the object of their rule.

Since the first days after its foundation, our Party has consistently led the revolutionary struggle and work of construction basing itself on the Juche idea.

Since liberation our Party has carried out the revolution in several stages so as to suit the prevailing conditions in our country, taking into consideration its geographical conditions and the historical conditions of its development as well as its division.

Immediately after we defeated the Japanese imperialists, we carried out the democratic revolution in the northern half of the country. The basic task at this stage of the revolution was to eliminate the feudal remnants and the colonial residue of Japanese imperialism and ensure the democratic development of the country. To this end, we carried out the agrarian reform and confiscated all the industrial establishments, which had formerly belonged to the colonial rulers and comprador capitalists, and nationalized them. At the same time as carrying out economic reforms, we introduced democratic reforms which were geared to do away completely with the remnants of Japanese imperialist colonial rule in all spheres of social life and fully guarantee democratic freedom and rights to all the working people. As a result of the successful democratic revolution, the feudal remnants and the colonial survivals of Japanese imperialism were eliminated, the revolutionary enthusiasm of the masses increased and wide sections of the people could take part in the administration of the state as masters of power.

In order to build a sovereign and independent state, we encouraged those with physical strength to offer their strength, those with technological knowledge to contribute their technology and those with money to donate their money. As a result, everyone—the intellectuals who had served in the old society and medium and small industrialists, not to speak of the workers and peasants, took part in the building of a
sovereign and independent state.

Following the fulfilment of the tasks of the democratic revolution, we proceeded to carry out the tasks of the socialist revolution. However, at that time we did not openly declare that we were carrying on the socialist revolution. This was because we took into consideration the fact that national capitalists and medium and small industrialists could make some contribution to national interests. We did not do so also because we took into account the fact that politically unawakened people in south Korea and, in particular, national capitalists there, might be frightened if we stated this. In short, we did not put forward the slogan of the socialist revolution openly immediately following the completion of the democratic revolution, with the object of drawing the democratic forces of all classes and social levels in the north and south into our revolution to the maximum.

It was only in the postwar period that we put forward this slogan.

After the war the social and economic conditions in the northern half of Korea were very difficult. Due to the three-year long Fatherland Liberation War which was fought against the US imperialist aggressors, our towns and villages were reduced to ashes and all branches of the national economy were totally destroyed.

Owing to the war most medium and small industrialists and tradesmen in the urban areas went bankrupt and were ruined. Because of the bombings of the US imperialists, the majority of the tradesmen and industrialists lost their economic foundations and were reduced to the status of penniless unemployed. Even the lot of those who remained was very difficult. Before the war there were tens of thousands of tradesmen and industrialists in Pyongyang alone, but after the war only very few of them remained. Not only in Pyongyang, but in other major cities such as Hamhung and Wonsan, the situation was the same. Now that private tradesmen and industrialists had gone bankrupt and were ruined, there was no need for the state to help them to revive.

Because of the war, the middle and rich peasants in the country
areas were totally impoverished. During the agrarian reform we only liquidated the landlords, but did not harm the rich and middle peasants. However, during the war their status became no better than that of the poor peasants because of the bombings of the US imperialists.

The US imperialists’ bombing attacks also destroyed all the churches.

As we have seen, the war bankrupted and ruined almost all the tradesmen and industrialists in the towns, totally impoverished the middle and rich peasants in the rural areas and destroyed religion. Therefore, it turned out that it was not our Party and the Government of the Republic but the US imperialists who expropriated the economic foundations of the rich peasants and tradesmen and industrialists. The fact that the forces of the rich peasants and tradesmen and industrialists became very weak as a result of the destruction of their economic foundations, provided a favourable opportunity for carrying out the socialist revolution.

In short, under the situation that prevailed in our country after the war, the socialist revolution was posed as a matured demand which brooked no further delay. Basing ourselves on a scientific analysis of the situation prevailing in our country after the war, in our April 1955 theses we put forward a policy on accelerating the socialist revolution on a full scale.

The socialist revolution in the northern half of Korea raised many new problems which needed original solutions. We had to follow an untrodden path and create an unprecedented line.

We can take agricultural cooperativization as an example. Another country transformed the private peasant economy along socialist lines only after carrying out industrialization to such an extent that farming could be mechanized. However, this was impossible in the postwar situation of our country when not only the poor peasants but even the rich peasants had to be helped by the state. We had to change the private peasant economy along socialist lines before effecting industrialization and thus open the road for the development of agricultural productive forces.
We put forward the line of transforming the economic form along socialist lines prior to technological change because we considered it much better to work with joint efforts than to work single-handed, even though the rural economy had been destroyed.

People in some countries sneered at us when they heard that we were carrying out agricultural cooperativization. Until that time the East European socialist countries had not introduced full-scale socialist transformation of the private peasant economy. We carried out the agricultural cooperative movement energetically in accordance with the Party’s line without caring about what people in other countries did. At the same time, we ensured that producers’ cooperatives and marketing cooperatives were organized with private tradesmen and industrialists. We started agricultural cooperativization and the socialist transformation of private traders and industrialists in 1954 and successfully completed them in a very short period of four to five years. As a result, the economic relations in the northern half of Korea underwent a radical change.

There were three economic sectors in our country following the completion of the democratic revolution—they were, in other words, the socialist economic sector consisting of the state and cooperative economies, the small commodity economic sector involving the private economy in the country areas and the handicraft economy in the urban areas, and the capitalist economic sector formed of urban capitalist trade and industry and the rural rich peasant economy. Here the principal role was played by the socialist economic sector. And within the socialist economic sector the most important was the state economy which belonged to the public, and the cooperative economy held only a small portion. The state economy came into being as a result of the nationalization of the major industries. With the completion of the socialist transformation of the old relations of production, the socialist economic form came to dominate the urban and rural areas.

We could complete the socialist transformation of the outdated production relations successfully without any divergencies in a very
short period. This could be attributed to the correctness of our Party’s policy.

In the agricultural cooperative movement we categorically rejected forcible methods; we strictly adhered to the voluntary principle and pursued many correct policies. In order to strengthen the economic foundations of those cooperatives which were formed of poor peasants, the state issued long-term loans to them so that they could get farm implements and draught cattle. It also defined a lower ratio for the cooperatives than for private peasants in the payment of agricultural tax in kind. Furthermore, it supplied the cooperatives with a larger quantity of fertilizers at a lower price than it did for private peasants. It also carried out irrigation and supplied water to the cooperatives on a priority basis.

Thanks to these measures adopted by the state, the living standards of the cooperative peasants improved rapidly. When the superiority of the cooperative economy became clearly apparent, private peasants volunteered to join the cooperatives, aware that it would be better for them to farm by combining their efforts than when they did it single-handed.

The state issued loans to the urban private traders and industrialists so that they could form and run producers’ cooperatives or marketing cooperatives.

We think that all the policies which were pursued by our Party and the Government of the Republic at that time were fully justifiable.

Socialist economic construction is a most important revolutionary task facing our Party and the Government of the Republic.

So far we have carried it out in several stages. First we carried out the Three-Year Plan for postwar reconstruction, which was followed by the Five-Year Plan aimed at laying the basis of socialist industrialization. As a result of the success in the Three-Year Plan, industrial and agricultural production not only regained prewar levels, but exceeded them by far. With the implementation of the Five-Year Plan our country was converted into an industrial-agricultural state.

Basing ourselves on the success of the Five-Year Plan, we carried
out the Seven-Year Plan. We determined the term of our plan to be seven years with the aim of carrying out the country’s industrialization. The major task of the Seven-Year Plan was to implement industrialization.

Our people worked hard to carry out the magnificent programme of the Seven-Year Plan put forward by the Party. However, as the aggressive moves of the US imperialists became more blatant, great difficulties arose for our people’s struggle.

The US imperialists created the Caribbean crisis in 1962 and afterwards they aggravated the situation in Viet Nam. There was a danger of this situation affecting our country. The prevailing situation urgently demanded that we should direct greater efforts to increasing the country’s defence power.

We held a Party conference in 1966 and put forward a new revolutionary line on carrying on economic construction and defence development simultaneously as required by the prevailing situation. And we decided to extend the Seven-Year Plan for another three years. This was aimed at appropriating a large additional amount of funds and materials to the strengthening of the country’s defence capabilities by implementing our Party’s military line, the main content of which is to make the whole army an army of cadres and modernize it, place all the people under arms and fortify the whole country.

Our working people carried out the new revolutionary line proposed by the Party thoroughly. Although we carried out the Seven-Year Plan in ten years, our economy developed very rapidly.

During the whole period in which the Seven-Year Plan was carried out, our industry grew at an average rate of 12.8 per cent annually. When we worked out this plan, we intended to increase industrial output at an average annual rate of 18 per cent. However, we could not do so because we had to devote additional great efforts to the building of our national defences. And yet I think that our 12.8 per cent increase is by no means a low level when compared with the rate of industrial development in other countries.

All the successes we achieved in the implementation of the
Seven-Year Plan are attributable to the fact that our people launched a powerful campaign for increased production and thrift by working very hard.

In 1970 we held the Fifth Party Congress where we adopted the magnificent programme of the Six-Year Plan, and in 1971 we embarked on its implementation.

In this way, we have carried out the socialist revolution and construction for 20 years since the war. However, our people’s struggle for socialism and communism is not yet over. If we are to build them, it will still take us a considerable time. This is because our country is not yet reunified and the present international situation is changing in a very complicated way. In particular, this is due to the fact that in the past our country was a very backward colonial semi-feudal society.

The socialist revolution did not take place first in the developed European capitalist countries where Marx had thought it would when he developed the revolutionary theory. It first broke out and triumphed in backward capitalist countries and in colonial and semi-colonial countries. In these countries a long time is needed for building socialism after the establishment of the socialist system.

For the successful building of communism, two fortresses, that is, the ideological and material fortresses, must be conquered. Communism cannot be built if one tries to capture only the material fortress.

If one is to take both the ideological and material fortresses of communism, one must carry out the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions thoroughly. One must not put the accent on the technical revolution alone, instead of carrying out these three revolutions. In that case one will not be able to take the ideological and material fortresses of communism. For this reason we have put forward the slogan of the three revolutions–ideological, technical and cultural–and are strongly pressing ahead with them in the urban and rural areas.

I shall deal first with the cultural revolution.

Our cultural revolution is not the same as that being carried on in
other countries. The principal task of the cultural revolution which we have set forth is to raise all the working people’s levels of general and technical knowledge quickly.

We are now working hard to raise their level of general knowledge to that of middle school graduates and above. We ensure that every one of them learns at least one kind of technical skill which appeals to him or her. Maintaining the Party’s policy, all our working people are now striving to learn at least one technique.

In order to raise the working people’s levels of general and technical knowledge, it is important to intensify study amongst them. At present our Party is working to make our country one in which all the people study.

The introduction of universal ten-year compulsory education is very important in raising the technical and cultural levels of all the working people. For this reason we are striving to make this education effective.

We are also working to train a large army of national intellectuals. By our national intellectuals we mean Korean technicians and specialists. At the moment the ranks of our national intellectuals exceed 600,000. In the near future we intend to increase them to over one million.

In this way we plan to improve the cultural and technical levels of all the working people quickly. Only when these levels are higher than those of other nations, shall we be able to do away with flunkeyism completely. It is true that our people are now not infected with flunkeyism. However, if their cultural and technical levels are below those of other people, they may be contaminated by it because people’s mentalities change constantly with changes in circumstances. Therefore, in the cultural revolution, we place the main stress on the improvement of all the working people’s cultural and technical levels.

Furthermore, in carrying out the cultural revolution we pay particular attention to fostering what is good amongst the legacies of our national culture which have been formed over a long period, so as to put them on modern lines and make them socialist.
The discriminating selection and development of what is good in the national cultural legacies is very important in creating a socialist national culture and a socialist mode of life. We oppose both the restorationist tendency to revive and even praise all the outdated and reactionary things from the past under the pretext of giving prominence to what is national, and the indiscriminate nihilistic tendency of regarding everything national as bad, favouring only what belongs to other nations. We take over what is progressive and popular amongst the legacies of our national culture and develop them in conformity with the mentality and feelings of our people.

In particular, we categorically reject the restorationist tendency in the field of art. If we adopt things of the past as they are, the young people of today do not like them. Therefore, we emphasize that if art is to enjoy the love of the people, it must be national in form and socialist in content and be based on socialist realism.

In order to develop socialist national culture on a sound basis, imperialist cultural infiltration must be thoroughly opposed.

Now I shall talk about the ideological revolution.

Reshaping people’s ideology requires prolonged efforts. For this reason the ideological revolution assumes a protracted nature.

We put forward the line of revolutionizing and working-classizing all the working people through an intensified ideological revolution and are working hard to implement this. The major target of working-classization is the intellectuals. Working-classizing intellectuals does not mean drawing them into productive labour like the workers; it implies arming them with the ideology of the working class.

The ideological revolution is not a struggle to liquidate people who possess the old ideology, but one to refashion their ideology. A major means of refashioning the ideology of people is to intensify organizational life and study. We are carrying on the ideological revolution mainly through education and intensified organizational life.

We ensure that Party members take an active part in Party
organizational life and members of the trade unions, the Union of Agricultural Working People, the League of Socialist Working Youth and the Women’s Union do the same within their organizations. We continuously train all Party members and working people through an organizational life.

At present everyone in our country has established a firm habit of studying. Senior officials study for half a day on Saturdays and everyone studies for over two hours every day. In addition, senior officials attend regular educational institutions for a month every year.

Through their studying our senior officials and Party members learn the principles of Marxism-Leninism and equip themselves with the monolithic ideology of our Party, the Juche idea.

It is very important to arm the members of a party with its monolithic ideology. If a member of the Workers’ Party of Korea has the ideas of the party of another country, instead of being provided with the idea of his Party, he cannot be called a member.

Koreans have to contribute to the world revolution by building socialism successfully in Korea. Foreigners cannot replace us in constructing it in Korea. In any case, the members of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Korean people must build socialism in Korea through their own efforts. To this end, all Party members and working people should intensify study to imbue themselves firmly with our Party’s monolithic ideology. At the moment all our Party members and working people are continuously striving to equip themselves with the Juche idea with the firm resolve and view that they recognize no other idea but the idea of our Party.

It is very important to carry out the technical revolution effectively at the same time as the ideological and cultural revolutions.

The basic aim of the technical revolution is to free the working people from burdensome and labour-consuming work in all fields of the national economy. The three major tasks of the technical revolution are at the moment the central task of the Six-Year Plan in our country. Our Party put forward the line of carrying out these tasks during this period.
One of the three major tasks of the technical revolution is to reduce the difference between heavy and light labour in the industrial sector. There is still a great deal of labour-consuming work in heavy industry, in the mining industry in particular. We intend to carry out the technical revolution powerfully in industry to put an end to burdensome work.

Another important aspect of the three major tasks of the technical revolution is to decrease the disparity between agricultural and industrial labour. We plan to introduce mechanization and use chemicals in the country areas and thus make agricultural labour as easy as industrial labour.

Yet another ingredient of the three major tasks of the technical revolution is to emancipate women from the heavy burdens of housekeeping. We plan to limit women’s household burdens considerably by building many nurseries and kindergartens and increasing various service facilities, including laundries, on a large scale.

We have found the key to the three major tasks of the technical revolution in the production of machine tools and put great effort into the development of the machine-building industry. At the moment things are going well in this industry. Furthermore, we are paying great attention to the development of the electronics and automation industries in order to develop the technical revolution continuously in depth. With a view to advancing these industries, we have set up a new department in the Administration Council which is in charge of this work.

Thanks to the correct leadership of our Party, many successes have already been achieved in the Six-Year Plan and the three major tasks of the technical revolution are also being implemented with success.

Labour-consuming work has been diminished to a large extent in industry as a result of the energetic efforts geared to this end.

A great deal has also been achieved in the rural technical revolution. We plan to ensure that by the end of the Six-Year Plan six to seven tractors will be available for every 100 hectares of arable land.
We have laid a foundation which will enable us to achieve this aim. Six to seven tractors per 100 hectares is not a low level even if we compare the figures with those of advanced European countries.

Great success has also been achieved in the work of freeing women from the heavy burdens of household chores. At present millions of children are being trained at nurseries and kindergartens at the expense of the state and society.

We now spend the money we earn on the upkeep of the army and the education of children. We are raising and educating over eight million children and students at state expense.

In brief, at the moment all sectors of socialist construction are proceeding successfully in our country. This year we have reviewed two kinds of work. Some time ago we held a national congress on agriculture and summed up the work in the agricultural sector, which has been very successful. At the moment we are holding a national industrial congress and reviewing the work in the industrial sector.

In our country the unity and cohesion of the people have been further strengthened and the ranks of the Party are closely rallied with one ideology and will. There are no factions or sects within our Party and all Party members are firmly united around its Central Committee.

At present everyone in our country is leading a sound life. Everyone studies and all of them faithfully take part in labour. Our future is bright.

This is roughly all I want to tell you with regard to the situation in the northern half of Korea.

I should like to refer to the questions of national reunification and external relations on another occasion.

Thank you for your attention.
THE PEOPLES OF THE THIRD WORLD ADVANCING UNDER THE UPLIFTED BANNER OF INDEPENDENCE WILL CERTAINLY WIN THEIR REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE

Speech at a Mass Rally in Pyongyang to Welcome Houari Boumedienne, President of the Council of Revolution and Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic
March 4, 1974

Your Excellency esteemed President Houari Boumedienne,
Esteemed guests from Algeria,
Dear comrades and friends,

People from all sections in Pyongyang have gathered here today, delighted to meet their Algerian friends, envoys of goodwill who have come from the far-off African continent.

First, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Korean people, I should like once again to warmly welcome the visit to our country by Your Excellency Houari Boumedienne, President of the Council of Revolution and Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic and your party.

Allow me also to convey, through you, warm, fraternal greetings
from the Korean people to the heroic Algerian people.

The present visit to our country by Your Excellency President Houari Boumedienne, outstanding leader of the Algerian revolution, prominent anti-imperialist fighter of the third world and our most intimate friend, strikingly demonstrates the militant friendship and solidarity which have been firmly established between the peoples of Korea and Algeria and constitutes an epoch-making event which strengthens them and raises them to a new, higher stage.

Our people cherish especially friendly feelings towards the Algerian people and hold in high esteem Your Excellency Houari Boumedienne, the leader of the Algerian revolution, in view of the similarity of their past struggles, the armed struggles against imperialism which culminated in the attainment of national liberation and independence, and for the common identity of their present struggles to accelerate the building of a new society by following an independent path after winning independence.

The friendship between the peoples of Korea and Algeria is a genuine friendship between revolutionary comrades-in-arms forged long ago in the flames of fierce battle against foreign imperialist aggressors. This friendship is also an embodiment of the militant friendship between the brotherly peoples in Asia and Africa fighting against all forms of aggression and subjugation and in defence of their Juche-based stand and sovereignty.

Though geographically far away from the Algerian people, our people always follow with deep interest their struggle to build a new life.

Through our present meeting with our Algerian friends, we have become better acquainted with the wonderful successes achieved in building a new society by the Algerian people who won national independence through their heroic armed struggle.

A people who have cast off the chains of imperialism and colonialism, and become the master of their country can, indeed, work miracles.

The Algerian people, under the correct leadership of the Council of
Revolution headed by Your Excellency President Houari Boumedienne, their outstanding leader, have carried out important socio-economic transformations under the militant slogan of self-reliance. In Algeria, factories, enterprises and companies formerly owned by foreign imperialist monopolies have been nationalized; the foundations of an independent national economy are being firmly laid; the appearance of the countryside is also being changed radically; education and culture are developing along new lines.

All the changes that have taken place in Algeria in only a little more than ten years since independence, are the precious fruit of the firm determination and energetic work of the Algerian people to build a rich and strong, sovereign and independent state by mobilizing their strength and resources.

We admire the great successes achieved by the Algerian people in the industrial, agrarian and cultural revolutions now under way, and rejoice at their successes as at our own.

It is very good that the Algerian people are fighting vigorously under the motto of the three revolutions, industrial, agrarian and cultural. This shows that as the people of a fledgling independent state, they are playing the role of pioneers in hewing out the road to progress.

The Algerian people are now working to carry out the Second Four-Year Plan with the prospect of entering on the stage of building a modern state based on a socialist economy in a few years’ time.

The Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic has pursued the just line of developing an independent national economy, with the result that she can now carry out her independent line and policies, without vacillating under any pressure in the international arena.

Progressive people throughout the world highly value the positive role played by the Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic in uniting the peoples of the third world, adhering strictly to the revolutionary principle in the anti-imperialist, anti-colonialist struggle and pursuing a policy of non-alignment in the external spheres.

The Algerian Government and people are fighting resolutely against the US imperialists and the Israeli Zionists backed by them,
for the restoration of the legitimate rights of the Palestinian people and the dignity of the Arab peoples.

The Algerian people are also giving support, both material and moral, to the national-liberation struggle of the African peoples and making a large contribution to the anti-imperialist revolutionary movement of oppressed peoples the world over.

Historical experience shows that if newly independent peoples are to defend the gains of revolution and attain prosperity for their countries and nations, they have to destroy the old colonial ruling machine and set up a new, progressive social system; smash the subversive machinations of the foreign imperialists and domestic reactionary forces and deprive them of their economic footholds; and build an independent national economy and national culture.

The wonderful situation achieved in Algeria thanks to the energetic activities of Your Excellency President Houari Boumedienne affords a good example in confirmation of this fact.

We are very happy to have such brave and revolutionary comrades-in-arms as the Algerian people on the African continent.

We sincerely hope that the brotherly Algerian people who are advancing towards socialism under the uplifted banner of anti-imperialism and independence will gain still greater successes in their future struggle.

Comrades and friends,

Today it is an irresistible trend of the times that the world’s people are taking the path to independence.

Hundreds of millions of people in Asia, Africa and Latin America have risen courageously in a noble liberation struggle, firmly taking their destiny in their hands, and are dynamically forging ahead along the path to independence and self-support in order to consolidate and develop the national independence and gains of revolution they have already won.

Independence is each nation’s right; no nation will tolerate being subjugated or allow its dignity to be trampled underfoot. Independence is the prerequisite for national well-being and honour and only a nation
with independence can achieve genuine independence and prosperity. The exploited and oppressed peoples who had groaned for a long time under imperialist, colonialist tyranny have bravely fought for freedom, liberation and national independence. As a result, ours is now changing into an era in which the oppressed and maltreated peoples are taking their place on the stage of history as masters, whereas the imperialists are destined to sink like the setting sun.

The historic Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States held in Algeria last year reflected this very fundamental change in the development of our times and furnished clear proof of the powerful influence being exerted by the third world upon the present development of international relations.

Resorting to more crafty double-dealing tactics in an attempt to find a way to save themselves from their doom, the imperialists, headed by US imperialism, are trying to swallow up the small nations one by one while improving their relations with large countries, and are attempting to make Asians fight amongst themselves in Asia, Africans fight amongst themselves in Africa and Latin Americans fight amongst themselves in Latin America.

However, neither a war of aggression and armed suppression nor double-dealing tactics and neo-colonialist policy can save the imperialists from their doom or check the trend of today when the people of the world are following the road to independence.

This is clearly proved by the fact that the imperialists have suffered one ignominious defeat after another everywhere in Asia, Africa and Latin America including Korea and Algeria, Viet Nam and Cuba.

During the Middle East war in October last year the Arab countries struck heavy blows against US imperialism and the Israeli Zionists, with greater unity of effort than ever before.

The Arab nations have taken resolute action in placing an embargo on the export of oil to the imperialists who support the Israeli aggressors. This has driven the Western world into an economic crisis which is getting out of control.

The just struggle of the Arab peoples including the Palestinian
people against the Israeli aggressors is attracting the support and sympathy of peoples the world over.

The Arab peoples will continue to fight resolutely until they completely liberate their occupied territory and restore the legitimate rights of the Palestinian people and will certainly win final victory in this struggle.

Ever-growing among the peoples of the third world today, is the struggle to destroy the economic footholds of the imperialist monopolies and regain the usurped natural resources of their countries not only for defending political sovereignty but also for achieving economic independence.

On the African continent a widespread struggle is being fought to wipe out the remnants of colonialism in accordance with the joint resolution of the Organization of African Unity; in many Southeast Asian countries a mass struggle is being waged against the US policy of reducing those countries to military bases and economic aggression by Japan; and in the Latin-American countries the fight is being intensified against US domination and control and for defending national sovereignty, natural resources and territorial waters.

Some time ago Your Excellency Houari Boumedienne, as Chairman of the Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States, proposed the convening of a special session of the UN General Assembly to settle the problems of international economic relations, including those of fuel and raw materials. This is an important measure to settle those problems correctly, which have so far involved the sacrifice of the interests of the third world peoples, on the principles of complete equality and independence.

The Islamic Summit Conference held recently in Lahore, Pakistan, demonstrated once again the unshakable resolve of the peoples of the third world to advance, taking their destiny into their own hands.

The time has gone for ever when the imperialists could freely oppress and plunder the peoples of the third world and bargain about and decide their destiny behind the scenes.

At present the imperialist world is undergoing the most acute
economic changes since the Second World War and is writhing in greater agony, faced with a general crisis. Now it is the oppressed people who have a say on the world scene.

We are convinced that if the peoples of all countries, small or poor, in Asia, Africa, Latin America and the rest of the world, in solid unity, strike hard at and bring pressure to bear upon imperialism everywhere, giving it no breathing space, they can defeat it and achieve the final victory of the revolution.

To secure victory for the cause of peace and democracy, national independence and socialism and to build an independent, prosperous and new Asia, Africa and Latin America, the Korean people will, in the future, too, support and encourage the anti-imperialist revolutionary struggle and the national-liberation struggle of the peoples of Indochina and of the Arab peoples who are fighting and the rest of the peoples on all three continents and all other peoples of the world and strengthen militant solidarity with them in every way.

Comrades and friends,

The Korean people have waged a protracted struggle to accomplish their cause of national liberation.

We have been able to lead the revolution and construction along a straight road to victory, because we have pursued an independent line and policies with the Juche idea as our guiding principle ever since the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

Even under the difficult conditions following liberation when their country was divided into north and south and they found themselves faced directly by US imperialism, the chieftain of world reaction, our people established Juche and worked out their salvation on their own under the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea. This enabled them to carry out with credit the democratic revolution, the socialist revolution and the historic task of socialist industrialization in a short space of time and turn their once backward country into a socialist industrial state with the solid foundations of an independent national economy.

In our country the whole Party, the whole country, all the people are
now out in the great socialist construction to fulfil the magnificent tasks of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and scale a new, higher peak of socialism, and the entire working people are bringing about a great revolutionary upswing in the Chollima advance on all fronts, holding high the banner of the three revolutions, ideological, technical and cultural.

The steady, high pace of economic development in our country at a time when the Western capitalist world is being severely shaken, driven into an unprecedentedly acute economic crisis, provides added proof of the great vitality of our Party’s line of building an independent national economy and the superiority of the socialist system in our country.

In the struggle for the country’s reunification, the long-cherished desire of our nation, we have also consistently maintained an independent stand: our national problem must be solved by ourselves, resolutely rejecting attempts to rely on outside forces.

Today the Korean question, in the last analysis, boils down to this: reunification or division, one Korea or two Koreas.

The entire Korean people unanimously desire the reunification of their country.

The great powers, however, wish to see our country divided. To divide and rule is the old axiom of imperialism.

The US imperialists and the Japanese militarists are seeking the permanent division of Korea, the former to turn south Korea into a permanent colonial military base and the latter to have south Korea as a permanent commodity market.

Immense obstacles still stand in the way of our country’s reunification even after the publication of the July 4 North-South Joint Statement, owing to the US and Japanese reactionaries’ interventionist moves and their stooges’ treacherous, country-selling acts.

These days the nation-splitting machinations of the south Korean rulers and their acts of provocation against the northern half of Korea have become even more intolerable.

The south Korean rulers are intensifying their fascist suppression of
the South Korean people as never before, arresting and imprisoning at random South Korean youths and students and conscientious intellectuals, even religious figures because they have demanded peaceful reunification. They are turning the whole of South Korea into a horrible prison.

In an effort to cover up their criminal acts and divert the attention of the people elsewhere, the South Korean rulers have committed such premeditated military provocations as spy ship infiltration in the West Sea and, capitalizing on this, are raising widespread claims about the “threat of southward invasion” and deliberately increasing tension between North and South.

It must not be overlooked here that the US imperialists, in step with the provocations of bellicose elements in South Korea, have repeatedly sent high-speed, high-altitude reconnaissance planes into the air space of the northern half of Korea to commit espionage acts and have openly declared that they would increase military aid to South Korea still further.

All these abnormal developments in our country reveal that internal and external divisive elements are, in fact, leading the north-south relationship back to where it was before publication of the North-South Joint Statement, and are driving the situation to the brink of war.

It has now become clearer who in Korea is sharpening the sword of aggression under the cloak of “peace” and who is seeking to perpetuate the division under the cloak of “reunification”.

Those who love their country and their nation should not tolerate the moves of the US and Japanese reactionaries to convert South Korea into a permanent colony, but compel the US troops to get out of South Korea, forestall the infiltration of the Japanese militarists and actively come out to build a sovereign, reunified and independent Korea.

What is the need of a north-south dialogue if our nation is to live divided? The north-south dialogue must be geared to the purpose of achieving reunification.

If the South Korean authorities really want reunification, they should retract the “special statement” of June last year advocating UN
membership for “two Koreas” and approach the talks for reunification in conformity with the interests of the whole nation.

They should not come forward with such a proposal as a “nonaggression pact” lacking any guarantee of peace, but should accept our proposal for a peace agreement.

The so-called “nonaggression pact” suggested by the south Korean authorities some time ago is merely designed to mock the nation with reunification.

As is widely known, it is not the south Korean authorities but the US commander acting as “UN commander” who holds command of the south Korean armed forces and it is also the US imperialists who have their grip on the guns, rifles and all other means of war. Under these conditions it is utterly ridiculous for the empty-handed south Korean rulers to propose to us the conclusion of a “nonaggression pact”, while leaving the US imperialist aggressor forces in south Korea. Their proposal is not worth discussing.

Since the south Korean authorities still persist in their divisive plans, we can scarcely believe that they came to the talks in good faith to achieve reunification.

That is why we believe that for its peaceful solution the problem of the country’s reunification should not be discussed solely between the authorities of the north and the south, but should be referred to the entire nation for discussion.

In this connection, we propose once again the convening of a Great National Congress or a North-South Political Consultative Meeting with the participation of representatives of all political parties and social organizations and people of all levels from the north and the south, in addition to the existing North-South Coordination Commission. This is the only way to achieve the reunification of Korea.

The problem of Korea’s reunification should be settled by the Koreans themselves; it cannot be solved by any big powers or any other countries.

The present situation urgently demands that we further intensify the
struggle against divisive elements in order to prevent the division of the country and bring about its peaceful reunification. This is a fight to decide whether to save or betray the nation.

If the south Korean authorities reject independent and peaceful reunification and attempt to set up “two Koreas”, clinging stubbornly to the policy of dependence upon outside forces, they will meet their doom, leaving behind them an indelible disgrace as traitors.

The south Korean people are now fighting courageously for freedom and democratic rights and for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country, without yielding to the harsh fascist suppression of the south Korean rulers.

The struggle of the south Korean people is a patriotic struggle to save the country and the nation and to reunify the motherland, a just struggle directly related to the vital interests of the nation. That is why our Party and the Government of our Republic will always actively support the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people with might and main.

Our support for the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people is not by any means “interference in another’s internal affairs”. Its purpose is to solve the internal affairs of our nation by ourselves. As one and the same nation, we regard it as our natural duty to support the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people.

In order to remove tension and prevent war in Korea, the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists should not protect the present south Korean authorities which are indulging in fascist repression and war provocation moves but should desist from their interference in the internal affairs of our country.

As an important link in the worldwide anti-imperialist, national-liberation struggle, our people’s struggle for national reunification enjoys ever greater support and sympathy in the international arena.

The Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States held in Algeria last year, unanimously adopted a resolution fully conforming to our five-point policy of national reunification. This is convincing
proof that our people’s struggle for national reunification enjoys full support among progressive people all over the world.

In keeping with this world trend the UN General Assembly last year rejected the proposal of the United States and the south Korean authorities for membership of “two Koreas” in the United Nations designed to perpetuate the division of Korea, and adopted a decision on dissolving the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea”, the US imperialists’ tool of aggression. This is a great victory for our people and a universal victory for peace-loving people the world over.

We voice our conviction that in the future, too, the peoples of the socialist countries and progressive people throughout the world, including the Asian, African and Latin-American peoples, will give active support to the just struggle of our people for the peaceful reunification of the motherland and will strike a collective blow both at the wild ambitions of the imperialists to split our nation, a single nation, into two for ever and at their stooges’ treacherous, country-selling acts.

The Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic has made positive efforts for the victory of the righteous struggle of our people in the international arena, always regarding our cause as its own. In particular, it extended great support to us at the Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States and the 28th Session of the United Nations General Assembly. Our people will always remember this.

Allow me to take this opportunity to express once again our deep thanks to Your Excellency President Houari Boumedienne and the Algerian Government and people for the unstinted support and encouragement they are giving to the policy of our Party and the Government of our Republic for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country and to our people’s battle for its implementation.

The militant solidarity and the relations of fraternal friendship and cooperation between the Korean and Algerian peoples will flourish and develop to the full in all fields, political, economic and cultural, in
the future. The friendship and mutual cooperation between Korea and Algeria are of great significance not only for protecting the sovereignty and independence of the two countries but also for the growth of the anti-imperialist, revolutionary forces as a whole.

Both the Korean people and the Algerian people will always fight shoulder to shoulder for the victory of the anti-imperialist common cause, as comrades-in-arms and brothers who have glorious revolutionary traditions and hold aloft the banner of independence.

Long live the indestructible militant friendship and solidarity between the Korean and Algerian peoples!

Long live solidarity among the progressive peoples of Asia, Africa and Latin America and the rest of the world!

Long live the Algerian Democratic and People’s Republic headed by Your Excellency President Houari Boumedienne!
ON PROMOTING A FRESH ADVANCE
IN SOCIALIST ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION

Speech at the National Industrial Congress
March 7, 1974

Comrades,
This congress is very important and significant; it is being held in response to the Party’s call to promote a fresh advance in socialist construction by mobilizing all our forces. At this congress many comrades have made passionate speeches, expressing a firm resolve to advance boldly.

I am glad that you have taken an active part in the work of the congress and should like to express my thanks to all the participants and the entire working class.

In concluding this congress today, I should like to stress a few points. Since all the specific tasks were mentioned in the report to the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee and in its Red Letter to all the members, I am going to touch on a few practical problems today.

1. ON ATTAINING THE GOALS OF THE SIX-YEAR PLAN AHEAD OF SCHEDULE

To fulfill the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule, we must first move
forward energetically with capital construction.

The fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule in all realms of the national economy depends on how well capital construction is carried out. For this reason the Party Central Committee has set this year as a year of construction and decided to concentrate on capital construction. All Party members and working people in this field must work hard for the early completion of the capital construction projects needed to attain the goals of the Six-Year Plan.

First of all, we must expedite the construction of metallurgical centres to attain the steel target of the Six-Year Plan.

The attainment of the steel goal depends entirely on capital construction. We must channel great efforts into the projects to extend the Kim Chaek Iron Works, Kangson Steel Plant and April 13 Iron Works and must start operating them as soon as possible. We must concentrate particularly on the extension project of the Kim Chaek Iron Works and complete it quickly. Only then can we attain the steel production goal envisaged in the Six-Year Plan and increase the nation’s economic might. The machine-building industry must produce equipment needed for the construction of the furnace, coke oven and sintering ovens of the Kim Chaek Iron Works on time.

To attain the steel production goal successfully, we must wage an energetic struggle to expand the existing iron ore mines and develop new ones while expediting the construction of the metallurgical centres. Unless the production of iron ore is increased, furnaces will be of no use, no matter how many of them we build. To meet the rapidly increasing demands for iron ore fully we must expand the present mines and develop many new ones.

We must diligently speed up the extension project of the Musan Mine. This mine has vast deposits of high-grade iron ore. The key to supplying raw material to the iron works lies in the rapid expansion of the Musan Mine. We must actively advance the extension project of this mine to increase its production capacity to 4,500,000 tons this year, 5,500,000 tons next year and 8,500,000 tons in the following year.

It is also necessary to promote the development of the Toksong
Mine with energy. Since we have failed to develop a large quantity of iron ore resources in the western region, it is urgent to develop the Toksong Mine, which has a deposit of high-grade iron ore quickly.

In the western region, we must also modernize and expand the existing iron ore mines and make good preparations to develop new ones.

We must make an effort to construct power stations to reach the target for electricity under the Six-Year Plan. At present the construction of power stations is progressing slowly. In the sphere of capital construction it is necessary to accelerate and quickly complete the second-stage project of the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant, the second-stage project of the Sodusu Power Station and the construction of the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant, the Taedonggang Power Station and the Taebo Thermal Power Plant.

We must hasten the construction of the large chemical industry centres.

Developing the chemical industry is of very great importance in increasing agricultural production, expanding raw material centres for light industry and raising the people’s living standards. In the sphere of capital construction it is necessary to build large new chemical industry centres as soon as possible in order to develop the chemical industry of our country still further.

First of all we must make every effort to construct the Youth Chemical Works. We must rapidly build a urea fertilizer plant with a capacity of 360,000 tons, an Orlon plant with a capacity of 10,000 tons, a polyethylene plant with a capacity of 25,000 tons and other large chemical factories.

The construction of the Youth Chemical Works is a tremendous task. The construction of the urea fertilizer plant itself is not an easy job. This plant will produce 360,000 tons of urea fertilizer, which is equivalent to 760,000 tons of ammonium sulphate fertilizer. At present the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory produces 1,000,000 tons of fertilizer a year. It took more than ten years to attain this production capacity. We are planning to set up in one year a urea fertilizer plant with a production capacity as large as that of the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory.
Only by building this plant can we attain the Six-Year Plan goal for chemical fertilizers.

As well as building the Youth Chemical Works, we must build large modern chemical factories in the Nampho area—a synthetic rubber factory, a vinalon factory with a capacity of 30,000 tons, a vinyl chloride factory with a capacity of 50,000 tons, and a carbide factory, capable of supplying these factories with raw materials, a carbonate of soda factory and a caustic soda factory.

To achieve the cement production goal the Sunchon Cement Factory must be built quickly. When the first-stage project of this factory is finished, 3,000,000 tons of cement will be produced. Our present cement production capacity is 5,000,000 tons. If another 3,000,000 tons are added, we shall attain the cement target under the Six-Year Plan. In the field of capital construction it is necessary to hasten the construction of the Sunchon Cement Factory and reach the capacity of 3,000,000 tons of cement within the coming year.

We must also make an effort to build light industry factories.

Many light industry factories have been built with a tremendous investment of materials and funds by the state. However, quite a few of them have not been brought into operation because they lack minor facilities.

The September Textile Mill has not been completed because supplementary facilities such as the water service have not been finished and the Sariwon Textile Mill cannot work to its full capacity because boilers, transformers and other auxiliary installations have not yet been provided. If we had finished the construction of these two factories and normalized their production last year, we would have produced larger quantities of high-quality fabrics for the people.

The construction of the September Textile Mill and the Sariwon Textile Mill has been delayed largely because the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council in direct charge of organizing and carrying out this work have been plagued by departmentalism and failed to work with a responsible attitude in the interests of the state. Party organizations of all levels must wage a
powerful ideological struggle against these practices.

Light industry and construction workers must quickly wind up the present construction projects of light industry factories and fulfil the assignments given to light industry under the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule.

Speeding up the building of railways is one of the major guarantees for the successful implementation of the Six-Year Plan. Railway workers must press ahead energetically with the construction of railways in keeping with the direction given by the Party to provide satisfactorily for the ever-increasing freight traffic.

We must first concentrate on the construction of the Kanggye-Hyesan-Musan railway line and complete it rapidly.

Then it will be possible to link east and west in the northern inland area of our country so that steel, coal, timber, staple fibre, paper and other industrial raw materials and fuel produced in great quantities in this area and in North Hamgyong Province will be sent to different branches of the national economy smoothly and transport will be adequately ensured in the event of war. The existing Rajin-Pyongyang railway line is built along the coastline, so if a war breaks out, it may not be possible to use it properly. Therefore, in the realm of railway transport it is necessary to build the new Kanggye-Hyesan-Musan line quickly so that all necessary materials may be smoothly shipped to both eastern and western regions of our country at any time.

To guarantee success in capital construction, efforts must be concentrated on major construction projects.

Our construction forces are limited; so, if we scatter them, we will not be able to complete any project in the set time. We must fix a proper order of priority in construction and concentrate on the major projects and speed up construction by finishing one project at a time. In this way the date of their commissioning will be moved up as far as possible. If they are commissioned an hour earlier, the Six-Year Plan will be fulfilled that much ahead of schedule.

In keeping with the Party’s policy of concentrated construction, efforts in capital construction must be concentrated on the projects
needed to attain the major goals of the Six-Year Plan—the production of steel, electricity, cement, chemical fertilizers, fabrics, grain, seafood and others. At the same time it is necessary to rationalize manpower organization at the construction sites and raise the level of mechanization decisively to accelerate the projects.

If we are to carry out our tremendous construction work successfully, we must increase support for the front of capital construction. In accordance with the policy set in this year’s New Year Address, the entire Party, nation and all the people must strongly support this front. Following this congress, we must particularly increase our support in every way so that there will be fresh innovations on the front of capital construction.

We must first strengthen manpower support to this front. Recently the Party decided to allocate a large amount of manpower from organizations and enterprises to the capital construction front. When you return to your homes, you too must enlist large manpower reserves and send them to this front.

The supply of materials and equipment must also be concentrated on the capital construction front. The machine-building industry must focus a great deal of energy on the production of one-off equipment and supply it satisfactorily whenever required to the capital construction front.

Meanwhile, factories and enterprises must mobilize unused equipment and materials and send them to this front. I was told that at present some factories and enterprises are keeping unwanted equipment and materials in store, instead of giving them to other branches. This is very wrong. A strong ideological struggle must be waged against this sort of departmentalism.

In the transport field, organization must be rationalized so that materials and equipment will be shipped to the capital construction front promptly.

We must increase capital construction to the utmost to complete all the projects which are essential for attaining the goals of the Six-Year Plan by the first half of next year at the latest. Only then can we fulfil
the Six-Year Plan one year ahead of schedule.

Another important factor in achieving the goals of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule is to give absolute priority to the mining industry.

One of the weakest links in the whole chain of our industry is the mining industry. At present the shortage of transformers, motors, electric wires and cables is hampering production and construction considerably. The reason is that ore mines have failed to supply enough nonferrous minerals. In some cases furnaces do not work to full capacity because of the lack of iron ore. At some steel plants, steel production is being hampered because of the shortage of electrodes. Our country has such huge deposits of black lead that we should export electrodes, but sometimes they are in short supply, because our mines fail to supply sufficient black lead. As you see, the mining industry, the first phase of the process of production, fails to lead the other branches of industry, and so these branches are unable to achieve increased production which is well within their power.

At present some factories and enterprises are not being managed and operated properly as required by the Taean work system. One important cause of this is that raw materials are not supplied on time, because the mining industry does not keep ahead of the other branches.

We can say that as far as industry is concerned, giving priority to the production of raw materials, fuel and electric power is a law.

Only when the mining industry, the first phase of the process of production, keeps ahead, will the other industrial branches develop rapidly. If we are to develop the iron industry quickly, the Musan Mine and other iron mines must be greatly developed and if we are to produce large quantities of transformers, motors and electric wires, the production of nonferrous minerals must be increased. Only if there is a great advance in the mining industry will the other branches advance too, and only if the mining industry maintains a good lead will it be possible to achieve all the goals of the Six-Year Plan. Giving priority to the mining industry is extremely urgent not only for the attainment of the goals of the Six-Year Plan, but also for the future fulfilment of a
new perspective plan. The whole Party and the entire nation must work hard to bolster the mining industry rapidly.

We must eliminate conservatism and forcefully pursue the technical revolution in this field to accomplish this task.

The personnel in the mining industry still retain many vestiges of archaic conceptions such as conservatism. They are narrow-minded; they do not work on a broad basis.

In former days, during their occupation of Korea, in an endeavour to plunder our country of as much of its natural resources as possible, the Japanese imperialists only extracted high-grade ore with primitive methods and left low-grade ore untouched. This is a burglar’s method of plundering natural resources.

We must not adopt the inferior, primitive methods employed by the Japanese imperialists in plundering our natural resources. We must exploit both high and low-grade ores and must produce more ore by exploiting and processing large deposits. This is a correct way not only to protect and make effective use of our natural resources, but also develop the nation under a far-reaching plan.

We must make a great revolution in the mining industry and switch over to extracting and processing huge quantities of ore.

If we are to extract and process large quantities of ore, the mining industry must use large, high-speed equipment and employ diversified means of transport. We must introduce large compressors, not small ones; we must introduce high-speed rock drills, high-speed sinker drills and large excavators and bulldozers. The ore-dressing shops must not use numerous low-capacity installations which occupy a great deal of space; we must replace them with high-capacity installations to augment the dressing capacity several times over in smaller spaces. During this congress, we discovered that it is possible to more than double the capacity of the existing ore-dressing shops by improving equipment. This is very good.

Diversifying transport is also important. To speed up transport, coal and ore mines must install conveyer belts, ropeways and electric cars where necessary.
Our country is rich in mineral resources. If we actively extract and make proper use of them, our country will be richer and stronger. If we produce 10,000,000 tons of steel, use 5,000,000 tons at home and export the rest, we can obtain 500 million pounds. If we produce 1,000,000 tons of nonferrous metals, our country will attain the world’s highest level in the per-capita output of nonferrous metals. If we sell one million tons of nonferrous metals, we can obtain 500 million pounds; and if we use these metals to manufacture storage batteries, copper wires or motors for export, we will receive many times more foreign currency. Therefore, we must mine large quantities of our country’s tremendous mineral resources to produce more steel and produce more nonferrous metals.

To carry out the technical revolution successfully in all areas of the national economy and fulfil the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule, the machine-building industry must be developed further.

The technical revolution is, in fact, a machine revolution. We can say that the machine-building industry is at the centre of industry, its heart.

If we are to use large, modern and high-speed equipment and diversify transport in the mining industry, the machine-building industry must make various kinds of up-to-date machines and equipment in large quantities. With the 400-500 hp engines produced in our country, we can make 25-ton lorries and large bulldozers to be used at the ore mines. If we are resolved and concentrate our energy, we can manufacture large quantities of high-speed sinker drills, high-speed rock drills and large crushers.

To ensure the production of the large machines and equipment needed by the mining industry and other branches of the national economy, large machine-building centres must be built. We must expand and reinforce the existing centres and set up another centre in the Kangson area.

However, the machine-building industry cannot fully meet the rapidly increasing demands for one-off equipment on its own. All branches of industry must set up their own machine-building centres to
manufacture the large equipment they need.

The metallurgical industry, for example, should produce its own rolling equipment. Since the equipment for this industry does not need a high degree of precision, it can be produced within this branch. And since the mining industry has its own mining machinery factories, it must develop them to manufacture large mining equipment.

It is advisable that while the machine-building industry only manufactures machines needed in large quantities, the one-off equipment required by the mining, metallurgical, chemical or building-materials industries are made by the respective branches. At present the machine-building industry has far less machine tools than other industrial branches. We still have a great reserve of machine tools which we can use. If each branch of industry makes proper use of the machine tools it now has, it will be able to produce almost all the machines and equipment it needs on its own.

When the shop managers now attending this congress return home, they must ensure that the machine tools at their factories and enterprises are properly used. We must make an inventory of all machine tools throughout the country and raise their rate of utilization by redistributing machine tools which have been wrongly distributed.

If we are to create large machine-building centres and expand the existing large machine-building factories, we must radically increase the production of large machine tools.

It is impossible to import all the equipment needed to build large new machine-building centres with precious foreign currency. We have to produce the necessary machinery and equipment by energetically launching a mass movement to let large machine tools make more.

Just as we waged the let-each-machine-tool-make-more movement in 1959, so we must wage a movement to produce huge machine tools such as large boring machines, lathes and turning lathes in a mass campaign.

If we strive boldly, giving full play to our activity and creativity, as we did during the let-each-machine-tool-make-more movement in 1959, we shall also achieve great success in the campaign to produce more large machine tools. The Ryongsong Machine Factory
manufactured an eight-metre turning lathe more than a decade ago and the Pukjung Machine Factory produced a ten-metre turning lathe on the occasion of the Fifth Party Congress. There is no reason why other machine-building plants cannot make large machine tools such as a 15-metre lathe and 16-metre turning lathe.

In the past, when we carried out economic construction in difficult situations, repelling all the obstructionist manoeuvres of internal and external enemies, we strained to fight hard. Today, however, since we have become somewhat prosperous, some of our people are revealing complacency and lack of fighting spirit. The southern half of our homeland is still under the heel of the enemy. Since our enemies entrenched there are trying to provoke a decisive battle with us, we cannot be content with the successes already gained nor become lazy. We must be firmly resolved to crush our enemies and achieve the ultimate victory of the revolution by increasing our political, economic and military strength. In all sectors we must unleash our revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and boldly manufacture large machine tools, thus consolidating the large machine-building centres.

Next, we must make a great effort to develop the fishing industry. Fishing is very important for the improvement of the people’s living conditions. In our country, to solve the problem of supplementary food for the people it is more advantageous to increase fish production than to develop stockbreeding.

We have built large modernized pig farms at many places. We made a considerable investment in them and their production cost is high, because we are not running them properly. Our country’s stockbreeding is very young and it will take some time to develop it to a high level. However, our fishing industry can be said to have a long history. From ancient times our people have fished with small boats, so we have a certain experience in fishing. If we catch a lot of fish and every one of us eats 200 or 300 grammes of fish every day, it is as good as eating 100 grammes of meat. In our country the quickest way to solve the problem of supplementary food for the people is to develop the fishing industry.

To increase the production of fish quickly, we must thoroughly
eliminate conservatism and empiricism and bring about a great revolution in fishing.

First of all, we must use large fishing boats.

Every winter, shoals of pollack come into our coastal waters and stay for 40 days or so. However, because we do not yet have enough large boats, we are unable to catch large quantities in our coastal waters. When there is a high wind or waves are rough, small boats cannot go out into the sea and work properly during the pollack season. Small vessels can only work at sea for about 20 days. If we have many large boats and catch fish for 40 consecutive days, we shall catch more than one million tons of pollack.

If we have large vessels of 3,750 tons, we can easily catch one million tons of fish in the deep seas. This year our fishing flotillas went out into the deep seas a month earlier than usual and the 3,750-ton boats of our own make are catching 40 tons of fish per haul. I was told that they cannot catch more fish, because they are not accompanied by enough factory ships.

At present a fishing station with several hundred workers catches 25,000 tons of fish a year, but a 3,750-ton vessel is capable of catching the same amount with 70 men. If we have 100 fishing boats of 3,750 tons, we can catch 2.5 million tons of fish.

The days of fishing in small boats are gone. We cannot catch large quantities of fish with them. To catch large quantities of fish, it is absolutely essential to build large fishing boats.

Therefore, we must build many 3,750-ton boats and make transports of 5,000 tons, 10,000 tons and 20,000 tons to bring in fish as soon as they are caught.

To build many large boats, we must increase the production of different types of engines. We must particularly produce a great quantity of 2,500-hp medium-speed engines. Only when we have these engines, can we make 5,000 and 10,000-ton boats. These engines can also be used for diesel locomotives. At present the production of 2,500-hp medium-speed engines is progressing at a snail’s pace. The workers and management personnel of the plants assigned to the
production of these engines must make strenuous efforts to fulfil their pledge to the Party, come what may.

While making large fishing boats, we must modernize and expand our harbours to enable them to accommodate large vessels alongside.

We must also make proper use of the refrigeration plants already built. Through hard efforts during the last few years, we have built many such plants, each with a capacity of more than 10,000 tons in Wonsan and other large ports as well as a large number at places of consumption. Because we have built many refrigeration plants, we supply our people with fresh fish all the year round. Of the fish caught last year, about 60,000 tons are still kept in cold storage. Thanks to these facilities, we can preserve fresh fish and supply them to the population throughout the year. This is excellent!

However, you must not ignore the development of small-scale fishing, just because we are going to make large fishing boats. From olden times our forebears advised us to make use of the sea on the seashore and exploit the mountains in the mountainous areas. In our country, which is surrounded by sea on three sides, we must make good use of the sea. The rural villages on the coast should conduct extensive farming as well as fishing, actively developing fishing with small boats. Angling and seafood cultivation should be adequately organized.

Next, the chemical industry must be developed quickly.

For the advancement of this industry the most important task is to increase the production of calcium carbide greatly.

To our country, developing the chemical industry with calcium carbide of our own make is more advantageous than developing it with imported petroleum.

If we develop the chemical industry with petroleum, we can certainly make the products more diverse. However, since we are not yet in a position to produce petroleum, we must buy a tremendous amount from foreign countries to develop the chemical industry. If we want to import petroleum, the problem of transport will arise as well as many other complex problems. The world’s deposits of petroleum are not so great now.
Our country has vast quantities of limestone and anthracite—raw materials for calcium carbide. Therefore, we should produce carbide in large quantities and advance the chemical industry, using it as a raw material. Then we can quickly develop our chemical industry and raise the people’s living standards radically.

To increase the production of calcium carbide, revolutionary changes must be made also in the calcium carbide industry. At present calcium carbide furnaces are not airtight; intense heat and harmful gas leak out in profusion. We must quickly make the furnaces airtight to free the workers from hot, harmful labour and increase the production of calcium carbide markedly.

A great deal of electricity is needed to produce calcium carbide. So the carbide industries strive to save electricity as much as possible in making carbide.

For the development of the carbide industry we must build many hydroelectric power stations. It is more economical for us to build and run hydroelectric power stations than to obtain electricity by burning coal, although their construction is somewhat difficult. So it is advisable to construct many hydroelectric power stations. The cheapest electricity is produced in this way.

Our country has very many rivers on which hydroelectric power stations can be constructed. We can build more power stations on the Amnok and Tongno Rivers and can set up many others on the Ryesong, Chongchon and Taedong Rivers.

During the Fatherland Liberation War we went to Paeksong-ri, Sunchon County, Phyongan Province and assigned the teaching staff and students of Kim Il Sung University the task of studying the problem of building a canal to connect the Taedong River with Wonsan. Some time ago they brought us a design for a great canal to be constructed linking the Taedong River with Wonsan and its sluice would produce electricity; the envisaged generating capacity is 580,000 kw. This is a very interesting question, although it requires further examination. We must construct more hydroelectric power stations by actively exploiting our nation’s hydroelectric power resources.
We must also study the problem of producing electricity by utilizing the tidal power. And we must also construct an atomic power station with our own efforts.

Next, we must develop railway transport further.

The railways are the country’s arteries and the pilot of the national economy. In our country’s freight transport today, the railways play the most important role. Therefore, we must carry out the Party’s policy of giving priority to railway transport.

We must continue to advance the electrification of the railways forcefully. Electrification can markedly increase the capacity of railway transport. Electrification is easy, inexpensive and keeps the railways clean and neat. We must now begin to produce more copper and hasten the electrification of railways.

While electrifying the railways, we must replace light rails with heavy ones, produce many heavy goods wagons and expand yard tracks. Then railway electrification will prove its true worth and increase the haulage capacity several times over.

To develop railway transport, we must also construct many railway lines.

We must accelerate railway electrification and the construction of new railway lines to ease the strain on transport and meet the rapidly increasing demands of transport fully.

2. ON THE TEN LONG-TERM GOALS OF SOCIALIST ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION

At the recent Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party we proposed ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction.

We did this to encourage our people to fight more dynamically with an inspiring hope for the future and a clear-cut fighting objective for
the fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and for the attainment of the higher goals of socialist construction. Only if the prospects are bright and inspiring and the fighting objectives clear can our people strive to achieve them ahead of schedule.

When we were fighting the Japanese imperialists in bygone days, we advanced the Ten-Point Programme of the Association for the Restoration of the Fatherland. This programme called for the establishment of a genuine people’s revolutionary government in Korea after crushing Japanese imperialism and the formation of revolutionary armed forces to fight for the independence of Korea, the nationalization of industries, agrarian reform, an eight-hour workday, the equality of the sexes, free compulsory education and other democratic policies. Accordingly, the guerrillas and the people fought bravely against Japanese imperialism, firmly convinced that when this enemy was beaten, the people would become the masters of power, the workers owners of the factories and the peasants owners of the land. And the workers would work eight hours a day, youngsters would enjoy Korean national education free of charge and women would have equal rights. The ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction set forth recently will inspire our people to rise up more vigorously for the building of socialism and communism by highlighting the bright prospects and clear-cut fighting goals.

We also advanced the ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction at the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Party in order to elicit extensive opinions from the working class and the rest of the masses of the people to develop the next long-term plan correctly. At this congress you said you could attain the ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction in four years. This is very good. Whether the duration of the next plan should be six, five or four years, will be discussed and decided upon in the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, after taking your views into consideration.

If we work hard, we can achieve the ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction in a short time.
Of these ten goals, the goal of producing 12 million tons of steel is the most important and we can attain this goal. Our country has a vast amount of iron ore and the iron ore-producing centres have now been developed. We are going to increase the Musan Mine’s concentration capacity to 10 million tons. While increasing the production capacities of existing iron mines, we intend to develop many new ones. Recently, iron ore deposits have been found in many places including the Kim Chaek area in North Hamgyong Province; the find is tremendous and the quality is high. Since we are producing the necessary large-size equipment for mining development by our own efforts, we can develop many iron ore mines.

If we have a great deal of iron ore, we can produce as much iron as we need. We can build blast furnaces, sintering ovens and coke ovens entirely on our own. We have experience in building blast furnaces with a capacity of 1,500 cubic metres: so we can build 2,000 cubic metre furnaces. If we construct one 2,000 cubic metre blast furnace every year starting next year, we can attain the goal of 12 million tons of steel by 1980.

An important problem to be solved in the iron industry is the production of iron with our own fuel. Scientists, technicians and the working class must solve this question by using our coal instead of coke, and, even when coke is used, economizing it to the utmost by raising the proportion of our coal to coke. Only then can our iron industry be developed quickly on a sound basis.

We can also attain the goal of 20 million tons of cement. At present a modern cement factory with a capacity of 5 million tons is under construction in the Sunchon area and we are planning to build another modern cement factory with a capacity of 5 million tons in the Chonnae area in the future. Upon completion these two factories alone will produce 10 million tons of cement. If just 5 million tons are added, in addition to the present production capacity, it will be possible to produce 20 million tons of cement.

In addition to the goal of 12 million tons of steel and the goal of 20 million tons of cement, we shall be able to attain all the rest of the
goals—one million tons of nonferrous metals, 100 million tons of coal, 50 billion kwh of electricity, 5 million tons of mechanical products, 5 million tons of seafood, 5 million tons of chemical fertilizers, the reclamation of 100,000 hectares of tidelands and the harvesting of 10 million tons of grain.

Our Party is firmly convinced that the ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction will definitively be achieved. Once these goals are reached, our people will attain a high level of socialism and our country will become more powerful.

The achievement of these ten goals will hasten the south Korean revolution and the independent reunification of the country. We shall be able to give more powerful support to the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people, who, encouraged by the successes scored by the people in the northern half of Korea in socialist construction and ardently longing for the socialist system, will conduct their revolutionary struggle against US imperialism and its puppets more energetically.

Our people’s struggle to attain the ten goals of socialist economic construction will deeply inspire all progressive peoples in their battle for socialism, democracy, national independence and the building of a new society.

The whole Party and all the people must be mobilized to fight dynamically for the great work of socialist construction, to attain all the goals of the Six-Year Plan next year ahead of schedule and then advance towards the ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction. We shall thus achieve these ten goals in the next few years without fail.

3. ON THE TASKS OF SHOP MANAGERS OF FACTORIES AND ENTERPRISES

Shop managers are in charge of production units at factories and enterprises. A shop of a large factory or enterprise is a sort of factory.
Therefore, shop managers have great responsibilities and their work is very important.

The most important aspect of shop managers’ work is to organize production properly.

It is only when the shop managers organize production properly, that their shops can carry out their production assignments satisfactorily. To producers, production assignments are revolutionary tasks. So we can say that the shop managers’ main revolutionary task is to organize production well enough to ensure the satisfactory fulfilment of the production assignments given to their shops.

To organize production well, the shop managers must do a good job with men, equipment and materials.

At the Second National Meeting of the Vanguards in the Chollima Workteam Movement, we said that the main task of the Chollima Workteam Movement is to work well with men, equipment, materials and books. Work with men means intensifying the education of the working people, work with equipment means taking good care of equipment to make it operate at full capacity at all times and carrying out further modernization; and work with books means encouraging the working people to study harder and constantly raise their cultural and technological standards.

In their work with men, the shop managers must first work well with workteam leaders.

We can say that the shop manager is like a company commander or a platoon leader in the army and the workteam leader a squad leader. If they are to play their role satisfactorily, the shop managers must improve their work with workteam leaders and educate them well. In this way the workteam leaders will work well with men, equipment, materials and books.

The shop managers must also educate the workers to observe labour discipline voluntarily.

Tightening work discipline is one of the most important aspects of the management and operation of the socialist economy. If a factory lacks discipline and order it cannot be regarded as a socialist factory.
In order to strengthen work discipline, ideological education must be conducted properly so that all the workers will do their work willingly. In a capitalist society the workers are coerced: they are beaten, cursed and dismissed. In a socialist society this is not permitted. In our society there is only work discipline based on the workers’ voluntary spirit.

The shop managers must educate all the workers to love labour and work faithfully. It is especially important for them to make full use of 480-minute workday. The workers must not waste even a second of their 480-minute workday. During their working hours, they must dedicate all their energies and talents to their work, thinking of nothing but their duty to serve the interests of the working class and all the people. In this way they will produce more without a single reject item.

To tighten work discipline the shop managers and workteam leaders must also organize work well. According to my observations at factories and enterprises, one of the main reasons why work discipline is not thoroughly established is that work is not organized properly. They must assign every worker to a definite task suited to his knowledge, skill and constitution and provide suitable working conditions. And they must always check how they are working and correct their errors promptly.

Work with equipment and materials is an important aspect requiring the close attention of shop managers.

Production equipment is a valuable part of the wealth of the country and an important asset for improving the living standards of all the people. Therefore, all economic management officials and workers should value equipment and take good care of it.

The shop managers must attend to the management of equipment and examine and repair it when necessary, while, at the same time, educating the workers properly to look after the equipment. In this way, all the workers must take good care of equipment, just as the soldiers of the People’s Army take good care of their weapons.

Strenuous efforts must be made to save materials, while taking proper care of equipment. All the materials which are used at factories
and enterprises are produced by the hard work of our working class. All shops and workteams must economize as much as possible in steel and other materials and not a single metal shaving should be thrown away.

To improve the campaign to use materials sparingly, the shop managers must educate the workers well. Even when handling a piece of steel, the workers must be made to think how much the metallurgical workers sweated to melt the iron and how hard the miners worked to dig the ore. If they think in this way, the workers will not waste steel and discard metal shavings carelessly.

Next, the shop managers must keep the factories and shops tidy and clean.

As we have emphasized time and time again, we must build the interiors of factories like palaces and their surroundings like parks. Only when we build clean and tidy work environments can we maintain the workers’ health and produce superior goods.

The shop managers must apply the socialist principle of distribution correctly.

It must be applied thoroughly until everyone is armed with communist ideology. They will thus receive a share corresponding to the quality and quantity of work performed. We should be fair in our appraisal of men. A good worker should be judged as good and a bad worker as bad. If they are evaluated otherwise, the working people may lose their production spirit.

The shop managers must evaluate their workteam leaders’ work and the productive activity of the workteams correctly. So, they must visit the workteams, instead of sitting in their offices. If they only check production statistics in their offices, they cannot accurately judge how the workteams are working. They must always go to the production sites and assist the workteam leaders while mixing with the workers. Only in this way, can shop managers correctly appraise all the activities carried out in their shops.

The shop managers must also make every effort to improve the technical knowledge and skills of workers and technicians. They must
regularly organize meetings amongst the workers and technicians to pass on technical skills and discuss techniques so that all the shop members constantly raise their technical knowledge and skills.

The shop managers must be concerned about the cultural life of the workers.

Men must have a rest after work. The workers engaged in physical labour especially consume so much energy that they need sufficient rest to restore their strength. The shop managers should pay particular attention to the workers’ cultural life and provide conditions for them to have adequate rest.

During their leisure time the workers should be able to enjoy television broadcasts, read novels, see films, attend concerts and hold recreational gatherings. In the past, some officials did not allow the workers to conduct artistic activities, complaining that they were absorbed in dancing, not production. It is wrong to consider that these activities will retard production. Of course, artistic activities must not be carried out during working hours. After work, however, the workers should lead a cultural life and study.

In our country, conditions are now provided for the workers to enjoy a full cultural life and study after their eight-hour workday. Eight hours of work, eight hours of rest and eight hours of study have been demanded by the working class since the first days of the labour movement. If the workers were only forced to work without time for a cultural life, they could neither develop, nor live happily. Singing and dancing especially invigorate young workers and make them work harder. Therefore, the shop managers ought to organize the cultural life of the workers effectively.

Shop managers must also pay great attention to supply services for the workers.

They are responsible for the workers’ food, clothing and housing. They must look after their lives carefully, even checking to ensure that their bedrooms are properly heated, that they have complete sets of bedding and that they get a good night’s sleep. A shop manager who is not interested in supply services for the workers lacks revolutionary
comradeship. Such a man cannot make the revolution well. Shop managers have always to show deep concern for the workers’ supply services so that the workers experience no inconveniences whatsoever. The shop managers must make sure that all their workers lead their political lives faithfully.

Organizational life and studies are important aspects of political life. Only when these activities are intensified, can the working people be revolutionized. Therefore, Party members must take an active part in organized Party life and the members of the working people’s organizations must be active in the life of their particular organizations.

Organizational life is indispensable for everyone and nobody should disturb it. The shop managers must not only set an example by taking part in organizational activities, but must also provide conditions for their shop members to participate faithfully in organizational activities. Thus, all the shop members must constantly revolutionize themselves by participating in organizational activities and work and study and live in the communist spirit of “One for all and all for one”.

Lastly, let me touch briefly on improving the role of young intellectuals in carrying out the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

Young intellectuals at factories and enterprises for training have so far done a great deal of work. However, their success is only a preliminary; to carry out the tasks assigned by the Party, they must do more work.

They must never be contaminated by archaic ideas; they must maintain their high degree of revolutionary spirit and carry out the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions vigorously. In particular, they must carry on the ideological revolution forcefully and work hard to arm the working people closely with our Party’s Juche idea and revolutionize the whole of society. They must strengthen the ideological struggle against quarrelling over Party orders and instructions and carrying them out carelessly, and against the wasting
of manpower, conservatism, passivism and irresponsibility.

Today the revolutionary enthusiasm of our working class is very high. Upholding the Party’s militant call, the working class throughout the country have risen up in the struggle for the great task of socialist construction. The question is how to organize and mobilize the high revolutionary enthusiasm of the working class. The departments of the Party Central Committee as well as the Administration Council and other state and economic organizations must perform their organizational work skilfully, giving full scope to the high revolutionary spirit of the working class. In this way they will create a great new revolutionary improvement on all fronts of socialist construction.

I hope all of you present at this meeting and all the working class throughout the country will work well in the spirit of this congress and fight more vigorously to attain all the goals of the Six-Year Plan one year ahead of schedule as urged by the Red Letter of the Party Central Committee addressed to all Party members.
ON ABOLISHING THE TAX SYSTEM

A Law Adopted by the Fifth Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea at Its Third Session

March 21, 1974

It is the noble revolutionary duty of communists and a fundamental principle which the working-class party and state must adhere to in the revolution and construction to free the people from every kind of exploitation and oppression for all time and provide them with material well-being and a cultured life.

The revolutionary struggle and construction work are undertakings for the people so that they can free themselves from all fetters and enjoy an independent and creative life as masters of nature and society.

After liberation, our Party which is guided solely by the great Juche idea, freed our people from exploitation and oppression for all time by leading the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution and socialist revolution to victory.

Thanks to the correct policy and wise leadership of our Party and the Government of our Republic, the three revolutions, ideological, technical and cultural, to free the working people from all natural and social fetters for ever, are developing in depth in our country, and the historic task of eliminating the vestiges of the former society is being carried out successfully.

To abolish the tax system is a revolution to free the working people
from these vestiges and a great change to meet the centuries-old desire of the people.

The system of taxation which came into being with the emergence of the state, has been used in a class society for thousands of years as a means of preserving the ruling machine of the governing classes and plundering the working people.

In the old days it was an instrument for exploiting our people. In particular, the colonial tax system imposed upon them by the Japanese imperialists was the most brutal and murderous system, unprecedented in history. Our people cursed it and resented it.

Our people were opposed to heavy taxation for ages in the exploiter society. They fought ceaselessly, particularly against the predatory tax system under Japanese imperialist colonial rule. But their struggle did not succeed, in the final analysis, because it was not linked with the political struggle to seize power.

It was not until our revolution was guided by the Juche idea that this fight became a part of the revolutionary struggle against imperialism and the exploiting system and went on towards the radical solution of the tax problem.

During the glorious anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle the Korean communists fought in support of the revolutionary and people-oriented tax policy laid down in the Ten-Point Programme of the Association for the Restoration of the Fatherland, and they set a brilliant example in implementing the tax policy in the anti-Japanese guerrilla base, the liberated area.

Our Party and people’s government abolished the predatory tax system of the Japanese imperialists and established a people-oriented, democratic tax system by implementing the Juche-oriented tax policy which was formulated in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and detailed in the Twenty-Point Platform after liberation.

The new, people-oriented taxation played a big role in laying the foundation of the independent national economy by rehabilitating and developing the destroyed economy, and also in accelerating the socialist reorganization of the relations of production in urban and
rural communities and promoting the well-being of the people.

The Government of our Republic made effective use of the state tax revenue as a supplementary source of funds for economic construction and cultural development, while at the same time systematically lightening the tax burden on the people as the foundation of the independent national economy was consolidated.

As the socialist reorganization of the relations of production was completed and as the foundation of socialist industrialization was consolidated in our country, the question of abolishing the tax system became the order of the day.

As the conditions and possibilities for the abolition of taxation matured, the Government of our Republic first took measures to abolish the agricultural tax in kind during the period between 1964 and 1966.

This was a historic step to free our farmers from the tax burden completely in accordance with the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*. It was also a radical step to strengthen the worker-peasant alliance and consolidate the economic foundations of cooperative farms and increase the farmers’ real income quickly.

With the abolition of the agricultural tax in kind, only income tax and local self-government tax remained in our country, and these taxes accounted for a negligible portion of the state revenue.

Since the socialist system in our country has been further consolidated and developed, and since the strength of the independent national economy has increased incomparably, it is time to abolish all taxes.

In view of the urgent need for socio-economic progress, the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea discussed the matter and decided to abolish the tax system, a vestige of the old society.

In this way the people’s dream to live in a tax-free society has come true, and ours has become the first tax-free country in the world.

In a socialist society it accords with the law of social progress to abolish the tax system, a legacy of the old society.
Under the socialist system, the socialist state and cooperative economies constitute the economic foundations of the state, and the unity and cooperation of the working people is basic to social relations. The social and economic relations in a socialist society are the basis on which to reduce the tax burden on the people systematically and, finally, abolish it.

The tax system in a socialist society is no more than an auxiliary source of funds to meet the needs of the state and society for a certain period, and as such it is utilized as a supplementary means to adjust differences in the people’s standards of living.

The abolition of taxation in our country is based on the advantages of our socialist system and accords completely with the law of development of this system.

The major advantage of our socialist system which fully incorporates the great idea of Juche in itself, lies in the fact that the state is completely responsible for the material and cultural lives of the workers, farmers and other working people.

Under our socialist system all the working people not only receive distributions according to the quality and quantity of work done but also enormous benefits from the state: they are provided with all basic living conditions ranging from food, clothing, housing, the education of their children, medical treatment and working conditions to recreation facilities.

The state benefits given to the working people are a bud of communist distribution which is developing in our country steadily. They ensure equal improvement in the working people’s living standards and provide them with happy lives free from care.

Under our socialist system where the state can finance the revolution and construction on the strength of the income from the socialist economic sector and can afford to spend a large sum of money to look after the people in a responsible manner, it has become unnecessary to collect taxes from the people as an auxiliary means of meeting the needs of the state and society for funds.

Under our socialist system where the exploiting classes were
liquidated a long time ago, and where all the working people are equally well-off without any great difference in their standards of living, it is unnecessary to keep the tax system any longer, the system which serves as a means to adjust the income of the people on an equitable basis.

Our socialist working people who armed themselves with the great idea of Juche and who have become masters of the revolution and construction under our socialist system, are taking part conscientiously in all state affairs, regarding them as their personal concern.

To our working people who are acquitting themselves well in their solemn duty to the socialist motherland, as the masters of the state and society, displaying a high degree of revolutionary awareness and voluntary enthusiasm, it has become unnecessary to retain taxation, a legacy of the old society, as their civil duty to the state.

Our powerful socialist, independent, national economy is a solid material guarantee for abolishing the tax system.

Under the wise leadership of the Party, our people have built a powerful socialist, independent, national economy in a short period of their history by carrying out the policy of building an independent national economy successfully under the revolutionary banner of self-reliance.

Today our Juche-oriented industry has become a comprehensive, independent and modern industry which has been equipped with up-to-date techniques, and depends on solid raw-material production centres of its own. The irrigation and electrification of our agriculture have been completed, and our rural economy has become an advanced socialist agriculture which is run with the help of machines and chemicals.

Our independent national economy is standing on its own feet, developing steadily and rapidly, unaffected by worldwide economic fluctuations and crises, and our socialist state finance which is based on this economy is becoming more solid.

The powerful, independent national economy and solid financial basis in our country enabled us to take important measures to reduce
prices of industrial goods sharply and even to abolish taxes for the well-being of the people, while carrying on the enormous projects for the building of socialism, continuing to make great efforts for social and cultural measures and strengthening national defence to make it more impregnable.

The abolition of the tax system in our country is the brilliant victory of the great Juche idea as well as a demonstration of the incomparable advantages of our socialist system which is the embodiment of the Juche idea and the great capability of our socialist independent national economy.

Thanks to the immortal Juche idea and its brilliant victory, our people are being provided with a richer, independent and creative life in the socialist land of happiness, where there is no exploitation, oppression or taxation.

The epochal, people-oriented measure taken by our Party and the Government of our Republic to abolish taxes for all time will further encourage our working class and the rest of the masses to the great struggle for the enormous socialist construction, the struggle to implement the magnificent programme of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and to reach a higher eminence of socialism, and will inspire them to heroic feats.

The abolition of the tax system will give greater hope and confidence to the south Korean people who are fighting resolutely for democratic freedom, for the right to survive and for the country’s independent and peaceful reunification, in spite of unprecedented fascist repression.

In accordance with the provisions of Article 33, the Socialist Constitution of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPRK decides:

1. The tax system, a vestige of the old society, shall be abolished completely,
2. The Administration Council of the DPRK shall take measures to implement this law, and
3. The law shall be effective from April 1, 1974.
Allow me first to thank you for spreading our Party’s Juche idea through Al Sahafa and for actively supporting our people’s revolutionary struggle for national reunification and socialist construction.

Now let me answer your questions.

You asked whether we were confident of victory from the first days of our fight against the Japanese imperialist aggressors.

From childhood we witnessed the miserable plight of our people, who were downtrodden by the Japanese imperialist aggressors, and suffered acute sorrow as a stateless nation.

While occupying Korea, Japanese imperialism established a most brutal and tyrannical colonial rule over our country. The Japanese imperialist aggressors robbed our country of its wealth and ruthlessly exploited our people. They wantonly trampled underfoot even our people’s elementary right to live and bloodily suppressed their struggle for freedom and liberation. The bestial, outrageous aggressors of Japanese imperialism massacred our patriots and plunged the whole country into a sea of blood.

We could not just look on at the bestialities perpetrated by the criminal aggressors of Japanese imperialism and the tragic lot of our fellow-countrymen who, deprived of their nation, were going about
hungry and in rags, maltreated and humiliated. We started our struggle with a firm determination to crush the Japanese imperialist aggressors and regain our lost homeland at all costs and save our people from distress.

Of course, we never thought that we could easily defeat the ferocious aggressors of Japanese imperialism who were armed to the teeth. However, from the first days of our struggle, we were fully convinced that we could assuredly defeat them and achieve the independence of the country.

We firmly believed that we would win for certain because our revolutionary cause for the people’s freedom and liberation against foreign aggressors was a just one. History shows that the just struggle of the oppressed masses of people against exploitation and repression and for freedom and liberation is bound to win. It is a law of historical development that the aggressors and oppressors go under and the masses of the people emerge victorious.

From the first days of our struggle we were convinced that the master of the Korean revolution was the Korean people and, therefore, the Korean people had to and could shape their destiny only by their own efforts. It was our firm belief that when the masses of the people were awakened to revolutionary consciousness and closely united they could become a truly great force and defeat the aggressors with their own strength however unfavourable and difficult the conditions might be and win freedom and liberation.

Our fight against the Japanese imperialist aggressors was indescribably hard. With a firm belief in victory, however, we waged a vigorous struggle against the Japanese imperialist aggressors, giving revolutionary education to and closely uniting all those who loved their country and people—workers, peasants, young people, students, religious people, traders and manufacturers—and thereby eventually destroyed Japanese imperialism and won national liberation.

Next, on your question as to how, in a historically very short period of time, we were able to overcome the consequences of colonialism and build on the debris of war an economic foundation
that could meet all our domestic requirements.

A dependent and very backward economy handicapped by colonial lopsidedness was handed down to our people from the old society and even this was totally destroyed in the three-year war. Under the correct leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, our people successfully carried out the postwar rehabilitation of the national economy in a little more than three years by demonstrating a high degree of creative enthusiasm and patriotic devotion, and brilliantly accomplished the historic task of socialist industrialization in a very short time–only 14 years–through an uninterrupted dynamic struggle. As a result, our country, once a backward colonial agricultural state, has now been turned into a socialist industrial state with a powerful heavy industry, a modern light industry and a developed agriculture, which can develop the people’s lives and manage the economy on its own.

This great victory won by our country is the fruit of the dedicated struggle undertaken by the entire nation to carry through the Party’s line for the building of an independent national economy by giving full play to their revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

For our country, once far removed from modern technological civilization, it was no easy task to build an independent, comprehensive economy by its own efforts. Moreover, since the country was divided into the north and the south and US imperialism and its stooges were constantly trying to unleash war, our people faced innumerable obstacles and hardships. However, our people had the revolutionary consciousness that they were responsible for their destiny and that they should hew it out by themselves; thus, they forged ahead valiantly along a difficult and rugged path to build a new life and successfully laid the foundation for an independent national economy.

Our Party has strictly adhered to the revolutionary principle of solving all problems arising in the construction of the socialist economy by relying on our people’s efforts.

If one lacks the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, one tends to lose faith in one’s own strength and does not attempt to tap one’s own
national resources, with the result that the national economy cannot be developed quickly. Of course, foreign aid is necessary. But, only when one relies mainly on one’s own efforts in all circumstances, can one accelerate revolution and construction to the utmost. Our Party, therefore, put forward the line of building a rich and powerful country using our own efforts and domestic resources, opposing dependence on others, and energetically organized and mobilized the masses to implement this line.

The masses of the people are masters of the revolution and construction and it is they who carry them out. The success of revolution and construction depends, in the final analysis, on how their creative efforts are mobilized. Our Party has been able to work great miracles in socialist economic construction by giving full scope to the inexhaustible creative energies of the masses. When our revolution and construction encountered difficulties and trials, the Party had faith in the masses and surmounted them by enlisting their strength and wisdom.

Our experience has shown that to rely on the broad masses of people and set them in motion is the most revolutionary, positive method to turn to account all potentials and possibilities and hasten the revolution and construction to the maximum, and that herein lies the secret to the tremendous promotion of economic construction.

Next, let me explain the reason why we oppose the admission of “two Koreas” to the United Nations.

As you know, at the UN General Assembly last year, US imperialism and its followers submitted a proposal for simultaneous admission of “two Koreas” to the United Nations. This proposal was a product of the “two Koreas” policy which had long been pursued by the US imperialists. When they failed to achieve their reckless plan to swallow up the whole of Korea by invading the northern half of Korea, the US imperialists came out with the “two Koreas” policy so as to keep our country divided for ever and maintain south Korea at least as their military base of aggression and as a commodity market. The south Korean authorities are enthusiastically following the “two
Koreas” policy of the US imperialists to retain, if only for a few more days, their military fascist “regime” which is now being shaken to its very foundations.

We can never accept the proposal of the US imperialists and their stooges for the simultaneous admission to the United Nations of “two Koreas”. If the north and the south enter the United Nations separately, our country will remain divided for ever. This completely contradicts our people’s will and desire. The permanent division of the country will bring immeasurable misfortunes and sufferings to our people and place a great obstacle in the way of the future development of our nation.

Our people who have lived as a homogeneous nation with one culture and one language for a very long time, do not want the partition of the nation; they only want reunification. If there are people in our country who oppose national reunification and want division, they are only the tiny handful of people in authority, landlords and comprador capitalists in south Korea.

Ever since the country was partitioned into the north and the south because of the occupation of south Korea by the US imperialist army of aggression, we have made strenuous efforts to reunify the country independently by peaceful means. Last year when the moves of the internal and external divisive elements became more flagrant, we declared that the north and the south must not enter the United Nations separately and that if they are to enter it before the country is reunified, they should do so as a single state under the name of the Federal Republic of Koryo, at least after a Federation is set up.

The sincere efforts of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the country and our policy for admission to the United Nations as a single state have won unreserved support from progressive people the world over. Last year the UN General Assembly supported our three principles of national reunification, the keynote of which is independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity. Thanks to the positive efforts of the representatives of
many countries including the Sudan, it adopted a resolution on the immediate dissolution of the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea”, a body on the US imperialist payroll and their tool of interference in our internal affairs, and completely checked and frustrated the plot to admit “two Koreas” to the United Nations hatched by the US imperialists and their lackeys. This proved clearly once again that our firm, consistent policy for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country is absolutely correct.

At the Third Session of the Fifth Supreme People’s Assembly held some time ago, the Government of our Republic took a further initiative to create favourable prerequisites for the achievement of the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

In a letter sent to the US Congress on behalf of the Supreme People’s Assembly, we proposed talks on the question of concluding a peace agreement with the United States which, among other things, would stipulate that neither side should invade the other and that both sides should discontinue arms reinforcement and the arms race, that the United States should not meddle in Korea’s internal affairs or obstruct its reunification and should withdraw the US troops occupying south Korea and that our country should not be made a military base or operational base of any foreign country after the withdrawal of US troops.

In order to remove tension between north and south and accelerate our country’s independent and peaceful reunification, it is necessary today to replace the Armistice Agreement with a permanent peace agreement. The Government of the Republic has made tireless efforts to solve this question, and held discussions with the south Korean authorities. However, they have not accepted any of our reasonable proposals but have further intensified war preparations and divisive moves with US imperialist backing.

The record shows that the south Korean authorities have neither the intention nor the capacity to solve the question of a peace agreement. In this situation we consider it most appropriate to discuss this question
directly with the United States, a signatory to the Korean Armistice Agreement and the real power capable of guaranteeing a peace agreement.

The reasonable step we took at the recent session of the Supreme People’s Assembly has been warmly welcomed and supported by many countries and progressive people of the world. However, the US authorities have not yet shown any positive reaction. If they eventually turn down our just proposal, they will clearly proclaim to the world, once again, that US imperialism is the most shameless aggressor who is violating our people’s sovereignty and hampering Korean reunification and that it is the heinous enemy of peace.

As in the past, so in the future, the Government of our Republic will strengthen solidarity with the socialist countries, countries of the third world and progressive people the world over and carry on its tireless struggle to bring about the independent and peaceful reunification of the country with their active support and encouragement.

I take this opportunity to express my deep gratitude to the Sudanese Government and people for their active support and encouragement for our Party’s policy of independent and peaceful reunification and the Korean people’s struggle for its implementation.

Now, I will refer briefly to our position with regard to the settlement of the Middle East question.

The Middle East question has arisen as a result of the imperialists’ aggressive activities to strangle the anti-imperialist, national-liberation movement of the Arab peoples and place this area under their domination by manipulating the Zionists. It is entirely due to the brazen aggressive acts of the Zionists and the imperialists, their manipulators, that the Middle East question has remained unsolved and war has broken out more than once in this area. At present US imperialism is acting as “mediator” for peace in the Middle East, but this is no more than a trick to cover up its black aggressive intentions and its desire to profit from the troubles in that part of the world.

For a satisfactory solution of the Middle East question, first of all, an end must be put to the aggressive activities of the US imperialists
and the Zionists in that area. The Israeli aggressors must withdraw completely from the Arab territory they are occupying and the legitimate rights of the Palestinian people must be restored. So long as the imperialists persist in their aggressive manoeuvres, the Israeli aggressors keep occupying the Arab territory and the legitimate rights of the Palestinian people are not restored, the Middle East question cannot be settled fairly nor can there be a lasting peace in that region.

We consider that the Middle East question must, on all accounts, be settled in conformity with the will and interests of the Arab peoples and in favour of their liberation cause. No matter how the Middle East question is settled, if it meets the demands of the Arab peoples, we shall actively support it.

Today the Arab peoples are waging a hard fight against the Israeli aggressors and their instigators, the imperialists. The Arab peoples’ anti-imperialist, anti-Israeli struggle is a just battle to defend national independence and dignity, restore the occupied Arab territory and carry out the Palestinian people’s cause of liberation. This just struggle enjoys the support and sympathy of people the world over.

As they have done in the past, the Korean people will continue to support the valiant struggle of all the Arab peoples against Zionist and imperialist aggression resolutely, and will always remain a close comrade-in-arms of the Arab peoples in fighting the common enemy.

Let me now briefly mention our views on the present situation and the future of Asia.

The imperialists have exploited the peoples and plundered resources in Asia over centuries and imposed a harsh colonial rule upon the Asian peoples. However, the Asia of today is not the Asia of yesterday, an object of unbridled plunder and oppression by the imperialists.

Today the Asian peoples, firmly taking their destiny into their own hands, are advancing strongly under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence. The peoples of the overwhelming majority of Asian countries have already won national independence and many peoples are waging courageous struggles against imperialist aggression and for
complete national independence and the independent development of their countries.

In Asia, the people’s forces for peace and democracy, national independence and socialism are growing and strengthening with every passing day, whereas the imperialists’ aggressions and interventions are proving a total failure.

All facts strikingly show that the situation in Asia is developing in favour of the people and to the disadvantage of the imperialist aggressors and that the masters of Asia are the Asian peoples.

Far from learning the obvious lesson from the bankruptcy of their policy of aggression in Asia and withdrawing from there, the US imperialists are working viciously to save themselves from their predicament. The US imperialists are trying to bring about their aggressive ambitions by making Asians fight against each other in line with the “Nixon doctrine”, while stepping up their war plans in addition to placatory and deceptive tricks under their cunning double-dealing tactics.

The US imperialists are conniving to achieve their aggressive aims and bolster up their crumbling system of colonial rule by instigating the Japanese militarists and other reactionaries and puppets in Asia. Today, the Japanese militarists who have revived under the wings of US imperialism are recklessly trying to bring about their old dream of the “Greater East Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere” by taking advantage of the Asian strategy of US imperialism, and its Asian puppets are also making desperate efforts to save themselves from their doom by clinging to the sleeves of their master.

US imperialism is disturbing peace and security in Asia. It is the main obstacle to the independent development of countries in this part of the world and the primary common enemy of the Asian peoples.

Asia can only have a prosperous future when the US imperialists have been completely driven out of Asia and their aggressions and interventions in the Asian countries have been checked.

Through their long experience of history, the Asian peoples know that they can only shatter all aggressions and interventions by foreign
imperialists and achieve national independence and their countries’ independent progress through their own efforts; they will finally expel the US imperialists from all parts of Asia by carrying out a more vigorous anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle.

There are many revolutionary and fighting countries in Asia. The Asian peoples’ anti-imperialist, revolutionary awareness is very high. Today more and more peoples in Asia are closely united in one joint front against imperialism. The Asian peoples will solve all Asian problems in their favour through their just struggle, rejecting intervention and coercion by any outside forces, and build a new, peaceful and prosperous Asia.
ON SOME TASKS FOR IMPROVING EDUCATION IN SCHOOLS

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea

May 3, 1974

Today the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee heard a report on the state of the schools in the general education sector. From this report I can see that two major shortcomings were revealed in this work.

The first of these is that school education has been mostly outside Party and state control.

So far, the educational departments of the Party Central Committee and of the provincial, city and county Party committees have not guided school education well. These departments have a mission to exercise Party control over school education. But they have not carried out this mission satisfactorily. The Education Commission under the Administration Council and other state administrative institutions in charge of educational affairs have also not directed and controlled schools as they should. This being the case, school education has proceeded generally outside Party and state control.

The inefficient direction and control of school education cannot be attributed to any shortage of staff capable of supervision. There are many people in Party and state administrative bodies who are in charge of educational work. In Pyongyang, for instance, the staff members of
educational departments of district Party committees and district administrative committees alone, excluding those of the city Party and administrative committees, will be perfectly able to control all the city’s 500 schools which belong to the general education sector if each of them takes charge of two schools. If he stays at one of the schools in his charge for 150 days, he will fully understand the real conditions in the school. It is beyond question that a full-time supervisor can become familiar with two schools in a year. If he tries hard, he can have three or four under his control, instead of two. So if the staff of educational departments at all levels are set the task they can have the whole school situation in their hands within a year or so.

You cannot say that educational work was not well supervised because the Party and state administrative bodies had no department or too few staff members to do the job. There are enough of them. The unsatisfactory control of school education by the Party and the state is entirely due to the fact that the Party and state administrative bodies neglected their duties, without exercising all their authority, and that the officials in charge of educational work lacked a sense of responsibility and enthusiasm. In order to direct educational work and manage schools well, we set up the educational departments in the Party as well as administrative organs which are in charge of educational affairs. If the Party and state officials in charge of educational work had been given explicit assignments and set to work, the shortcomings in general education could have been discovered quickly, and rectified through the ideological struggle, and a revolutionary atmosphere could have been established in schools. The main reason for these shortcomings is, in the final analysis, that Party and state control over the schools has been neglected. From now onwards, we shall have to strengthen this control considerably.

The second major fault in general education is that educational work has not been combined properly with the pupils’ organizational lives in the League of Socialist Working Youth and the Children’s Union.

Under our socialist system we should educate and reform pupils,
not by thrashing, scolding or punishing them, but through their organizational lives.

In the days of Japanese imperialism, schools which were governed by the bourgeois concept of education, tried to control the pupils through punishment such as thrashing or expelling them from school. By contrast, under our socialist system today neither beating nor abuse is allowed. In former days it was difficult to enter a school so pupils regarded expulsion as serious. But in our country nowadays everyone can go to school and even if he is expelled, he does not consider it serious because the state provides him with a living. Under our socialist system an organizational life and not punishment should be the basic means of educating pupils.

In our country everyone participates in organizational life from childhood. When he is a child he joins an organization of the Children’s Union and when he is a little older he joins an organization of the League of Socialist Working Youth. Afterwards, he takes part in the organizational life of the Party or of working people’s unions. In this way all the people join their particular organizations stage by stage. Therefore, it is essential for their future conscientious organizational life that the schools improve the functions of LSWY and CU organizations and enhance their members’ organizational lives.

We must ensure that, when young, the pupils lead life in the Children’s Union well and that, when they are members of the LSWY, they participate in this life well. When they are members of the Children’s Union, pupils must be encouraged to have an ambition to become members of the LSWY; and when they are members of the LSWY they must be stimulated to work hard to become members of the Workers’ Party of Korea, to become revolutionaries.

At present the LSWY is not paying sufficient attention to schools. This is a great failing. In our country universal ten-year compulsory education is in force, and all children of school age attend school. So there is a large number of young people in school. That is why we have always stressed that the LSWY should concentrate on schools.
However, it is still not doing this.

From now onwards, the league organizations must pay particular attention to its work in schools and to school education.

They must first take care to select fine people as LSWY instructors and CU instructors in schools.

More often than not, school LSWY instructors are not considered essential. Vacancies for teachers are never left unfilled, but vacancies for league instructors are ignored. This practice is wrong. The absence of one teacher or two can be endured, but not the absence of a league instructor. The lack of one or two teachers can be compensated for by letting others work a little harder. But if there is no league instructor in a school, the pupils will be like orphans.

We can say that in our schools the league instructors and the CU instructors are social and political guardians of the pupils. At home parents are their guardians; but at school league instructors and CU instructors are their guardians. They ought to be the political protectors of their pupils and responsible for their political integrity.

In schools these instructors are no less important than teachers and they have a heavy responsibility for the education of their pupils. Teachers are responsible for giving them knowledge, but the instructors are responsible for protecting their political integrity, preventing them from being affected by unsound ideas and leading them along the right path.

It is very important to protect the political integrity of the people from their early years. Parents provide their children with food and clothing and look after them physically, whereas league organizations give their pupils political nourishment and educate them politically. We can say that the parents’ training is moral education, and the organizations’ education is ideological education and that parents are the protectors of the physical lives of their children, but the league organizations are the protectors of their political integrity.

For this reason, the LSWY and CU instructors have the inherent responsibility of supervising whether or not the teachers educate the pupils properly.
Of course, our school education is immune to serious errors. If textbooks are incorrectly compiled, educational work may go astray. But good textbooks and reference books are supplied, and so educational work will proceed on the right lines provided that teachers teach their pupils in accordance with these books. However, the league and CU instructors who are political guardians of their pupils must always check whether teachers are teaching properly or not. When the teachers teach the pupils the wrong way, the instructors must arrange an ideological struggle against this sort of practice and see that it is rectified by bringing this matter even as far as the Party Central Committee through the league organization.

The school instructors of the league and the CU must take full responsibility for the guidance of the pupils’ extracurricular activities. Many officials of the Education Commission and other administrative organs in charge of educational affairs still consider that the control of pupils by the heads of schools or by teachers is sufficient as it used to be in the past. They are wrong. Teachers can only control pupils during school hours, but not well enough after school. Nor do their parents control them during this time because they are all working. This being the case, if the league and CU instructors do not supervise them, the pupils will remain totally beyond control after school.

As matters now stand, primary and senior middle school children have more time after school than school hours. Who should take care of the pupils after school? The league and CU organizations must do it. The school instructors of the LSWY and the CU must assume responsibility for the political and organizational lives of the pupils, and particularly for the guidance of their extracurricular activities. They should organize different collective activities including art and sports groups amongst the pupils and also help the pupils who are behind in their studies. If the organizational lives of the CU and the LSWY are well organized in schools there will surely be people who take care of boys and girls even after school. And there will be no problems in the education of schoolchildren even if their parents return
home late at night from work, and they will be prevented from becoming delinquents from the start.

Every school must regulate the organizational life of the CU members, so that they can acquire the habit of organizational life from primary school days and remember that they cannot live outside their organization and collective. If they study and take part in sports and art activities in a collective way from their primary school days they will get used to a collective life. Then, it will help them to lead an organizational life in the LSWY properly after their promotion to the senior middle school.

In view of the great importance of the role of the school instructors of the LSWY and the CU, we must select them from amongst fine people.

At present each senior middle school has an average of 400 league members under the supervision of one league instructor. I think that one person seems rather less than is needed. But one instructor can manage to take care of the league life of all the pupils if he concentrates first on the hard-core elements and stimulates them since each class has its own league organization and its members are sensible. The league instructors in senior middle schools must be intelligent, highly responsible and capable of guiding the league life skilfully.

We should also build the ranks of the CU instructors well. It is desirable that a school with many CU members should have two instructors. One of them should direct the organizational life of the pupils of the primary course and the other that of the CU members of the senior middle-school course. When pupils are in class the CU instructors have nothing to do. Therefore, they can undertake some class work. But they should be given less of this work than other teachers. For example, if an ordinary teacher gives 800 to 1,000 lessons a year, a CU instructor should give 200 to 300 lessons so that he can guide the organizational life of the CU members well during the remaining hours.

Because it was important to strengthen the organizational lives of the LSWY and CU at school, the Party took steps to set up schools to
train league and CU instructors a long time ago.

At present, they are not only trained at the LSWY University but at the LSWY and CU instructors’ classes of universities of education. Although it is important to train teachers, it is more important to train the school LSWY and CU instructors. So the Central Committee of the LSWY must always pay attention to the training of LSWY and CU instructors at universities of education as well as at the LSWY University.

If the LSWY University and the classes for the LSWY and CU instructors at the universities of education cannot produce enough LSWY instructors, it is advisable to organize departments for the training of LSWY instructors in the universities of education.

The Education Commission and other administrative organizations which are in charge of educational affairs must not fail to maintain close relations with the LSWY organizations and must pay attention to the lives of the LSWY and CU organizations in schools.

Many officials in charge of educational affairs still do not have a proper understanding of the great importance of organizational life in the education of pupils and do not know how to combine school education with the organizational life satisfactorily. Without combining them in a socialist society it is impossible to train pupils to be fine people and revolutionize them.

I should like to cite an example in illustration of the great influence an organizational life at school has on the pupils in shaping their world outlook and in their revolutionization.

When I was visiting the Taedongmun Primary School in Pyongyang a few years ago, I asked eight-year-old pupils who had just joined the Children’s Union if they had ever been criticized in their union and what their feelings were when they received criticism for the first time in the union. One of them replied that he had been criticized for the first time at a meeting of the Children’s Union for his failure to write down what the teacher dictated because he had not sharpened his pencils, and that when he was criticized, he felt himself trembling and his heart thumping. He added that after the criticism he had never
failed to sharpen his pencils beforehand and had been good at class work. Another pupil said that he had once been criticized for neglecting his homework and that since then he had never failed to do it. From these answers we can see how important the organizational life of the Children’s Union is in the education of pupils.

Bourgeois educational theory advocates against pupils leading a political life. This is a mistaken opinion. It is very beneficial for pupils in their education to participate in an organizational life, a political life, from their childhood, and education through a collective life is very effective. A sharp criticism at a CU meeting is more effective in educating children than several hundred instances of persuasion and scolding at home by their parents. While criticism is given, not only those who are criticized but also others who are present at the time are trained. If a pupil who has not sharpened his pencils beforehand or has neglected his homework is given criticism, the other pupils also feel that they must not neglect such things.

In a socialist society educational institutions cannot do their work satisfactorily if they do not cooperate with the LSWY or the CU organizations. Just as schools cannot educate their pupils properly without the cooperation of their parents, so schools cannot educate their pupils in a correct way without the cooperation of the LSWY and CU organizations. At present, however, schools make light of the organizational life of the pupils. We must see that this shortcoming is corrected as soon as possible and that the schools in the general education sector improve the LSWY and CU lives of the pupils radically.

Party organizations should help the LSWY to improve its guidance of the pupils’ life in the league organizations. Since there is a large number of league members in universities and colleges as well as in the schools of general education, it is very important to strengthen the LSWY organizational life in the educational institutions at all levels.

While listening to the report today I felt that there were many shortcomings in the work of the school CU and LSWY instructors. It is advisable for the Party Central Committee department in charge of the
working people’s organizations to hear both the work report of the school CU instructors and that of the school league instructors.

In addition, we must intensify the ideological education of teachers. There are now large numbers of teachers in our country. The teachers of senior middle schools and primary schools, not counting the lecturers of universities, exceed 120,000. This is by no means a small number.

Responsibility for the ideological education of the teachers in the general education sector must be accepted by the county Party committees concerned. In the past the county Party organizations have not controlled educational work nor have they trained teachers well. From now onwards, the county Party committees must thoroughly establish a system by which to control general education and improve the ideological training of teachers.

It is particularly important to give the teachers a sound ideological training because they are responsible for educating their pupils.

County Party organizations must thoroughly establish a system of training teachers in a collective way. In Pyongyang and other cities teachers should be gathered once a week on a district basis for training purposes.

In giving teachers collective training, it is important to run the systems of Wednesday lectures and Saturday study correctly. I was told that in the past some teachers were not willing to attend public lectures and Saturday study. They must not neglect them. The county Party organizations must establish strict systems of Wednesday lectures and Saturday study by which they are informed of the Party policies and given ideological education on a regular basis. If it is difficult for all the teachers of a county to assemble at one place, they should gather at a number of different places and hear lectures and the explanation of Party policies.

An ideological struggle should be intensified to establish the Party’s monolithic ideological system firmly amongst teachers.

At present there are only a few teachers who have not acquired the Party’s monolithic ideological system. The majority have established
this ideological system, and if there are any who have not established it, they are only few in number. They have not yet acquired this ideological system because they have not rid themselves of the remnants of outdated ideas completely.

The educational establishments must not allow even 0.1 per cent of their teaching staff to go without acquiring the Party’s monolithic ideological system. They must develop a strong ideological struggle against the practices which are contrary to the Party’s monolithic ideological system. The ideological struggle must be encouraged not only amongst university lecturers but also amongst senior middle school and primary school teachers. I am told that at present the teachers are not enthusiastic about the ideological struggle. They must wage an uncompromising ideological struggle.

The people who can be re-educated through an ideological struggle should be allowed to remain in schools, but those who cannot be reformed should be dismissed. If schools keep people who have not acquired the Party’s monolithic ideological system, the consequences will be serious because schools are educational institutions; one of them will affect ten people and ten a hundred. Not one man who has harmful ideas must be allowed, particularly in Kim Il Sung University, the most important centre for the training of cadres who will work in Party and state bodies. Without a class struggle and ideological struggle it is impossible to carry out the revolution. Tolerance is not required in the class struggle; we must fight uncompromisingly against unsound practices.

Next, a strenuous effort is needed to raise the qualifications of the teachers.

Educational work has been making rapid progress in our country. Immediately after the war we introduced compulsory primary school education which was soon followed by the adoption of compulsory secondary education and then by compulsory nine-year technical education. At present, we are carrying out universal ten-year compulsory education. As educational work has developed so quickly that not all the schools have been staffed with qualified teachers.
Today we have more than 120,000 teachers in the field of general education. We have not had enough time to give all of them normal education to qualify them.

Since not all the teachers in primary and senior middle schools are qualified through normal education, it is an urgent matter to improve their qualifications while more qualified teachers are trained by improving normal education.

In order to improve their qualifications, it is necessary to organize short teacher-training courses.

A short course is one of the study methods which we have used ever since the time of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle for training our subordinates. During those years we used to summon our subordinates and give them short courses. On returning to their units, these people would, in turn, teach their own subordinates. This proved a very good method of training subordinates.

Drawing on the experience of training during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, the People’s Army is now running commanding officers’ lessons and demonstration lessons well. The corps commanders summon their divisional commanders and give them lessons, and divisional commanders in turn teach their regimental commanders in the same way, regimental commanders teach their battalion commanders collectively, and battalion commanders teach their company commanders.

Platoon leaders give their men political lessons, and they do this after attending short preparatory courses organized at their battalion headquarters. A battalion political instructor summons the platoon leaders of his battalion and gives them a short course in preparation for political lessons and then the platoon leaders come back to their platoons and give them political lessons.

The educational sector must make it a rule to give teachers short courses on their class work. Every six months, they should be invited to a short course on class work with regard to each subject which will be dealt with during the next six months. If the Ministry of General Education under the Commission of Education organizes work well,
training courses on teachers’ class work can be held quite easily.

The training course must deal with the subjects which will be taught to the pupils. The training course for primary school teachers must deal with what has to be taught to primary school children, and the course for the senior middle school teachers must deal with what has to be taught to the pupils of senior middle schools. For instance, if the training course deals with the first lesson, “Mt. Paektu”, of the Korean language textbook for primary school teachers, the teachers must be given an account of the content of the first lesson and an explanation of how to teach it. In other words, the teachers should be initiated into the Party’s policy which must be quoted in class work, as well as other information such as the location and height of the mountain, Lake Chon which is on its summit, and the fact that this mountain is the fountainhead of the revolutionary traditions in our country.

The teachers’ training course should be organized on every subject. Teachers of mathematics, music, and athletics should each be given different courses on the subjects they have to teach. Short courses must be given on all the subjects which are included in the general education curriculum.

All teachers without exception, whether well informed or not, must participate in the training course so that they can learn what they have to quote from Party policy and acquire all the information needed for their teaching, including supplementary explanation.

The training course for the teachers in the general education sector should be carried out on a county basis. At present, there is a senior middle school or a primary school in every ri in our country and there are even two schools in some large ri. So there is a large number of teachers, in even a single county. I think it ideal to summon all the teachers in each province to the university of education in that province for the training course. But, as it is impossible to assemble all the teachers numbering more than 10,000 in the provincial capital, the short course for teachers will have to be organized in each county.

The central and provincial authorities must provide lecturers and have their lecture plans prepared for the training course. These lecture
plans should be discussed collectively and it should then be decided whether they are acceptable or not. If they need any amendment or additions, the appropriate measures have to be taken. The students of the universities of education can participate in the discussion on the lecture plans. If good lecture plans are worked out in this way, they can serve as model plans and as reference material.

The Ministry of General Education under the Commission of Education must print model teaching plans in book form for use during the following six months and distribute them to teachers so that they can use them in class without any alterations. If this method is adopted, even poorly-qualified teachers will be able to teach well and improve their qualifications quickly.

The Commission of Education must select the lecturers for the teachers’ short course. I think that it would be a good idea to organize a teachers’ training school well and let its teaching staff give lessons to teachers. If there is a shortage of lecturers for the teachers’ short course, the students in the fourth or fifth year of the university of education can meet the purpose.

It is advisable to organize the short course twice a year during the pupils’ vacation, covering a period of 15 to 20 days on each occasion.

If the teachers are given this training course, the uniformity of education can be guaranteed and its quality raised.

Teachers should also be taught how to deal with pupils.

The general education course, the compulsory educational period in our country, is the first stage in revolutionizing people. The ways of educating pupils in primary and senior middle schools have a great effect on revolutionizing them in their later years. The teachers in the general education sector must, therefore, be highly qualified, with a full knowledge of how to educate and treat pupils. If they are to educate pupils skilfully, teachers need rich experience and a knowledge of child psychology as well. The training course alone is not enough to teach the teachers the art of dealing with pupils skilfully. So it would be a good idea for the general education sector to organize a meeting on a provincial or national basis once a year so that teachers
can share each other’s experience in education.

The general education sector must work hard to make teaching aids and build laboratories.

Until now schools in this sector have neglected this work, and this is mainly because Party and LSWY organizations have not encouraged it nor have they given it a strong stimulus. Laboratory equipment and facilities needed for universities will have to be produced or imported by the state, but the teaching aids and laboratory equipment for primary schools and senior middle schools can easily be made by the schools themselves. In many schools teachers themselves have made a large number of teaching aids and built excellent laboratories. In the general education schools teachers must work hard to produce teaching aids and set up laboratories by their own efforts in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

Meanwhile, the responsible sector must develop the teaching equipment production centre and establish a system of producing laboratory equipment and practice facilities for the general education sector. In addition, shops which sell laboratory equipment and facilities should be established so that schools can buy them when needed.
ON ACCELERATING THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE TAEDONGGANG POWER STATION

Speech Delivered to the Consultative Meeting of the Officials in Charge of the Construction of the Taedonggang Power Station

May 8, 1974

Today I should like to speak about the task of expediting the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station so as to finish the project quickly.

You all know that this project is very important in attaining the target of electric power set under the Six-Year Plan. The construction of the Taedonggang Power Station means creating a new generating capacity of hundreds of thousands of kilowatts and solving the problem of cooling water for the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant completely. At present, this thermal power plant has eight generators, and will have another four in the near future. These additional generators will increase its capacity by 400,000 kilowatts. But this is where the water creates a problem. Unless this problem is solved, the new generators to be installed in the power station will be useless. We must solve this problem completely by building the Taedonggang Power Station. This is the way we can operate the new generators to be installed in the thermal power station at full capacity. Therefore, success in attaining the target of electric power set under the Six-Year Plan depends largely on whether we build the Taedonggang Power Station quickly or not.

We are not only building this power station to increase the
production of electricity, but also for the purpose of protecting Pyongyang from flood damage. In 1967 Pyongyang suffered damage from an unusual flood. This must not happen again. No one can safely predict that there will not be such a great flood in the future. The Taedonggang Power Station, when completed, will be able to harness any flood-water there may be and protect Pyongyang from flood damage.

In the dry season at this time of the year, the water level of the Taedong River is so low that the scenery in its lower reaches is not good and even farming in Taedong, Kangso and Ryonggang Counties, South Phyongan Province, is badly affected. When the water level in this river was low a few years ago, the salty tidal water flowed into Lake Thaesong and had a harmful effect on agricultural production. At that time, the Chongsan Cooperative Farm suffered damage from the salt water and had to transplant rice seedlings over again. The Taedonggang Power Station will be able to regulate the water level in this river and prevent all this damage.

As you can see, this power station will benefit us in many ways. In spite of this, the senior officials of the Administration Council and of the commissions and ministries concerned have regarded the construction project as being of secondary rather than primary importance, and have not paid particular attention to this matter. They are careless with the provision of facilities for this project and are not directing it properly. Because the central authorities are neglecting the construction of this power station, the people who have assumed the direct responsibility for the project are not working hard.

If you go on building this power station half-heartedly in this manner, the project will not be finished within the period of the Six-Year Plan. We must build it more quickly so as to finish it within this period.

If we are to accelerate it, we must make good preparations and improve the supply of the things which are needed.

It is necessary to build a large cement storehouse at the dam construction site. You say that there is a storehouse there which can
hold 1,000 tons of cement. This is too small. At the rate of approximately 300 tons of cement used a day, it can hold no more than an amount for three days’ use. If the project is going to proceed smoothly, an amount which is sufficient for at least 15 days should be kept in stock. So you have to build a cement storehouse with a capacity of 5,000 tons. We must supply the amount of steel needed for the construction of the cement storage without hesitation.

The construction of the railway must be finished quickly.

The railway project is making very slow progress. It is nearly a year since I last visited Tokchon in August last year, but virtually nothing has been done in the meantime. The youth shock brigade working on the project has not been efficient in its work.

From now onwards, we must press ahead with the railway project at full speed. The Ministry of Railways must supply the rails and sleepers needed for the project and give efficient technical guidance, so as to open the railway service early in July at the latest.

The bridge construction must also be finished as early as possible. This will facilitate the transport of the materials and be convenient for the men going to work. Since the building of the bridge has made considerable headway, it can be completed very soon if we supply the steel and welding rods. We must speed up the project and finish it by the end of May and open it to traffic in mid-June.

We have to solve the problem of work hands needed for the construction of the dam.

In order to solve this problem, it is necessary, first of all, to bring the hands now working on the Sinyang dam of the Sodusu Power Station here. The Sinyang dam has to be completed quickly so that the workers there can be transferred to this project by the end of June.

In addition, a large number of senior middle-school graduates will have to be recruited next year. The Youth Power Station Construction Enterprise requests that the sons and daughters of its workers should all be appointed to work here after graduation. It will not be a bad idea to comply with the request. The enterprise will then be able to develop on a long-term basis.
We must ensure the production of sufficient materials and machines needed for the construction of the power station.

Cement to be used for the construction of the dam of the Taedonggang Power Station must be produced by the February 8 Cement Factory. At present this factory is using anthracite which contains too much lime so that the quality of the cement produced there is not good enough. If you use low-quality cement, the dam will not last. The February 8 Cement Factory must be supplied with high-quality anthracite so as to improve the quality of its product.

It is also necessary to take steps to supply drills, conveyer belts and other machinery for the construction of the dam.

We must develop a speed campaign in building the dam.

For this, the technical revolution is imperative. If you try instead to build it by increasing the number of work hands, you will be unable to develop the speed campaign. The officials who are in favour of increasing manpower are outdated.

You must make use of larger, modern machines in building the dam by pressing ahead with the technical revolution.

The machines now being used for the dam must first be enlarged and modernized. The cranes will have to be modified in such a way as to extend their jibs, the mortar tanks must be enlarged, and the manual vibrators improved for easier mechanized operations.

We must organize efforts to produce modern dam-building machinery in our country. If we decide to tackle the task, we shall be perfectly able to make it ourselves. In fact, there is nothing too difficult about making building machines. Recently I saw a foreign film about harbour construction. Almost all the work there was being done by machines, and I think that all these machines can be made in our country. By displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance the workers of the machine industry must take the plunge and set about making modern dam-building machines for the builders of hydroelectric power stations.

One or two of these machines which are difficult for us to make, will have to be imported as samples, so that we can make them
ourselves using these as patterns.

If you are to make use of the speed campaign in building the dam, you must plan your work correctly and press ahead with the project. The plan must specify the tasks for each month and dovetail them with the plan for the supply of materials.

The senior executives of the Youth Power Station Construction Enterprise must stop depending entirely on higher authorities for assistance; they must take full responsibility for the construction of the dam and complete the project before May Day 1976.

In this project, it is important to treat the holes carefully. You must remove all the holes one by one. This is the first dam in our country that we build on the limestone bed, and if we remove them skilfully, it will be a great success.

Through the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station, we must establish accurate standard data on the construction of hydroelectric power stations.

As matters now stand, we have no established standards for building these power stations. This is one of the reasons why equipment and materials are used carelessly and wasted and why the speed of construction is not increased. If we have these standards, we shall be able to keep the use of equipment and materials under strict control so as to prevent their waste, and can also make a correct estimate of manpower, equipment and materials as well as the time needed for the construction of hydroelectric power stations for the next long-term plan period.

If an army is to be successful in battle, it needs standards of the necessary time, troops, guns and ammunition, and the commanders must know how to make correct estimates based on these standards.

Having acquired rich combat experience in the long period of anti-Japanese armed struggle and in the three years of the Fatherland Liberation War, the commanding officers of our People’s Army are good at planning both for guerrilla and regular army operations. Lacking experience in guerrilla warfare, however, the Americans are not skilful in appraising guerrilla actions.
This also applies to the evaluation of the norms of requirements for the construction of hydroelectric power stations. If they are to be accurate, these norms must be established by an enterprise like the Youth Power Station Construction Enterprise which has wide experience in building power stations. This enterprise has participated in building the Kanggye Youth Power Station, the Sodusu Power Station and others, and now it is constructing the Taedonggang Power Station. We can say that, if you go through the construction of a hydroelectric power station, you can, indeed, acquire the same knowledge that you could obtain from the relevant university course. The Youth Power Station Construction Enterprise has accumulated a wealth of experience in the course of building many hydroelectric power stations.

If it is to establish correct norms for the construction of a hydroelectric power station, the enterprise must be provided with adequate facilities to carry out the project.

On this occasion, the Youth Power Station Construction Enterprise must take an accurate measurement of the manpower, equipment, materials and time spent on the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station. But those spent on treating holes must be calculated separately. The Party Central Committee and the Administration Council must direct the construction enterprise well so as to ensure that it can establish correct norms.

The generators for the Taedonggang Power Station must be produced in our country.

We intend to build many large hydroelectric power stations in the future, and we must not consider importing generators needed for them. We must produce them ourselves. So far we have been unable to produce generators on a steady basis because of the shortage of steel and a few other outstanding problems. From next year onwards, however, we shall have no steel problem. So, if the officials get down to the task and work hard, they will be able to ensure the production of generators without difficulty.

The Commission of Machine Industry No. 1 must produce the
generators for the Taedonggang Power Station by the time the dam is completed. It must also produce those for other power stations.

We shall have to build many hydroelectric power stations in the future.

Of the ten major long-term targets of socialist economic construction defined by the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee, the targets of steel, cement, chemical fertilizer and other items can be attained within several years. The most difficult of all is the target of 50,000 million kwh of electricity. Although we defined it as one of the ten major long-term targets, we have to produce 60,000 million kwh of electricity every year if we are to be able to use it freely. We must, therefore, work hard to increase our generating capacity sharply in a short time.

To this end, we must build hydroelectric power stations in many parts of the country, so making effective use of the rich water power resources. It costs us a great deal more money and time to build a hydroelectric power station than to build a thermal one, but its operating cost is much lower once it has been built. As long as the rain supplies water to its reservoir, a hydroelectric power station can continue to produce electricity.

It is not good to build oil-fired power stations. There are many such power stations in other countries, but they are not operating very well because of the fuel crisis. We must not build more oil power stations than the one now under construction at Unggi. If we should build more of them it would be difficult to operate them properly under the present circumstances where we are not in a position to supply sufficient oil to the heating furnaces at our factories and enterprises. We must, instead, build many hydroelectric power stations so as to meet the growing need for electricity.

We must build a hydroelectric power station in Nyongwon County, South Phyongan Province.

If we do this, we can increase our generating capacity by 150,000 kilowatts and help to maintain the water level of the Taedong River to a certain extent.
This hydroelectric power station will regulate the water level of the river and prevent flood damage. Since we constructed the Unbong Power Station on the Amnok River, the dam of the Suphung Power Station seldom overflows even when there is heavy rain, and the areas in the lower reaches do not suffer flood damage.

The construction of the Nyongwon Power Station must be undertaken immediately after the completion of the Taedonggang Power Station. The Nyongwon project may raise difficulties in transporting cement, steel and other building materials. So this problem demands careful study.

We must also build the Huichon Power Station. This power station will create hundreds of thousands of kilowatts of new generating capacity and supply sufficient water to the Youth Chemical Works. The construction of this power station will have to be undertaken by the enterprise which is now building the Sodusu Power Station.

We must also build the Wiwon and Pochon Power Stations. If another power station can be built on the Tongno River, it is advisable to start the project next year.

It is also necessary to build tidal power stations. These power stations can be built on the estuaries of the Taedong and Chongchon Rivers and at many other suitable places. If we build tidal power stations, we shall be able to produce a sizable amount of electricity.

If we are to build many hydroelectric power stations, we must train building forces step by step, looking to the future. The Youth Power Station Construction Enterprise, the main force and guards unit in building power stations, has to be made a parent organization which will spawn new enterprises so that the new ones can carry forward the good traditions of the parent body in building hydroelectric power stations. The parent company must recruit a large number of sound young people and give them on-the-job training for a certain period, and then organize new construction companies centred around the veteran workers of the parent body.

Since we can supply adequate amounts of steel and cement from next year onwards, we must build a large hydroelectric power station
every year by means of the speed campaign. It would be difficult to complete such a power station within a year, but if we build two at the same time, we shall be able to complete them in two years. This is as good as building one every year, and we can build six in six years. This will be a great success.

We have to construct barrages with locks across the Taedong River.

For a long time I have been thinking of building such barrages across the Taedong River so as to facilitate navigation. On my visit to Paeksong-ri, Sunchon County, South Phyongan Province, during the Fatherland Liberation War, I gave the teachers and students of Kim Il Sung University the task of studying the matter of building canals by making use of the inland portions of the rivers in our country. Since then they have worked hard and completed a good design for the canals.

It is necessary to build many barrages with locks across the Taedong River so as to open a navigational route from Nampho to Tokchon.

The large cement factory now under construction at Sunchon will produce more than enough cement to meet domestic needs, and the surplus will have to be exported. It will be difficult to transport all the export cement by rail from Sunchon to Nampho. That is why we have to open a ship route along the Taedong to transport it. It will also be very convenient to use the river for the transport of the coal which is produced in the Tokchon and Sunchon districts. This river route is also indispensable for the shipment of the raw materials and fuel needed for the factories to be built in the Nampho district. If we build many barrages between Nampho and Tokchon, we shall be able to build power stations at each of them and produce a great deal of electricity.

Next year we must build a barrage at Mirim on an experimental basis, and then another at Maekjon by drawing on the experience acquired in the construction of the first. At the initial stage, we shall have to build five barrages so as to open a navigational route between Nampho and Sunchon. If the ship service is available just between Nampho and Sunchon, many transport problems will be solved. If
ships are to navigate from Nampho to Tokchon, ten barrages with locks will have to be built.

Even though we build these barrages across the Taedong River and open a navigational route up to Tokchon, we shall have to build a railway which links Sunchon, Sukchon, Jungsan and Onchon if we are to ensure the complete solution of the problem of transport in this region.

In conclusion, I must refer to a few other problems in brief. Motor roads must be built and paved well.

At present, a tunnel is being built through the mountain between Tokchon and Kaechon, and the road there should be paved after the completion of the tunnel. Then, motor traffic between Tokchon and Kaechon will become easier, without having to cross over the high pass. As motor traffic in this section is not very heavy, the paved road need not be wide.

The road from Sunchon to Tokchon will also have to be paved. If it is impossible to pave the whole length of the road within this year because of the shortage of cement, as much as possible should be done, and the remaining section must be finished next year. But the road between Sunchon and Pukchang must be paved within this year. This is imperative in view of the need to transport the different kinds of foods produced by the Pukchang Cornstarch Factory to Phyongsong and other districts of South Phyongan Province. The paved road between Sunchon and Tokchon should be as wide as the one from Sunchon to Pyongyang.

The roads in the Tokchon County town need paving. These unpaved roads raise dust which causes discomfort to the townsfolk. The state will supply 10,000 tons of cement, and the town must pave its roads by means of a speed campaign.

Tokchon County must develop a good supply centre. It must first build a large duck plant. The county must have it in order to supply duck meat to the workers, but a pig plant will have to be built in Pukchang County. The Tudan Duck Plant must supply the breeding birds needed for the new duck plant.
If the duck plant to be built produces 1,200 tons of duck meat, and if the existing Tokchon Chicken Plant produces 700 tons of chicken, they will be able to supply 3,500 ducks and 2,000 chickens to the market every day. These are sizable amounts of meat for the workers.

Coal mines are now trying to have their own farms to produce meat. They need not do this. If they do, they will not be able to produce the amount of meat which is supposed to be produced from the feed spent. It is desirable to concentrate the effort for meat production as far as possible and specialize production.

It is also necessary to take steps to transport the sweets, cooking oil, soya sauce, bean paste, liquor and other food items produced by the Pukchang Cornstarch Factory so as to supply them to the workers. Since Tokchon County adjoins Pukchang County, it will be convenient for the former to bring foodstuffs from the Pukchang Cornstarch Factory.

The spray irrigation system must be introduced widely to solve the problem of vegetables. If you use this system for vegetable cultivation, you will be able to double the per-hectare yields. It is said that 500 hectares of dry fields have been equipped with this system. Another 500 hectares must be brought under this system every year until the area covers 2,000 hectares. If it does this and cultivates vegetables in an intensive way, Tokchon County will be able to solve the vegetable problem satisfactorily.

Measures to ensure a regular supply of fish are also needed. Tokchon County is supposed to receive supplies of fish caught on the high seas and has a 500-ton capacity refrigerator plant. So, if the officials organize work well, they will be able to ensure a daily supply of about 20 tons of fish to the market. If the refrigerator plant receives monthly deliveries of fish, keeps them in stock and provides 20 tons every day, it will be able to ensure a regular supply to the people without running out of stock.

The construction of waterworks for the county town must be quickly finished. If running water is not available, multistoreyed houses, no matter how many you may build, will be useless. The
waterworks must be built quickly so as to provide them with water closets and bath facilities. In this way, hygienic living conditions and modern amenities will be provided for the workers.

Commuter bus services must be made available to the builders of the Taedonggang Power Station. They will be very happy if they benefit from these services. The Sungni General Motor Works should produce the commuter buses for them. The builders should also be supplied with snacks.

I firmly believe that you will press ahead with the speed campaign and finish the construction of the Taedonggang Power Station ahead of schedule.
PYONGYANG MUST BE AN EXAMPLE FOR THE WHOLE COUNTRY IN ALL SPHERES OF POLITICS, THE ECONOMY AND CULTURE

Speech at the Executive Committee of the Pyongyang City Party Committee

May 20, 1974

Today I would like to speak about some tasks facing the Pyongyang City Party Committee.

The main task of this Party committee is to ensure that Pyongyang becomes a model for the whole country in all areas of ideology, technology and culture.

The Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic are based in Pyongyang. In addition, the central committees of many social organizations are to be found here, and the hard-core elements of the Party and government organs and working people’s organizations live in this city. Therefore, Pyongyang must be a model for the whole country in all the ideological, technical and cultural spheres, so that it can give its foreign visitors a complete picture of the development of our country.

The first and foremost task is to revolutionize and working-classize Party members and working people in the city as soon as possible by intensifying their ideological education.

The revolutionization of Pyongyang is very important in promoting the revolutionization of the whole country. It is only when we make a
revolutionary model of Pyongyang, the political, economic and cultural centre of our country, that the revolutionization of the whole country can be accelerated. The Pyongyang City Party Committee will have to press ahead with the revolutionization and working-classization of all Party members and working people in the city.

In the first place, the committee must induce them to be faithful to life in their respective organizations. I always say that the most important means of revolutionizing people in a socialist society is to intensify their organizational life.

Success in building communism depends on how the masses are mobilized. In order to build communism successfully, it is necessary to revolutionize and working-classize the masses. To this end, their organizational life must be intensified. People who neglect their organizational life and prefer to be idle are liable to commit serious errors. For this reason everyone without exception must take part in organizational life, and continue to revolutionize themselves.

The Pyongyang City Party Committee must guide Party members and the members of the League of Socialist Working Youth, the trade unions and the Women’s Union so that they will play a sincere part in their particular form of organizational life.

The main things in organizational life are education and criticism as well as study and ideological struggle.

The city Party committee should get all Party members and working people to participate in organizational life willingly and temper themselves in the crucible of the ideological struggle.

If you are to promote revolutionization and working-classization, you must also improve mass education.

If we are to revolutionize Pyongyang, the revolutionary capital, we have to rouse and civilize its citizens.

To all intents and purposes, we must achieve the ideological and cultural revolutions mainly by educating and reforming people.

Public lectures and meetings for educational purposes must be organized frequently.
Public lectures and meetings are a form of mass education. Mass education should not be undertaken in a small way, but by mass media such as public lectures and meetings. If the education of Pyongyang citizens is effective, fewer people will make mistakes, no one will be deceived by hypocrites or believe or spread false rumours.

Pyongyang has all the facilities needed for public lectures.

It has many spacious places for the masses to gather, such as the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium and the Youth Park Open-Air Theatre. It also has instructors and doctors who can deliver lectures. If doctors are asked to give public lectures, they will regard it as an honour and take an active part in this work. The instructors of the Higher Party School and the universities can also be enlisted in this work whenever necessary. All that you have to do is to bring lecturers by car and serve them each a cup of tea. If the city Party committee goes over the outlines of the planned lectures beforehand, and then gathers people in a theatre or a hall for lectures on the Party’s policy, the revolutionary traditions, communist morality, history, social and natural sciences and so on, it will be able to equip Party members and working people with our Party’s idea and advanced scientific knowledge. There are 14,000 primary and senior middle school teachers in Pyongyang. Many problems will be solved if lectures are delivered to them three or four times a year on Sundays, either in the Youth Park Open-Air Theatre or in the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium. It will be very good if the lectures deal with such subjects as getting pupils to keep themselves neat, educating them to be well-mannered and the need for the teachers to revolutionize themselves. At present primary and senior middle school pupils in the city are slovenly and they misbehave. Some teachers are not so neatly dressed as to be an example for the pupils to follow. All this can be corrected by means of frequent lectures and information activities.

It will be of great help in revolutionizing university instructors if they gather in places like the People’s Palace of Culture once a month and listen to lectures which explain the Party’s policy and some on current events, scientific lectures and lectures on communist morality.
Lectures for pupils can also be organized on a collective basis.

If there are 200,000 senior middle school pupils in Pyongyang, twenty lectures will be sufficient, if they are delivered at the Youth Park Open-Air Theatre which can accommodate over 10,000 people. And if they are organized in the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium whose capacity is 15,000, fourteen lectures will suffice. All that is needed is to inform the pupils of the weekly schedule of lectures for each district and deliver them in either of these two places.

It will also be a good idea to organize a lecture or a meeting there every month for the neighbourhood unit leaders, school instructors of the Children’s Union and the LSWY and other junior cadres. The Youth Park Open-Air Theatre is a good place for evening lectures and meetings because it is cool there at that time of the day. If lectures are followed by film shows, many people will gather there.

Some time ago a meeting of the neighbourhood unit leaders was held in the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium to discuss the problem of producing night soil. This is very good. If a large quantity of night soil has been produced following the meeting, you should see to it that all the lorries at the disposal of institutions and industrial enterprises are mobilized to convey it to the fields.

At present Pyongyang has good conditions for the education of the masses, but it does not use them effectively.

A long time ago I gave the Pyongyang City Party Committee the task of organizing many lectures by making good use of the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium and other spacious places, and also assigned the Central Committee of the League of Socialist Working Youth the task of making regular use of the Youth Park Open-Air Theatre. However, they are not carrying out my instructions faithfully.

Take the use of the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium for instance.

Last evening, on my way back from the inspection of rice-transplanting operations in Sunan District I toured Pyongyang and saw that there were no lights on in this stadium. This stadium is frequently left unused. Not only sports activities, but also lectures and meetings should be held here so that it will never be kept idle. There is
no need to worry about this good stadium becoming damaged through frequent use. It will be all right if it is repaired when damaged through use. The Pyongyang City Party Committee must work out a detailed plan to use the People’s Palace of Culture, the Youth Park Open-Air Theatre, the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium and the halls at the disposal of the institutions and industrial enterprises as good places for educating people. The city Party committee should organize frequent lectures there for teachers and pupils and meetings of neighbourhood unit leaders, bus conductresses and public health workers and suchlike for their education.

The Pyongyang City Party Committee may refer whatever it cannot solve by its own efforts to either the Education Department or the Science Department of the Party Central Committee and get their help. The trouble is that our officials do not think about how they can turn the favourable conditions to good account and do not organize work well.

The Information and Publicity Department of the Party Central Committee must help the Pyongyang City Party Committee in every way to make proper use of the favourable conditions which are available.

Another important factor in revolutionizing people is to establish the habit of collective study and intensify study.

Neither the works of Marx or Engels nor those of other figures provide solutions to the question of revolutionizing the whole of society.

We shall have to press ahead with the revolutionization and working-classification of the whole of society solely in accordance with the just policy put forward by our Party. Unless people are revolutionized it is impossible to build a communist society no matter how greatly the economy is developed.

Some countries are only now going in the direction of intensifying ideological work, though very slowly, having recently become aware that people will become ideologically degenerate if they are not given a sound education.
We must lead others in revolutionizing the whole of society. As a matter of fact, even now foreigners who visit our country envy us very much, saying that there are no loafers in this country and that everyone here is united, strong and revolutionary.

The President of a certain country who visited our country some time ago, rose early every morning and studied our Party’s documents for two hours during his stay in our country. When he was leaving for home, he said that he would take with him all the books—our Party’s documents—which were set out in the study of his apartments. So I told him that it would be inappropriate to give him books from the study, and gave him a package of new books. He said that, once at home, he would get all the students and other young people of his country to read them. I have been told that the Foreign Minister of that country, who accompanied the President on that occasion, also filled his bag with our Party’s documents so that he could take them home and proudly told our officials of this fact.

Foreigners value our Party’s documents highly and even take the trouble to take them home over a distance of tens of thousands of miles.

At present people of many countries in the world are visiting our country in a steady stream to learn about the Juche idea and take our Party’s documents with them.

However, some of our people do not study seriously although they have got a lot of good books. They are very wrong.

The Pyongyang City Party Committee must ensure that all citizens establish the revolutionary habit of collective study and set an example for the whole country in this field.

Various methods can be used in collective study.

Holding sessions to read the *Rodong Sinmun* and magazines is a good way of studying. You can do it by choosing the articles for this purpose from the newspapers and magazines delivered for the week, and get a good reader to read them and let others listen to him. In future reading sessions must be held both in neighbourhood units and in organizations.
Everyone should be enrolled in study networks and on study days no one should absent from study circles.

Education through the use of revolutionary operas and films should also be conducted efficiently.

At the moment the Pyongyang City Party Committee does not even know how many citizens have seen the revolutionary operas and how many have not seen them. This shows that it is not supervising and guiding the political and cultural life of the citizens as it should.

If the Pyongyang City Party Committee is to organize the cultural life of the citizens as it should, it must know which of them has seen what films, which of them has seen what operas and who has not seen what. It is only when it knows all these things that it will be able to organize work in such a way that all the citizens see the films and operas.

In future we shall even have to show the films and revolutionary operas produced in our country to the pupils of senior middle schools. Therefore, you must not leave the showing of these pieces to chance, but organize it in such a way that people watch them together.

Not only revolutionary operas and films, but also many plays and general performances must be given for the education of the citizens. A daily schedule for the activities which will be held at the People’s Palace of Culture must be worked out so that it will be turned to good account and not left unused. The plan should include, for example, the general performance to be given by the workers of the Pyongyang Textile Combine today and the performances which will be given by the workers of the electric factory, by the pupils of the Moranbong Senior Middle School, of a certain specialized school and by a particular commission or ministry under the Administration Council on the ensuing days. Even if they pay 15 or 50 jon as an entrance fee, the working people in the city will be happy. At present they spend Sundays at home doing nothing in particular. If these performances are organized, everyone will come to watch them. Even if the People’s Palace of Culture is under the supervision of the Administration Council, Pyongyang must be allowed to use it when it wishes. At
present the Administration Council keeps it shut and does not organize any functions. The theatre and other facilities, with the exception of the meeting halls, should be used freely.

At the same time as educating the masses efficiently, school education will have to be improved.

At the moment the children in nurseries and kindergartens and the pupils of primary and senior middle schools and students of colleges and universities in Pyongyang number more than 800,000, or more than half the population of the city. Whether or not the Pyongyang City Party Committee works efficiently with nurseries and kindergartens, with primary and senior middle schools, with colleges and universities boils down to whether or not it can revolutionize them and thus train them to be dependable reserves for socialist and communist construction and ardent revolutionaries. Therefore, Party organizations in the city must pay proper attention to school education.

An important factor in this regard is to build up the ranks of teachers with sound people and work well with them.

As I said on an earlier occasion, it is only when the instructors of school organizations of the League of Socialist Working Youth and the Children’s Union and other teachers are selected from amongst good people and the work with them is done effectively that schools can educate pupils well and the Students and Children’s Palace and the schools can organize a variety of extracurricular activities for the pupils and intensify their organizational life.

However, I was told that the three-revolution teams in the educational field have recently discovered that at schools in Pyongyang there are many defects in education and that some pupils are making mischief. This shows that the Pyongyang City Party Committee and the district Party committees in the city are not directing the education of the younger generation as they should.

If we take a firm hold on work in the schools, we shall be able to revolutionize the pupils and students who account for more than half the population. Our pupils lead a collective organizational life for eleven years, if we count the period from kindergarten to senior middle
school, through primary school. There is a Korean saying: “In ten years even mountains and rivers will change.” If we educate the pupils correctly for eleven years, we shall be able to train them all to be genuine successors to our revolutionary cause, communist revolutionaries.

The point is how the Party organizations and senior officials work with the teachers who educate pupils and how much attention the Party pays to this matter.

At present the Pyongyang City Administration Committee does not work with teachers efficiently either. It considers that it will fulfil its duty if it erects school buildings. Its members must not think in this way. They must visit schools frequently and see what is being taught and make a detailed inspection of whether the teachers are teaching the pupils as they should and how they are organizing extracurricular activities. If they find anything wrong, they must summon the teachers to a meeting and help them to correct it.

As I have just said, Pyongyang has a large indoor stadium. It will be a good idea to gather all the teachers in the city there about twice a month and organize lectures and short courses according to a plan. Lectures may include problems of education in the Party’s policy and in the revolutionary traditions and of student education and similar things. And short courses can be given on the subject of improving the political and practical qualifications of the teachers. After the lectures and short courses you should frequently tell them what you have discovered in the work of different schools. You should tell them: “At present shortcomings in the work of schools are such and such. You must rectify them as soon as possible. In such and such a school the teachers are instructing their pupils well and so the pupils study well. However, in such and such a school the teachers are not teaching their pupils well and are not organizing extracurricular activities. So there are delinquent pupils there.” In this way you must compile information on the shortcomings in education and expose them to criticism. And you should commend those schools which are successful in the education of the pupils. If the city Party committee organizes this work
once a month or just ten times a year, the education of the pupils will be improved considerably.

It will be good to hold some meetings of teachers in the city every year. At these meetings different problems arising in education can be discussed such as the problem of improving the quality of educational work, the problem of keeping schools clean and valuing and taking good care of state and public property, the problem of getting the pupils to wear neat clothes and be well-mannered, and the problem of intensifying the activities of the greenery guards.

If lectures and meetings are organized frequently for the teachers, educational work at schools will improve considerably. If the city Party committee holds one or two meetings for them regularly every month, it will be able to control all the teachers.

Chief secretaries of district Party committees must also work efficiently with teachers. In the same way that they know all the management board chairmen of cooperative farms and ri Party secretaries, they must also be familiar with all the principals and teachers of primary and senior middle schools. If they show greater concern for school education, then, no matter how busy they are, they will be able to know all the teachers in the schools and give efficient guidance to the work of the schools.

This can be done by visiting, say, this school today and that school tomorrow to meet and talk to teachers. At present, district Party committee chief secretaries seldom visit schools. If they ever do so, they only visit the schools attended by their own children to take part in meetings of pupils’ parents and brothers. But they never visit other schools. This year the chief secretaries of the district Party committees must take personal charge of school education, no matter what the circumstances are. Wherever they go, senior officials should visit schools first and pay attention to school education, meeting and talking to the teachers. If they control school work in this way, ideological work which accounts for 80 to 90 per cent of the work of the League of Socialist Working Youth, will be successful and there will be no delinquent pupils. Pyongyang must be the first to start this work.
From now onwards, you must ensure that there will not be a single delinquent pupil in Pyongyang. According to our investigation of the Central, Moranbong, Samsok, Hyongjesan and some other districts, each of them has several delinquent pupils. District Party committees must guide school work efficiently and re-educate these pupils and adopt suitable measures to prevent the recurrence of such cases.

If Party organizations resolve to do this and pay close attention to it, it is perfectly possible to do away with delinquent pupils in our society. In a capitalist society where fraud and imposture, rape and theft are commonplace practices, it follows naturally that there are delinquent pupils. However, in a socialist society, there are no social sources for their emergence. Delinquent pupils exist in some schools simply because Party organizations do not pay proper attention to the education of pupils and do not guide the life in the school organizations of the LSWY and the Children’s Union efficiently. If school organizations of the LSWY and the Children’s Union organize various extracurricular activities such as athletics, study contests and speech-making gatherings, after school, there will be no misbehaving pupils. If LSWY and Children’s Union organizations provide a manuscript for speech-making to pupils who cause trouble and tell them to practise it by a particular time so that they can make a speech in such and such a place, they will try to prepare for it and not think about anything else. In the past when we were engaged in the youth movement we used to give such tasks to similar pupils. They acquitted themselves well. Even delinquent pupils can be good revolutionaries once they reform themselves.

If delinquent pupils emerge from among those children who have stepmothers, it will be a good idea to set up separate schools for them.

It is advisable for Pyongyang to set up two such schools first and run them. It will be good if all of these pupils are lodged in hostels and if their class teachers guide their study and organize various extracurricular activities.

Even in the difficult days of the Fatherland Liberation War we set up an orphans’ primary school in Manpho and taught many children
who were brought from Pyongyang. After their graduation from the school, they were assigned to factories and enterprises, and they are now all working well. From this we can see that no one is particularly fond of stealing and misbehaving. There are no born rogues.

There are delinquent pupils because behind the scenes, wicked elements are tempting some pupils to do mischief, taking advantage of our inefficient control of pupils. Therefore, I have spoken, on many occasions, of the need to exercise strict supervision of pupils. However, the city Party committee and district Party committees have neglected school work, being preoccupied with industry and agriculture.

Work with schools is work with pupils and students who account for half of the population. Therefore, the Party organizations must devote at least 15 to 20 per cent of their effort to school education.

The city Party committee must develop the ranks of teachers well, investigate the content of education, see how examinations are taken and always keep itself informed of how many delinquent pupils there are in the city. It must establish rigid discipline by which the chief secretaries of district Party committees assume full responsibility for school affairs. If a pupil fails in his examinations because of inefficient guidance of school work on the part of the chief secretary of the district Party committee, the chief secretary ought to be punished just as he is punished if he fails to ensure the fulfilment of production plans or the cultivation of rich crops. From now onwards if there is even a single delinquent pupil and a failure in a district, its chief Party secretary must be held entirely responsible.

Those pupils who continue to cause trouble and the young people who misbehave in spite of advice given by the Party organizations and schools, will have to be punished severely.

The Pyongyang City Party Committee must ensure that there is not a single delinquent pupil in the city by working well with school principals and their teachers as well as with the parents and brothers of pupils.

The city Party committee must reform all the citizens in a revolutionary way by intensifying their organizational life and arranging public lectures, collective study sessions and collective
cultural activities so as to help the people to acquire rich knowledge, and also by improving school education. This is the first task of the Pyongyang City Party Committee. If the city Party committee organizes and conducts this work well, it will be able to revolutionize the people in the city in a short period.

The next task is to develop Pyongyang and revolutionize the service sector.

A great deal of city construction, including industrial construction, has been undertaken in Pyongyang, and even underground railways have been built. So the city now has almost everything it needs.

The scenery of Pyongyang is very beautiful. In the city there are Mt. Taesong, Moran Hill and Changgwang Hill; the Taedong and Pothong Rivers flow through it and recreation grounds have been laid out along the rivers. Nowhere in the world can you find a city which is as beautiful as Pyongyang. Foreign visitors to Pyongyang envy the beauty of the city, saying that it is not a city full of parks, but a city located amongst parks. We must be proud of living in this beautiful city.

A major task at present is to develop the city in such a way as to provide its revolutionary residents with better services and to improve amenities. If this is done, the city where revolutionary people live will indeed become an earthly paradise.

In future Pyongyang must be developed to be still better and more beautiful.

To this end, the city will have to be developed according to a plan.

This year Pipha Street which is now under construction, should be completed as a splendid thoroughfare. And next year we must build Munsu Street after we have made full preparations.

The street leading from the Grand Theatre to the Children’s Department Store will have to be remodelled to some extent. Now that Chollima and Pipha Streets have been built, that street looks shabby. It is necessary to build approximately ten high-rise buildings in that street. The street will look much better if these buildings are constructed at the site of the present soft drinks shop and at other
places. If the plan of the layout of the street is ready, you should bring it to me, even if it is this afternoon.

If all the preparations have been made for the reconstruction of that street, you will do well to start the project in the second half of this year instead of waiting until next year.

Nothing special is needed for this undertaking. All that is needed is to introduce the central heating system, erect some more multistoreyed buildings and build a new, large department store on the site of the present Department Store No. 1. The present building of the Central Bank must not be pulled down because we shall build a new one at some future date. If only four high-rise buildings are erected on the site of the soft drinks shop at the first stage, the street will look much brighter. At present, the street from the Grand Theatre to the Children’s Department Store looks boring, as though it had been trimmed. High-rise buildings must be constructed in some places so as to add variety. When that street is well reconstructed, Pyongyang will indeed be one of the most beautiful cities in the world.

Many dwelling houses should also be built in Pyongyang. At the moment the city is short of housing and we must make every effort to ease the shortage as soon as possible.

Large numbers of four-storeyed Songnim-style houses should be built.

I think that the housing problem will be solved if Pipha Street is completed this year and Munsu Street is built next year. If a large number of houses are built in Munsu Street next year, the shortage of houses will be basically met because there are no old houses there which will have to be pulled down. We shall be able to concentrate on housing construction next year because the Sunchon Cement Factory will be operating and a large amount of steel will be produced at the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex by that time.

The existing high-rise buildings should be provided with amenities in harmony with their grace. Lifts must be provided for the newly built multistoreyed buildings in Pipha Street. It will be quite an achievement if they are installed in 50 high-rise buildings a year. If they are not
provided in these buildings, those who live upstairs, old people in particular, will find it difficult to go up and downstairs. High-rise buildings must be equipped with lifts without fail.

You must ensure that running water reaches the top floors and that central heating is available to all apartment buildings so that their inhabitants will be able to use electric or oil cookers and dispense with coal briquets.

You must also ensure that the water closets are repaired so that residents of high-rise buildings will not be inconvenienced in their everyday lives to the slightest degree.

Roads must be maintained properly. This is very important in modernizing Pyongyang.

The asphalt which will soon be imported from abroad should first be used in paving the main streets of the city neatly and the roads on its outskirts.

Many of the main streets which have been paved with cement, must be asphalted. The road leading to Kangdong will have to be widened and paved with asphalt as soon as possible. Alleyways must also be surfaced. Roads must be paved with cement, and if it is in short supply, the roads between houses must be surfaced at least with stones. Stone paving is not very difficult. All that is needed is to transport stones by truck, spread them on the road and compact some soil in between them. In this way, shoes will not be covered with mud even when it rains. If alleyways are dirty, houses cannot be clean, and it will be pointless no matter how fine the main streets are. The modernization of the capital must begin with road paving. The whole city must launch a campaign to pave the alleyways with stone.

You must send people to the quarry in Ryonggang County, South Phyongan Province, to produce a large quantity of stone needed for the project.

In the future all the rural roads should also be paved with stone.

Many by-passes must be built so that lorries will not have to drive through the central part of the city.

At present the city is congested and dirty because all the lorries pass
through the centre to reach their destinations. Roads must be built from Pipha Street to Sopho and from Sopho to Mangyongdae; and the one from Ryongsong must be laid out in such a way that trucks can travel straight to the south of the Taedong River without passing through any street in the city.

Two more bridges must be built over the Taedong River. At the moment traffic in the city is congested because all the trucks cross the river by the Okryu and Taedong Bridges. If there are four bridges over the Taedong River, the traffic between central Pyongyang and eastern Pyongyang and between eastern Pyongyang and western Pyongyang will be very smooth.

It will be difficult to build both the Hungbu and Phyongchon Bridges next year. Therefore, it is a good idea to build one first and construct the other during the Six-Year Plan.

Parks in Pyongyang must also be laid out neatly and maintained well. Since there are no parks for children at present, many of them play in the street, and this can cause accidents. In particular, there are many children now playing in Red Street, Pothonggang District, and in the street near Taetharyong.

Small parks must be laid out near the houses by planting trees, and providing fountains, swings, slides and seesaws for children. Since this work does not require a large sum of money, you will be able to build good parks if you just make the effort.

The neighbourhood units should educate children well so that they will not play in the street.

Big roadside trees should not be cut down. Because there are no big trees in the streets, they look like tailless quails. It is desirable to leave the existing gingko trees as they are.

In addition to developing Pyongyang well, you must revolutionize services at the same time.

This is necessary to make the city more beautiful. No matter how good the parks, houses and streets in the city are, there will be no point to it if shops are not well-stocked with food and clothes.

If Pyongyang is successful in the revolution in services, the
provinces will follow its example.

If we carry out a revolution in this sector, it will also enable us to earn a great deal of money. For instance, if you sell a scoop of ice cream for 20 jon, you will earn 200,000 won at the daily rate of some one million scoops. This means 70 million won a year. If we just sell ice cream, we shall be able to decrease the present price of suiting. At the moment we are unable to do so because the service network is not earning much money. The service sector must earn a lot of money and the textile mills should produce a large quantity of fabric so as to cut prices still further.

At the rate of 20 jon for one bottle of Kangso mineral water, it will be possible to earn 80,000 won a day if 400,000 bottles are sold; this means nearly 30 million won a year.

If you sell a large quantity of sweet drinks as well as mineral water, you will be able to earn a large sum of money for the state.

The chairman of the Pyongyang City Administration Committee ought to have an estimation of the money the city can earn daily for the state through the sale of ice cream, mineral water, sweet drinks, noodles and the like. He must always consider how they can manage their economic affairs carefully so as to obtain even one more penny for the state. Pyongyang must bring about a revolution in services without fail, so that it will earn 1,000 million won for the state annually. It is only when a revolution is carried out in this sphere that people will be able to buy ice cream, cider, mineral water, sweet drinks and other kinds of soft drinks as well as various kinds of food like noodles, bread and rice hash everywhere in the city. Then people will be happy, and, as state incomes increase, the country will prosper. If services are revolutionized, women will be able to take jobs instead of wasting their time at home, and in the course of this they will be revolutionized and working-classized.

At present, however, no effort is being made to improve the service network.

At the time of the socialist revolution, private service facilities disappeared. However, since then we have not built many socialist
service facilities. Neither Pyongyang nor provincial capitals have well-appointed service establishments. Today this is one of the defects in our efforts to build socialism. We must build well-appointed service facilities so as to demonstrate the advantage of the socialist system.

Pyongyang must revolutionize services through a determined ideological struggle against indifference to the people’s living conditions.

If you are short of money and rice for this purpose, we shall provide you with them. So you must build good service facilities in the city.

First, a revolution must take place in food.

In this regard it is important to produce and sell a large amount of soft drinks. You must offer for sale large quantities of mineral water, ice cream, ice candy, cider and the like so that these are available to the working people in every part of the city.

You should obtain a large amount of Kangso mineral water and sell it to the residents of Pyongyang. Foreign mineral water is sickening but that of Kangso is not. It promotes digestion and is good for health. Foreign guests all like this water even when it is served at a large banquet.

Selling mineral water is not difficult because all that is needed is to filter the spring water and bottle it. The Ministry of Chemical Industry must study the possibility of purifying mineral water chemically.

Some people do not favour Kangso mineral water, saying that it is too full of iron salts. If this is the case, it is sufficient to put the water into tanks and allow the iron content to settle. I cannot understand why people in Pyongyang do not process Kangso mineral water for sale when people in other places do it well. You must learn from their valuable experience and process it well and supply it to the citizens.

Large quantities of ice cream must be produced for the market.

You say that 44,000 scoops of ice cream are sold in Pyongyang daily. This amount is too small. If we estimate that one million people live in the central districts of the city, at least 50,000 scoops will have to be sold a day. It is said that even though they would like to buy ice cream, some people give up the idea because they find it a nuisance to
wait in a queue. On scores of occasions, I have given instructions that a large amount of ice cream must be on sale. I cannot understand what is preventing you from doing this. If there are no machines to make ice cream, you must make it by manual methods.

When I attended the Yuwen Middle School in Jilin, I saw an old couple selling ice cream and bean soup, living in a roadside house. They sold bean soup in winter and ice cream in summer. In winter the old couple ground beans by means of millstones far into the night and sold hot bean soup. The old woman boiled the soup in the kitchen and put it into bowls, each with a few lumps of sugar. Then she handed it over to the old man who sold it, dressed in white. They put a couple of small dining tables in their living room because there was no extra room for the guests. About four people were served at a time. When they sold ice cream in summer, I noticed that making it was nothing special. They made it by turning a small wooden tub by hand. Through selling bean soup in winter and ice cream in summer, they even managed to give one of their sons higher education at Beijing University.

However, at present, when they are told to provide some service facilities, our officials can only put forward complaints about the shortage of transformers and electric wire. You must first start work by manual methods and then introduce mechanization. You must not complain before you even start working.

Large quantities of beer and some wine must be put on sale. It will suffice if only some of the alcoholic drinks produced at the Pyongyang Cornstarch Factory are on sale, because a small amount will meet the need.

As for sweet fruit drinks, you can either order them from other provinces or produce syrup yourselves by picking blueberries from Samjiyon or haws from Changsong. If you add a drop of syrup when you make sweet fruit drinks, they will become red and aromatic. It will be a good idea to make a lot of syrup from wild strawberries, strawberries, cherries and the like and use it later in making sweet drinks.
All the chairmen of the commissions and ministers of the Administration Council are attending this meeting. You must make every effort to provide Pyongyang with the raw materials for making soft drinks. By doing this you will ensure that soft drinks such as cider, mineral water, beer and sweet fruit drinks as well as wine never run out of stock in the city.

Drops and biscuits should also be mass-produced for the market. At the moment the Pyongyang Cornstarch Factory produces a large amount of them every day. However, this amount is still a little low in view of the population of Pyongyang. If we are to provide 100 grammes of drops and biscuits to everybody in the city a day, daily production must be 150 tons of each.

In the future more than enough of these commodities will be produced. Then it will be necessary to decrease their prices; so it will be a good idea for you to consider this matter.

Pyongyang must unfailingly see to it that its groceries have drops and biscuits on sale at all times. Every dong in the city must have one such shop without fail.

Pyongyang should have restaurants so that people can buy various kinds of food such as noodles, rice cakes, rice served in soup, rice hash and dumpling soup everywhere they go.

The problem of fruit, vegetables, fish, cooking oil, eggs and other non-staple foods must also be solved satisfactorily.

Eggs are still in short supply in Pyongyang. Judging from the capacity of the existing chicken plants in the city, the daily output of eggs here should be 700,000. However, the actual figure is now only 500,000 or thereabouts. The central districts of Pyongyang alone have a population of one million. So, this figure means one egg for two people. Many people visit Pyongyang, and a lot of eggs are used for food-processing and for the service network. Therefore, at least one million eggs must be on sale in the shops if we are to supply plenty of them to the citizens. To this end, you will have to more than double the egg production capacity in the future. In order to produce many eggs, some bean cake must be used as chicken feed. Chickens fed on bean
cake lay many eggs because it contains a lot of protein.

You should also make bean curd from bean cake and supply it to the inhabitants of the city. At present bean cake is used in making soya sauce and bean paste. In future bean paste must be made from wheat and soya sauce from the amino acid produced at the cornstarch factory, and bean cake must be used to make bean curd, which should be supplied to the citizens. You must ensure that bean curd is always available even if you have to import beans by consulting the Ministry of Foreign Trade.

As for meat, 10,000 tons of pork are produced at the Pyongyang Pig Plant, another 10,000 tons from other pig farms, in addition to 10,000 tons of chickens and as many ducks and 10,000 tons of meat in rural communities—50,000 tons in all. This is a fairly large amount.

More rice-cooking houses should be built so as to free women from the heavy burden of kitchen work. People in Pyongyang only boast of several rice-cooking houses they have built, but they do not run them as they should. You should build four to five of them for each district and operate them properly. This is the way to ease the kitchen work of working women. We must implement the task of freeing women from the heavy burden of household chores and kitchen work quickly, a task which was set by the Fifth Party Congress. We shall only then be able to review this work at the next Party congress. The fact that there are not many rice-cooking houses in Pyongyang is entirely due to the mistaken attitude of the officials. All that is needed for such a house is to erect a brick building and install some cauldrons. I cannot understand why you do not do this.

Every household must be provided with an electric cooking pot and a refrigerator and the like. Our officials only talk about the need to produce them, but they still do not visit the relevant factories to hold Party meetings to discuss detailed measures for the production of serviceable high-quality electric cookers and refrigerators.

*Kimchi* factories must also be built and brought into operation as soon as possible.

I do not understand why chief secretaries of district Party
committees are doing nothing to implement the task of producing *kimchi* by industrial methods, although I assume that officials in charge of administrative affairs neglect it because they lack Party spirit, working-class spirit and the spirit of serving the people. Even though Pyongyang has many machine-building factories and the capacity of their equipment is sufficient, it is not implementing the Party’s policy faithfully. The city ought to set an example for the whole country in revolutionizing services, but you only pay lip service to this matter and have only made a prototype of each article, and you have not implemented any of the Party policies substantially.

Commissions and ministries should assist Pyongyang so that it will take the lead in revolutionizing the food industry.

A general flour-processing mill should also be built. You must build one as soon as possible and produce biscuits, bread, noodles and the like. It is desirable for this mill to produce a large amount of bread and supply approximately 50 grammes of it with a cup of milk or bean milk to each of the children in nurseries and kindergartens and the pupils of primary schools at lunch time. In the future, office workers must also adopt this dietary system. This is the most important task in improving the people’s living conditions in Pyongyang.

The construction of the monosodium glutamate shop now under way must be accelerated so that it will be completed quickly. When the shop is put into regular production, we shall produce 1,200 tons of monosodium glutamate annually. With this alone, we shall be able to earn a great deal of money.

If we produce and sell a large amount of monosodium glutamate, it will not only improve the people’s diet, but also bring great benefit to the state.

If the price of one ton of monosodium glutamate is 65,000 *won*, we shall earn 65 million *won* if we sell only 1,000 tons of it. If we build factories with this money, we shall be able to construct six 10 million *won* factories. Provided that we succeed in the production and sale of monosodium glutamate, we shall be able to compensate for the radical reduction in the prices of manufactured goods and shall also be able to
make up for the money needed to raise the pays of factory and office workers by 30 per cent in the future.

You must not regard the sale of monosodium glutamate, indan and dyestuffs as being unimportant. This is the best way of making money. You should sell some 1,000 tons of indan annually. From this alone you will be able to earn a lot of money.

The extension project of the Pyongyang Cornstarch Factory must be completed as soon as possible. You say that you want to build another cornstarch factory in Pyongyang, but you need not do so. If the existing cornstarch factory when enlarged produces 70,000 tons of sugar, you will be able to supply sufficient drops and biscuits to the citizens of Pyongyang. Therefore, you must not build another one. A cornstarch factory has been built in South Phyongan Province and in each of the other provinces, so Pyongyang need not supply the provinces.

From June, you must ensure that people in the provinces eat the drops and biscuits produced in their own cornstarch factories and stop expecting them to be supplied by Pyongyang. Only then will provinces work hard to put their cornstarch factories on a normal basis. If you continue to provide them from Pyongyang, instead, they will not work hard themselves, only expecting to obtain these things from you as in the past. They will not die if they do not eat drops for a few months. Pyongyang should only supply a sufficient amount of these items for train passengers, but should not supply any to the provinces.

The provinces have to speed up the construction of cornstarch factories. It is not a simple task to build ten cornstarch factories in only six months but we in our country can build them simultaneously because we are advancing at Chollima speed. Other countries could not even consider doing this. Provinces must work hard to equip the cornstarch factories they have built as soon as possible and put their production on a regular basis.

You must also revolutionize clothing.

At present people in Pyongyang find it difficult to have their clothes tailored even when the material is available because there are not many
good tailor’s shops in the city. Since this is the case with the inhabitants of Pyongyang, visiting officials from provinces will find it even more difficult. More tailor’s shops should be set up in Pyongyang so that its inhabitants can get their clothes tailored whenever they need, and then people from the provinces will also be able to have smart suits made during their stay in Pyongyang.

Recently when guests from a foreign country visited our country, the women in the welcoming party were richly dressed, but the men were not. You must ensure that men also wear fine suits. Senior officials must set an example when walking in the street or going to welcome foreign guests, although they may not do so while at work.

You must not regard wearing fine suits as being vain and extravagant. Good clothing is one of the important factors in the cultural revolution.

We are not providing good clothing for nursery and kindergarten children, either. You must set up many tailor’s shops for children and make good clothes for them. You should make many clothes for children of one to six years of age so that each of them will have five to six suits of clothing a year. Children can change clothes frequently when each of them has a few suits for spring and autumn, one for winter and approximately three for summer.

Children’s clothes do not use much material. One metre of fabric is enough to make three or four kinds of children’s clothes. The streets will look bright if the children are dressed well. It is not very difficult to make their clothes. You can do this by providing some sewing machines to housewives’ workteams and supplying them with cut materials for sewing.

Children in tights are already making the city bright. Yesterday I told the head of the Light Industry Department of the Party Central Committee to provide tights for the provinces. But this should only be done after the needs of Pyongyang have been met, and then in the order of South Phyongan Province, Kangwon Province, South Hamgyong Province, North Hwanghae Province and so on.

Many handicraft articles must also be offered for sale in the shops.
Foreign demands for these goods are great. If you organize this work well, you will be able to sell a large number of them to foreigners.

You can sell the articles made by the children of the Pyongyang Students and Children’s Palace during their practice hours; you can also provide cloth and embroidery thread to skilful women in housewives’ workteams to make these articles for sale.

We have built a good footwear factory in Pyongyang. You must keep it supplied with sufficient raw materials, so that it can mass-produce a variety of smart high-quality shoes.

We must also revolutionize the furniture industry.

We have built many good houses in Pyongyang, but we are not providing them with the necessary furniture because of the shortage of timber. I have said that all the furniture needed in Pyongyang must be provided, by including the necessary timber in the plan. But furniture production is not yet sufficient because of the shortage of wood.

There is nothing particularly special about furniture. It means such things as beds, cupboards, quilt chests, dining tables, desks, chairs, bookcases and the like. It is impossible to revolutionize the furniture industry completely within one year. But we have the furniture plant from Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) and many other furniture factories we have built. So, if we work well, we can manufacture attractive and serviceable furniture without difficulty.

You must equip laundries, bathhouses and barbershops well.

I have given instructions that facilities must be provided so that every family can take a bath with hot water, but this work is not proceeding as it should.

The central heating system is working in a large number of houses in Pyongyang, but we have not yet provided them with facilities for hot-water bathing because of the shortage of pipes. The head of the Heavy Industry Department of the Party Central Committee must ensure the supply of pipes to Pyongyang without fail, even if this means giving the Kangson Steel Complex the task of producing them over and above the plan.
Even though every household has bathing facilities, you must build some well-appointed public baths. In the immediate post-armistice days when I worked as Chairman of the Pyongyang City Reconstruction Committee, we built a modern bathhouse near Kim Chaek University of Technology even though the country was in difficult circumstances. However, after that we have not built many such bathhouses. This shows that our officials lack the spirit to serve the people.

There are not many dry cleaning premises in Pyongyang. Each district must have at least one, and the Central District, which has a large population, needs about four.

At present there are not many barbershops for children in Pyongyang. Every dong must have one.

Under the socialist system the barbershop is meant to provide people with regular haircuts so that they can present a decent appearance and not to make money. So it does not always need a sign.

It makes no difference whether barbershops are in the back streets or anywhere else so long as children are given haircuts. The best thing is to set up a barbershop at each school so that primary and senior middle school pupils can have their hair cut there after school. When I visited the Taedongmun Primary School two years ago, I was told that providing children with haircuts was very difficult. So I told them to build a bathhouse and a barbershop attached to the school. I wonder whether they have implemented my instructions. Chief secretaries of district Party committees must assume direct responsibility for the building of barbershops for children. It is not very difficult to organize them. All that is needed is a few barbers, chairs, mirrors and a room for washing.

We must also revolutionize the bus service in the city.

There are many shortcomings in bus operation at present. Buses are overcrowded because they carry passengers beyond their rated capacity. We have built underground railways and altered the time it takes working people in the city to get to and from work. But little has improved.
It is a good idea for the people who do not live far from their workplaces to walk a short way in the morning, instead of going to work by bus. At present even those who need only a short walk to get to their workplaces go by bus. It is not bad for those who do not live very far from their workplaces to walk, except women with babies and little children. They say that commuter tickets are issued only to the people who have to cover more than two kilometres. However, judging by the fact that buses are congested, I think that many people take the bus, even without these tickets.

At every bus stop in the city there are people waiting in a queue. You must take every measure to ensure that they will not have to wait. Some people take this for granted, saying that in foreign countries people also stand in queues at bus stops. They are wrong. Whatever other countries do, we must increase the number of buses so that people will not have to wait in queues, even if this means that almost empty buses are driving in the streets.

If there is no apparent improvement in the traffic in spite of the alterations to the working hours in Pyongyang, you must discuss the matter with the Administration Council for further alterations. I cannot understand why people in the field of public health go to work at nine o’clock when 10 or 11 o’clock will do. In connection with the working people’s transport, the work hours must be examined once again. When inspecting the city by car early in the morning, I notice that more people are standing in queues at bus stops in the street in front of Kim Il Sung University and in Pipha Street than anywhere else.

In order to solve the bus problem in the city, it is important to organize bus service well in addition to altering the working hours of the working people. At present buses do not run at regular intervals of a few minutes, but in many cases they travel in a group. Sometimes they run at long intervals, and sometimes they run one after another, almost causing traffic jams. You must examine the bus service and improve its organization.

If you are to solve the bus problem in the city, you should also
ensure that the existing buses run as they should and that their numbers are increased. If many buses are not being used because of the shortage of tyres, the secretary of the Party Central Committee concerned must accept the responsibility for solving this problem. You will have to take the first delivery of buses, approximately half the total number now being imported under contract, and allocate them to Pyongyang.

I think there will be no end if I am to speak about the revolution in services. It involves many problems such as getting people to observe traffic rules faithfully, keeping shops clean and improving their service.

The term *Pongsa* has been in use from olden times. After liberation I instructed that this word should continue to be used as before. This word means serving somebody. When we talk about serving somebody, we mean serving the people rather than the landlords and capitalists. Therefore, there is no harm in using this word as it is.

If we are to improve services, we must train service workers well. We must first ensure that our people adopt a correct attitude towards service work. In a capitalist society, services are considered the meanest of all jobs. Under the socialist system, however, workers in this sector must have the proper attitude that they serve the people and must take pride in this. Service workers in a capitalist society and their counterparts in a socialist society pursue fundamentally different aims in their work. In a capitalist society they work for the sake of the landlords, the capitalists and for themselves. However, in a socialist society they take on the honourable task of ensuring better material and cultural standards of living for the working people. Service workers in a socialist society must be faithful servants of the people, servants who strive to render better service to their fellow men. There is no happiness greater than faithfully serving and working for the people, and nothing can be more honourable than this.

Party organizations must train all the service workers to adopt a correct attitude and work as faithful servants of the people.

The Pyongyang City Party Committee must hold meetings of barbers and shop assistants in the Pyongyang Indoor Stadium.
according to plan. The meeting of shop assistants must discuss such problems as keeping the shops tidy, taking good care of the goods, handling them carefully and preventing their loss, attending their customers politely and kindly and improving service for them.

Service workers will only take great pride and honour in their revolutionary duty when such meetings are held frequently to educate them. Then they will also work in a responsible way, being aware that the Party is deeply concerned about their work. If you leave them to themselves without organizing this kind of work, service workers cannot have a sense of pride in their work. I was told that at present some waitresses do not consider their duty honourable, asking themselves whether they cannot live in a socialist society if they do not wait on people. Party organizations must educate all the service people to work with a high awareness that no honour is higher than that of serving the people.

The Pyongyang City Party Committee must press ahead with the revolution in all services, in providing people with food, clothing and housing. It must accelerate this revolution for at least the next year up to the 30th anniversary of the founding of the Party and make sure that Pyongyang becomes still more cheerful. This is one of the most important revolutionary tasks facing the city Party committee.

You must see that Pyongyang takes the lead in revolutionizing services even by building factories, tailor’s shops and rice-cooking houses if it is necessary to do so.

The Heavy Industry Department, Light Industry Department and Fishing Industry Department and other economic departments of the Party Central Committee, in close cooperation with the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council, must provide machines, equipment and all other necessities quickly for the revolution in services in Pyongyang. The city should construct buildings itself and the state must provide some equipment. In this way you must ensure that Pyongyang increases its machine-building capacity and produces all service facilities including those for equipping rice-cooking houses and kimchi factories.
You must not mobilize the working people at random on Sundays to do labour, but should allow them to rest. Senior officials and working people can only educate their wives and children at home when you let them rest on Sundays. A Korean proverb says that you can only pluck the star when you can see the sky. In the same way, parents can only educate their children when they have some time to be with them. At present our senior officials do not educate their children as they should. From now onwards, they must not fail to relax on Sundays.

Rice transplantation must be done by those people who are now in the country areas to give them assistance with their work. If chief secretaries of the city and district Party committees and secretaries of dong Party committees give instructions on mobilizing the working people for rice transplantation as they please because there is pressure on this work, they cannot rest for even a single day. From now onwards, everyone must go to the country areas and work there on Fridays and must rest on Sundays without fail. Chief secretaries of provincial, city and county Party committees must not give random instructions on mobilizing people for labour.

The area of paddy fields in Pyongyang is 30,000 hectares. Ninety thousand people have gone to give labour assistance there. This means three helping hands per hectare, and if a farmer is added to this, it turns out that four people tend one hectare of paddy fields. Therefore, you need not send urban working people to help rice transplantation on Sundays. You must think of mechanizing farm work rather than doing it by increasing manpower.

A large number of farm machines, including rice transplanters, must be produced for Pyongyang so that it can improve the layout of fields, transplant seedlings and do every other kind of farm work with the help of machines.

At present, cooperative farms in Pyongyang do not use rice-transplanting machines efficiently. These machines should plant rice seedlings when the sediment has settled, at least three to five days after the harrowing of the fields. Then they will transplant seedlings
neatly without getting bogged down. On my inspection of a cooperative farm yesterday, however, I saw rice-transplanting machines getting bogged down in the fields frequently because they were working immediately after the harrowing.

Last year, I instructed that the fields must be harrowed beforehand and that these machines should work there some five days after harrowing. However, the Agricultural Commission is neglecting the organization of this work again this year. The commission must publish manuals on the mechanical transplanting of rice seedlings for cooperative farms so that they can follow the rules. If we are to carry out the rural technical revolution, we still need many more tractors. If we are to plough the paddy fields three times, we have to supply some 30,000 tractors to the country areas. They say that the Chongsan Cooperative Farm has five tractors for every 100 hectares of farmland and that this amount will meet their needs. It will be sufficient if there are five *Chollima* tractors for every 100 hectares. At present our country has two to three per 100 hectares. If we are to have five for every 100 hectares, we must produce more tractors of this type.

Provinces will have to be provided with more machine tools so that they can make tractor spares for their own use.

To proceed. You must do Party work efficiently.

I always say that the most important thing in Party work is work with people. Not only the organizational department, but all other departments of the Party committee must do work with people. The Party committee should devote at least 60 per cent of its effort to this work.

Work with cadres has to be done efficiently.

Some time ago the Party Central Committee guided and inspected the work of the Pyongyang City Party Committee in a comprehensive way and appointed its cadres. I think that the officials of the Pyongyang City Party Committee and chief secretaries of district Party committees have been selected from good people. The overwhelming majority of them have been chosen from amongst people of worker, poor peasant and army origin. We should not choose cadres from
people of student origin, but chiefly from those of worker and peasant origin.

Work with cadres will not automatically go smoothly just because the officials of the Pyongyang City Party Committee and chief secretaries of district Party committees have been selected from amongst good people. The city Party committee must pull itself together and apply itself to work with cadres.

The main factor in this work is to imbue cadres with the Party’s monolithic ideology and train them to be efficient in organizing and directing political, economic, cultural and all other affairs.

In particular, Pyongyang should train a large number of competent cadres and send them to the provinces. If the people who have seen modern practices, heard many useful things and studied in Pyongyang from childhood, are trained as cadres and appointed to the provinces, they will be able to work ambitiously, undertake motivation and information work efficiently and revolutionize culture and services and thus modernize anything which is still backward.

If the chief secretary of a district Party committee in Pyongyang goes to Tokchon County, South Phyongan Province, to work as chief secretary of its Party committee, he will be far better than others in such matters as supplying vegetables to the people and the management of the shops and the town, although I am not sure of other affairs. Although it is an urban community, the Tokchon County town has no shop counters worth mentioning nor does it sell fish as it should. On my recent visit to Tokchon County, I strongly appreciated the need to send cadres who have been trained in Pyongyang to the provinces.

Cities in South Hamgyong Province are not being managed properly. That province also needs cadres who have been trained in Pyongyang. Hamhung is only half the size of Pyongyang. However, this city has no greengrocery worthy of the name, nor does it supply eggs regularly, nor has it equipped its service network properly. The socialist system is a system under which all the working people live equally well and are provided with good services. We must work hard to revolutionize services throughout the country so as to demonstrate
the superiority of the socialist system to the full. To this end, Pyongyang must take the lead in this undertaking and train a large number of competent cadres and send them to the provinces. Then, the provinces will copy Pyongyang in this revolution.

From the point of view of cadre training, Pyongyang can be called a university. The city must train a large number of cadres for different sectors such as agriculture, trade and city management. But the Pyongyang City Party Committee is not training cadres well.

So far, Pyongyang has only trained some officials who specialize in vegetable cultivation. It was able to train them and send them to several provinces, including Kangwon and South Hwanghae Provinces, because this sector was under my personal guidance.

Because Pyongyang has not trained good cadres, the process has been reversed. Under the pretext of selecting cadres from amongst people of good social origin, Pyongyang is now recruiting its cadres from Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces. In consequence, some of the cadres in Pyongyang do not even know how our traditional meals are cooked, how houses should be kept neatly and how public order should be maintained. This shows that the Pyongyang City Party Committee has been inefficient in dealing with personnel affairs. If it had been good at training cadres, why should it have recruited Pyongyang cadres from the provinces?

At present the instructors of the Party Central Committee are also selected from provincial people. The Party Central Committee must help Pyongyang well so as to make it a large cadre-training centre and promote well-qualified people who trained in this centre as its instructors. But it is recruiting inexperienced, unqualified local people as its instructors. As a result, some officials of the Party Central Committee occasionally make mistakes.

Since only people of good social origin are chosen as cadres at present, many people who grew up in mountainous areas in North Hamgyong, Ryanggang and North Phyongan Provinces, places which the enemy was unable to occupy during our temporary retreat in the war, have come to Pyongyang.
Social origin must not be over-emphasized in dealing with personnel affairs. People’s social origins are not immutable. It is 20 years since the end of the Fatherland Liberation War. So there is no need to take issue with people’s social origins. Do not let a father’s past mistake interfere with the promotion of his son if the son has been trained among the working class and is loyal to the Party.

An official who was recently appointed minister of the Administration Council has an involved family background. But my knowledge of him over the past 20 years shows that he is infinitely loyal to the Party, well informed, decent and dignified. His father was a small well-to-do entrepreneur in the past, but this is no reason why he should not be promoted as a cadre.

The important thing in personnel administration is to decide on the merits of the people concerned, that is, in accordance with their loyalty to the Party, and not their family background. Of course, people with an involved background needs a certain period of probation. The minister I have mentioned had been demoted on many occasions and went through various adversities. In spite of this, he has always worked faithfully as told to by the Party, without complaining. If a politically unqualified person had been in his situation, he would have talked nonsense. But the minister did not. We have to test the people who follow the Party, in spite of their somewhat checkered background, by giving them assignments and then seeing how they carry them out, over many years. They are better than the people of whom we are not sure and certain. A certain man was promoted to an important post on the strength of his allegedly good family background, but it turned out that he had not been tested. When in difficulties, he talked stupidly and behaved arrogantly.

Of course, cadres must be promoted from amongst people of good origin. But even people of somewhat involved origin must also be given frequent assignments and tested through work and, if they prove loyal, they must be promoted as cadres.

There are many fine activists in our Party who are fighting well for the Party and the revolution. There are far more unknown activists than
well-known ones. So far we have not discovered many unknown activists. We should have closer contact with the masses and work with people efficiently so as to discover more.

You must first select cadres from amongst good people and then give them assignments and test them for a long time and thus train them to be competent.

In the past, some officials of the Pyongyang City Party Committee promoted their drinking acquaintances in an unprincipled way. People with whom one has become friendly over a few drinks are drinking pals but not revolutionary comrades. Drinking pals seem to be good while drinking, but when you run out of wine, they will betray you and change sides. Drinking pals might have been needed at places like lumber stations in the bygone days. However, they are utterly useless to us. You must never regard those who treat you to wine and give you presents as good people and promote them as cadres. This runs counter to the Party’s organizational principle.

Ours is a militant, revolutionary party. Our Party needs only principled and comradely union and unity and cohesion based on common ideology and will. Only those who are united in ideology and purpose on this principle are genuine revolutionary comrades.

On the pretext of choosing people from a good social origin, Pyongyang is not only recruiting ignorant people from places such as Samsu and Kapsan, but even recalling those people who have been transferred to the provinces from Pyongyang.

Because you bring back these local cadres, some of them are not settled in their work. Some time ago a bureau chief of a certain ministry was reappointed as the manager of an enterprise in a province. However, he left his family in Pyongyang and did not work well on the new job, claiming that he was not qualified as a manager and that he was incompetent.

Those who complain about being sent from Pyongyang to a province as a local official, are not people who live for the sake of the revolution. They are people who seek their own comfort in Pyongyang. We must wage a resolute ideological struggle against them.
From now onwards, you must not bring people from the provinces to become officials of Pyongyang. You should select officials for Pyongyang mainly from people in Pyongyang and South Phyongan Province.

There is no need to bring people from Ryanggang or Jagang Province simply because they are of good social origin.

The Party Central Committee must help the Pyongyang City Party Committee in many respects so that the city will be able to train many good officials and send them to the provinces. However, I do not mean that you should consider only Pyongyang to be important. When it is really necessary to do this for training purposes, you must bring some officials from the provinces, on an individual basis. After training, they should be sent back to their home provinces so that they will improve the work there. The main thing is the proper training as cadres of those people who, working in Pyongyang, frequently meet me and receive my guidance, and bear the imprint of my attention, and sending them to the provinces. It is in the nature of things that people who have been educated in the capital should go to work in the provinces instead of local people coming to work in the capital. Then, Pyongyang, the revolutionary capital, can be a model for the whole country and become an excellent cadre-training centre.

From now onwards, Pyongyang must become efficient at training cadres just as Chongsan-ri is.

Several days ago I visited Chongsan-ri, Kangso County, and talked to its Party committee secretary. He formerly worked as secretary of the primary Party committee of the steel shop in the Kangson Steel Plant. He is a very good man. He is prudent in his work; he has turned the once troublesome Chongsan-ri into a united ri where people are friendly. It is desirable that people like him should unhesitatingly be promoted as cadres.

The secretary of the Jamjinri Party committee, Kangso County, has been working faithfully at his post for more than ten years. He can be said to be of peasant origin because he has worked as ri Party committee secretary after leaving school.
So far Jamjin-ri has been successful in farming and is continuing to catch up with Chongsan-ri. We have provided tractors, fertilizer and other necessities freely to Chongsan-ri. But this was not the case with Jamjinri. In spite of this, this ri has never lost a competition with Chongsan-ri. Up to 1972 we did not provide material conditions to Jamjin-ri as we did to Chongsan-ri. Whenever I passed through Jamjin-ri, its Party committee secretary waited for me on the roadside and greeted me when he saw me. I told him that we were supplying more farm machines, fertilizer and other facilities to Chongsan-ri for the purpose of experimentation and that Jamjin-ri should compete with Chongsan-ri by using their own resources. Jamjin-ri adjoins Chongsan-ri. So whenever I pass through the ri, I can see its folk carry earth on their backs. In this way, they are improving the layout of a large area of fields. They have also produced manure in every possible way to increase crop yields. As a result, when Chongsan-ri harvested five tons of rice per hectare, they reaped five tons, and when Chongsan-ri reaped six tons, they harvested the same amount.

Last year I supplied some bulldozers to Jamjin-ri, and they have improved the layout of their fields a great deal with these machines.

Last year we started to provide some tractors to Jamjin-ri in order to raise its level of mechanization. Several days ago they asked for ten more tractors, and we complied with their request. As a matter of fact, the level of mechanization in this ri is not yet as high as that of Chongsan-ri. However, this ri is very successful in farming.

The officials of Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri, Kangso County, do their best to do all the work in their ri in the same way as they manage their household affairs. They are very worried when things are not going smoothly with the Party and the country, and grieve very much over causing even the slightest trouble to me. Such people can be said to have the qualifications needed for Party officials.

These officials have been tested through 11 to 12 years of work with me. Every year I met them on seven or eight occasions and examined them in a methodical way. They have a high sense of responsibility for their work and when things are not going as they
should, they grieve at this.

Recently when I met them I asked them for some people who can be used as managerial workers of cooperative farms, because Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri have rich experience in agricultural mechanization and in the introduction of advanced farming methods.

Some other officials who are enthralled by departmental selfishness, would be reluctant to do this. But this was not the case with these officials. In Chongsan-ri they said that they would offer three people capable of working as management board chairmen of cooperative farms and ten people who are qualified as workteam leaders. And the officials of Jamjin-ri said that they would produce ten management board chairmen and five workteam leaders. The officials of these two ri said that they would not require replacements for these people, but would train as many again for their own use.

In future I intend to replace those cooperative farm management workers in South Phyongan Province who follow conservative practices and do not attempt agricultural mechanization and the use of chemicals, with those good people who have been trained in Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri. They know how to introduce mechanized operations in agriculture and use chemicals and how to improve the layout of fields.

I think that the secretaries of the Chongsanri and Jamjinri Party committees will be able to do a good job even if they are promoted as chief secretary of a county Party committee, and that the management board chairman of the Chongsan and Jamjin Cooperative Farms will work creditably even if they are entrusted with the duties of chairman of a county cooperative farm management committee.

Good people can be chosen as cadres from Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri because I have guided them for over ten years. To be frank, officials who have been trained there are better than graduates from a university of agriculture. Their theoretical standard is high and they have practical ability; they know how to take good care of the fields and keep their houses and villages clean.

Other cooperative farms are still far behind Chongsan-ri and
Jamjin-ri. Management officials in some cooperative farms take fright if they are told to produce five tons of maize per hectare, as if they were being asked to pluck stars from the sky. But people in Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri are not.

In the future we intend to produce two million tons of phosphatic fertilizer and 500,000 tons of potash fertilizer annually. With a plant nutrient content of 15 per cent, the two million tons of phosphatic fertilizer is as good as 300,000 tons, and at the rate of 50 per cent, the 500,000 tons of potash fertilizer is as good as 250,000 tons. Then phosphatic and potash fertilizers alone will amount to 550,000 tons in terms of plant nutrient content. We are planning to produce 2.5 million tons of nitrogenous fertilizer, which is as much as 525,000 tons at the rate of 21 per cent of nutrient content.

We shall be able to attain the goal of five million tons of fertilizer next year or the year after next, if we complete the construction of the ammonium nitrate fertilizer factory now under way in Aoji and build another one with a capacity of 150,000 tons.

I explained this fact to people in Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri and asked them how much grain they would be able to produce per hectare. They gave me a firm assurance that they would each produce ten tons of rice and maize per hectare if they applied 200 kilogrammes of nitrogenous fertilizer in terms of nutrient content and the same amount of mixed phosphatic and potash fertilizers. They said that their past experience showed that rice plants would not fall over even when a large amount of fertilizers was used if nitrogenous fertilizer and phosphatic and potash fertilizers were spread at the ratio of one to one.

I have been told that last year in Chongsan-ri no rice plants fell down except those which were submerged. So I told them to prevent the crops from falling over this year, too. South Phyongan Province and Pyongyang must also see that rice plants do not fall down.

If all the cooperative farms in our country raise good crops and reap ten tons per hectare like Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri, we shall be able to produce 6.5 million tons of rice from the 650,000 hectares of paddy fields we have and six million tons of maize from the 600,000 hectares
of maize fields. If this is done, rice and maize alone will amount to 12.5 million tons. This calculation takes into account only good fields and excludes the sloping fields in the mountain areas. We have 50,000 hectares of wheat and barley fields. If we grow two crops in these fields and harvest ten tons of crops per hectare, 500,000 tons will be produced. And if we plant 100,000 hectares to sweet potatoes and reap ten tons per hectare in terms of grain, it will be quite a lot. It is said that Chongsan-ri can produce 50 tons of sweet potatoes per hectare. If we rate sweet potatoes and crops at 4 to 1, 50 tons of sweet potatoes will be more than ten tons of grain per hectare. If we farm well in this way, we shall be able to improve the living standards of the people much further.

In the near future we shall attain the production goals of fertilizer and tractors. Everything now depends on how the management workers of cooperative farms perform their duties as masters.

If all agricultural officials do their best to cultivate better crops and apply themselves to farming like the management board workers in Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri, we shall not fail to attain the grain production goal.

However, I do not think that many of the cooperative farms in Pyongyang are industrious in farming. As a matter of fact, the Mangyongdae Cooperative Farm is also working very hard. But this cooperative farm has advantages over other cooperative farms: it uses a large amount of manure produced in Pyongyang and gets some other supplies from the state.

Pyongyang receives more of my guidance than any other place. Therefore, it should be an example in all respects and should become a school for training cadres like Chongsan-ri and Jamjin-ri. Chongsan-ri has not only been built as a model; it has already started to produce many cadres. Mundok County, South Phyongan Province, has also trained and offered many agricultural officials.

When the Pyongyang City Party Committee works well, its officials will themselves be tempered to become good officials who are unreservedly faithful to the Party and train many people to be
competent officials. The Party Central Committee is situated in
Pyongyang and the have many opportunities to become well informed.
Therefore, officials in Pyongyang ought to be better qualified than
those in the provinces in all respects.

From now onwards, the Pyongyang City Party Committee must
work hard to train many cadres and send them to the provinces.

Another important task in dealing with people is to work with Party
members well.

It is only when you work with Party members well and improve
their leading role that you will be able to unite the masses closely
around the Party and imbue the whole of society with our Party’s Juche
idea. Pyongyang is the revolutionary capital. Therefore, only those
who defend the Party are entitled to live in it. Only the people who are
firmly armed with the Party’s monolithic ideology, support the Party’s
policy and live and work with one mind and one will, are qualified to
live in this city.

You must ensure that not a single corrupt element who does not
breathe as one with the Party, lives in Pyongyang.

The Pyongyang City Party Committee must work with Party
members efficiently so that they will play the leading role in imbuing
the revolutionary capital Pyongyang with our Party’s Juche idea.

It must convene an enlarged meeting of its executive committee to
adopt thorough measures needed to carry out the tasks I have given
today and implement them, one by one. In this way you must see that
Pyongyang sets an example for the whole country in all spheres of
politics, the economy and culture, and becomes a school for the
training of cadres.
I am very glad to meet you, since you have come all the way from Peru.

I warmly welcome your visit to our country.

As you have probably seen during your tour of inspection, construction work is proceeding rapidly in our country. At present we are engaged in many construction projects. We are even afraid we are overdoing ourselves in construction work.

You said that you were most deeply impressed by our children who are growing up happily. As a matter of fact, our country is now allocating a great deal of money for the children. A large proportion of our state budget is appropriated for their upbringing and education. In our country 3.5 million children are now being brought up at nurseries and kindergartens and 4.6 million pupils and students are enrolled at primary schools, senior middle schools, colleges and universities. The number totals more than eight million.

The northern half of our country has a population of about 15 million, and of this over eight million are children cared for at nurseries and kindergartens and pupils and students enrolled at schools. With so many children and students being brought up and educated at government expense, the state has to bear a rather heavy burden. No country seems to be investing so heavily in children as ours is.
Although it is at present something of a burden to raise and educate the children at state expense, it is a good investment for the future. It may be somewhat hard for us now, but it will bring us happiness in the future. The education of students will bear good results in time to come.

I am grateful for your high appreciation of our educational policy. Not only you, but many heads of state and party delegations from Africa, the Middle East and other parts of the world have said that what impressed them most in our country was our educational policy. People from the Socialist Party and the Liberal-Democratic Party of Japan, a capitalist country, also approve of our educational policy. Members of Japan’s Liberal-Democratic Party, the party in power, who have visited our country, expressed great admiration for the fact that we are bringing up and educating children and students—half of the population—at state expense at education establishments of various levels such as nursery schools, kindergartens, primary schools, senior middle schools, colleges and universities.

In our country not only students but also ministers of the Administration Council and all the cadres are studying. When the cadres are added, the number of people studying in our country is far greater than the number of pupils and students. A few years ago socialist mayors of Japan visited our country. They asked me to explain our all-people education system. So I talked to them about it for hours on end.

You have said that cadres are important in making revolution. You are perfectly right. Cadres decide everything. Good cadres are indispensable for the progress of society and the country.

You say that the universities of your country have many humanity faculties, but the humanities are restricted in our country. At our colleges and universities students majoring in literature, law and other social sciences constitute no more than 30 per cent of the total enrolment.

In the past the Japanese imperialists who were occupying Korea allowed only a few Koreans to study law or medicine, so that they
became lawyers, doctors or teachers. But they never taught technology to Koreans. Our investigation after liberation showed that there were only a few score Koreans who had graduated from Japanese technical universities. The Japanese imperialists did not so much as teach Koreans how to drive locomotives. The Japanese imperialist villains employed only Japanese nationals as engine drivers and used Koreans as stokers. The station-masters were also Japanese. There were only a few Korean engine drivers. This alone is sufficient to show how vicious the Japanese imperialists were.

Immediately after liberation our country had no cadres of its own. For lack of engine drivers, locomotives were not running for several months. So we were obliged to send trainees abroad to learn how to run them.

Our country and Peru have no diplomatic relations as yet. But we always follow the struggle of the Peruvian people closely.

His Excellency President Velasco of Peru is a courageous man. He is doing a great deal of work in the interests of the Peruvian people. His Excellency President Velasco claims the 200-mile territorial waters limit. Until a few years ago only the Latin-American countries claimed the 200-mile territorial waters limit, but now it is being advocated throughout the world. At present the African countries are also claiming the 200-mile territorial waters limit or the economic waters limit.

The line you advocate, that is, President Velasco’s claim for the 200-mile territorial waters limit, is today receiving worldwide support. At present the third world is united. So, when the peoples of the third world rise up, even great powers are helpless. According to press reports, Japan appears to be ready to recognize the 200-mile economic waters, for fear of being isolated from the world if she does not do so. Japan gains immense profits from her maritime business, and now she has reluctantly yielded to the demand for extending economic waters to 200 miles. The United States and some other countries are still rejecting the idea of 200-mile economic waters. Since almost all the countries of the world are insisting on it, they will have no alternative
but to accept. I think the forthcoming International Conference on the Law of the Sea to be held in Venezuela, Latin America, will be successful. Very likely its impact will be great.

You were the first to put forward the claim for the 200-mile territorial waters limit, and in doing so you held up the banner of independence. This is a perfectly justified policy. This policy contributes greatly to the protection of domestic resources and the defence of national independence. The whole of the third world is following your example.

You say that when US boats come near your coasts for fishing, you seize them and impose fines on them. This is a very brave and bold act for the entire world to follow. We give unreserved support to your stand and value it highly.

You are holding high the banner of independence, and this is very important.

All the world is now demanding independence. Countries of the second world, not to mention those of the third world, are claiming independence. By the second world we mean such countries as France and Canada. All these countries claim independence. In addition, the North European countries such as Norway, Sweden, Denmark and Finland and the Latin-American countries are also advocating the principle of independence. In Latin America today both Peru and Argentina are going their own way independently.

The socialist countries are also in favour of independence. The aim of the revolutionary struggle for socialism and communism is for the people to live independently, not for them to live in bondage to others. In the Communist Manifesto Marx stated that the chains of oppression must be severed. If the people, after breaking free from the chains of oppression, should fall under the control of great powers, fetters of another type, what is the use of their making revolution?

We stand for the principle of complete independence.

We unite with the socialist countries on the basis of four principles. The four principles are that the socialist countries should oppose imperialism; support the national-liberation movement in the colonial
and semi-colonial countries and the working-class movement in the capitalist countries; continue the building of socialism and communism; and observe the principles of noninterference in one another’s internal affairs, mutual respect, equality and mutual benefit. We advocate the principle of noninterference in one another’s internal affairs.

The socialist countries must not interfere in other countries no matter what line they may follow. Even in a family every member must be left free to do what he likes—drink coffee or have tea in the morning. If they are prevented from doing so, the family cannot live in harmony.

We never interfere in the internal affairs of other countries. We do not criticize other socialist countries as long as they do not oppose socialism and follow the road of counter-revolution. Other socialist countries also do not meddle in the internal affairs of our country, and even if they dared try to do so, we would not tolerate it. As you see, it is because we respect each other and do not interfere in each other’s internal affairs that we get on well. We are now on good terms with all the socialist countries.

Because many countries in the world now stand for independence and take the road of independence, we call the present time the age of independence. We have met many people from different countries of the world, and almost all of them hold this opinion. It is now the trend of thought to call for independence, and follow an independent path.

You said that ours is a model country adhering to the principle of independence. This was acknowledged also by a correspondent of the US newspaper *The New York Times* who visited our country. He said that the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea is the firmest of all countries in maintaining independence and that we have very strong anti-US sentiments and have our own philosophy.

We have always maintained independence in the face of the imperialists’ policy of blockade against our country. Of course, at one time we had numerous difficulties. But we not only came through but also grew much stronger. The more the imperialists resorted to their blockade policy, the greater our people’s awareness and fighting
enthusiasm became. Now our situation is much better. Take foreign trade for example. In the past we carried on trade only with the socialist countries, but now we have trade relations with many other countries. As our country’s international position continues to grow, more and more countries wish to trade with us.

Even now the US imperialists are trying to blockade us economically, but nothing will come of it.

Let me give an example.

Recently economic transactions between our country and Japan began to show a slight increase. Of course, they are not carried on at a government level, but between private corporations. Some time ago we placed an order with Japan for two blast furnaces, each with a capacity of 2,000 cubic metres, in order to introduce modern technology into the steel industry. The south Korean reactionaries, however, asked the US imperialists to block north Korea’s purchase of the blast furnaces. In compliance with this request, the US imperialists pressed Japan to cancel the contract. The Japanese corporation notified us that they could not sell the equipment because, under pressure from the United States, their government had refused to sanction the sale.

Therefore, we told our technicians to use their initiative and build blast furnaces for themselves. After that, our technicians and workers set out to build a blast furnace on their own. We are now building a 1,500-cubic-metre blast furnace, and so it will be no great problem for us to build one of 2,000 cubic metres. I think the blast furnace now under construction will be completed by September 9 this year, a national holiday.

At a consultative meeting with the technicians some time ago we told them how splendid it was to build a blast furnace using their own efforts and technique, because it helped improve their technical qualifications and saved foreign currency.

In order to frustrate the enemy’s blockade policy a nation must train its own cadres well. If it has its own cadres it is quite capable of breaking the enemy’s blockade policy and solving everything for itself. In other words, it can turn a misfortune into an advantage.
As our experience shows, the blockade policy and pressure of the imperialists are bad in that they cause difficulties in various ways and hamper our progress, but, at the same time, they have their advantages since they stimulate and rouse the people, heightening their national pride.

Socialist construction is now progressing successfully in our country. The worst is over in our socialist construction.

The line adhered to in our socialist economic construction is to give priority to the development of heavy industry with the simultaneous growth of light industry and agriculture.

We did not build a heavy industry just for its own sake but so that it could improve light industry and agriculture and also improve the people’s living standards. For example, we built many fertilizer factories to contribute to agricultural development; we set up a large number of machine-building factories to serve light industry and agriculture; we constructed chemical fibre mills and the like to supply light industry with plenty of raw materials.

Our socialist economic construction has laid the firm foundation for the priority development of heavy industry with simultaneous, rapid growth of light industry and agriculture.

Today our industry is developing faster than ever before. We are going to accelerate socialist construction by increasing the Chollima speed. At the beginning of this year our Party Central Committee set ten major goals for economic construction. The target for steel production was set at 12 million tons a year.

When we build 2,000-cubic-metre blast furnaces, each will be able to produce 1.5 million tons of pig iron. In the Six-Year Plan period, we will reach the four-million-ton mark in steel production. If we build one blast furnace with a capacity of 1.5 million tons of pig iron every year, we shall be able to reach the target of 12 million tons of steel in a few years. We can build one of these blast furnaces every year.

Steel and electricity are essential. In industry, electricity is the forerunner and steel comes next in importance. Steel is essential for building machines and ships and augmenting the strength of the
country as a whole. The machine-building industry is the heart of heavy industry. Therefore, some of the advanced countries do not like to see the machine-building industry make headway in the underdeveloped countries.

Once people of a certain country told us that it was no good building a tractor plant in such a small country as ours. If we were unable to manufacture tractors on our own, we would have to buy them from other countries. But how could we afford to buy so many tractors? Because we have built tractor plants for ourselves, we are now in a position to supply large numbers of tractors to the rural areas.

We have laid the basis for developing agriculture more rapidly in the future.

Our cultivated land is limited. It is about two million hectares. If we exclude the area under fruit, it is no more than 1.7 million hectares. This area, however, can yield some ten million tons of grain provided we farm well using intensive methods. So we are exerting great efforts to carry out the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture and use chemicals more widely. We could produce more grain now if only we had larger quantities of fertilizer and more farm machines. Irrigation projects have already been completed in our country.

Irrigation is of great importance in the rural technical revolution. It is true that irrigation is not so easy. But it is fully possible if tackled with determination.

Our country now has various types of reservoirs. There are some where water is kept back by damming up ravines; others where water is stored by pumping it up; yet others where lakes are formed by drawing water from large rivers through tunnels. In some 20 years since the end of the war, we have built enough irrigation facilities to supply water to hundreds of thousands of hectares of cultivated land. If all the people are mobilized, irrigation projects can be carried out in a short time. When we started to build reservoirs, we had no machines and were short of lorries. So, people had to carry earth on their backs. However, we can now build reservoirs with greater ease and more quickly, because we have machines and a large number of heavy-duty lorries.
Water, fertilizer, machines and electricity are all needed in farming. In the rural technical revolution we have put up four Juche-motivated slogans. They are irrigation, electrification, mechanization and the wider use of chemicals. These slogans have been almost fully realized. But a considerable amount of work has yet to be done in mechanization.

Our technicians have invented a rice-planting machine after long years of painstaking effort. It is efficient. For some 20 years we have been trying hard to make it. We purchased rice-planting machines from other countries, but they did not suit our specific conditions. So we carried out research and invented our own rice-planting machine which was suited to our conditions. This year we shall plant rice seedlings by machine in about 50 per cent of the paddies. Next year all the rice planting will be done by machines.

We are now self-reliant and stand on our own feet in all spheres.

We are also working hard to develop foreign trade. Many countries of the third world now ask us for steel and cement. They need steel and cement because all of them want to build a national and independent economy.

We plan to produce more steel, cement and similar items, if only for the sake of promoting cooperation with those countries. Friendship and cooperation between nations often begin with the establishment of economic relations and are further consolidated and developed through these relations.

You asked us when our country would export metallurgical plants. We are not yet able to export complete metallurgical plants. If we are to export them, they must be more up-to-date than those of other countries. However, we have not yet reached such a level.

But we can export complete plants for some other kinds of factories. For instance, our country holds the patent for a vinalon factory. It was built entirely on our own techniques. So, many countries ask us to export plant for it.

In addition to the present vinalon factory with a capacity of 50,000 tons, we are planning to build another of the same capacity in the
Nampho area. This will double our experience in building vinalon factories. Then we shall be able to offer complete plants for vinalon factories to other countries with assurance.

A great deal of work conducive to the country’s independent development has also been done in Peru.

Peru did very well to nationalize the mines owned by US corporations. Thanks to the nationalization measures taken by the Peruvian Government, the corporations owned by the Yanks have become the property of all the people. This means that a new, socialist economic sector has come into being in Peru. With the efficient operation of the nationalized economy, you will be able to ensure the proportional development of the country’s economy.

For several years we have been closely observing your country with deep interest. We think that the Peruvian people are now fighting well with great bravery and doing a great many good things without much fuss.

I think it is very good that agrarian reform, nationalization of industries and various other reforms have been carried out in Peru without referring to the socialist revolution. It is most essential to carry out social reforms one by one, laying the foundation for them gradually. To work slowly but steadily is better than to make a noise under a big name, only to give up quickly. It is important to work for the people. The official name matters little.

When we nationalized the property of the Japanese imperialists and pro-Japanese elements in the wake of agrarian reform after liberation, we also made no mention of socialism. It was because the substance mattered more than the name.

You said that flunkeyism towards great powers is current to a considerable extent amongst Peruvian youth. We are categorically against flunkeyism towards great powers in carrying out the revolution and construction. We do not conceal our opposition to flunkeyism. In the past we have openly stated that our revolution and construction should be carried out in the Korean way in conformity with the specific conditions of our country.
Let me tell you of an event which occurred immediately after liberation. When we returned in triumph to the homeland after defeating Japanese imperialism, the situation in the country was very complex. After liberation there was not a single university in north Korea, but there were a few secondary schools in each province. And secondary schoolboys caused a great deal of trouble. Some took to ultra-“Leftism”, while others turned Rightist. One day, only a few months after liberation, we attended a gathering of young people on a playground and answered their questions about which road Korea was now following. I told them that our road represented democracy of a new type which was different both from US-type “democracy” and from Soviet-type socialism, and that this was not a democracy falling under the category of capitalist democracy but Korean-type democracy geared to the interests of the Korean people. Both the ultra-“Leftist” and ultra-Rightist students listened to our speech in silence. All of a sudden, a voice from among the crowd asked, “Are you also a communist, General?” I did not deny that I was a communist. I replied, “A true communist is the finest patriot, and only a truly patriotic-minded person can be a true communist. If a man who professes himself to be a communist does not love his country and nation, he is not a true communist. I am not a communist of the kind that looks up to another country, but one who relies on our own people and fights for the Korean nation and the Korean people.” Then, all the masses present sent up a cheer of *manse*. This simple fact is enough to demonstrate that all the people want to take the road of independence, and are averse to going into bondage to others.

We admire the Peruvian Government for pursuing a progressive and democratic policy in full accord with the interests of the Peruvian people.

We consider that all the policies followed by His Excellency the President of Peru are highly justified; they are patriotic, democratic and revolutionary policies which can gain the support of the Peruvian people.

Everything in Peru should be handled in a Peruvian way, and not in a foreign style. The Peruvian people are now engaged in a Peruvian-style
revolution, and this is really splendid. The Peruvian people have done very well to have chosen the road of the Peruvian-style revolution. That is why we give you our unreserved support.

We have read many books by both Marx and Lenin. But we do not apply Marxism-Leninism to our revolution mechanically. The situation being different from country to country, Marxism-Leninism should be applied creatively in conformity with the specific conditions of one’s country.

In the past there were many flunkeyists among our people, worshipping other countries. Just take people in the fields of culture and the arts. Previously, they simply liked Western music and painted pictures in the foreign style. Once, during the Fatherland Liberation War, we visited a hospital of the People’s Army, where we found a picture on the wall depicting a bear prowling about in the snowbound Siberian forest. Our country has many famous mountains such as Mt. Kumgang and Mt. Myohyang. But they had put up this picture instead of a painting of Korea’s beautiful landscape. So we criticized the man from the General Political Bureau of the People’s Army who was accompanying us. Immediately after the armistice we called Party information and publicity workers together and sharply criticized them for their flunkeyist tendency.

After that a campaign for eliminating flunkeyism was launched on a wide scale in our country. As a result, flunkeyism has been considerably eradicated from the minds of our people. Few of our people are now addicted to flunkeyism. The rising generation, in particular, are free from flunkeyist thinking.

Our experience has shown that education against flunkeyism is very important. Because you are engaged in ideological work, you are in duty bound to give such education to Peruvian youth. You should educate the young people properly so that they completely discard flunkeyist thinking.

You say that you will widely propagate the Juche idea in Peru. I think you should carry out the information work of the Juche idea, too, in a Peruvian way to suit the conditions prevailing in Peru.
Question: Your Excellency Mr. President, would you tell us what is the most important factor at the present stage of the Korean revolution and would you explain for the peoples of Peru and Latin America the significance of what has been achieved in the past years and what will be done in future by the Korean revolution or, to put it more concretely, by the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, your Government, your Party and your people?

Answer: The most important problem arising at the present stage of the Korean revolution is to achieve the country’s reunification. It is our nation’s greatest desire and supreme revolutionary task to reunify the divided country.

Our nation, which had for ages lived in the same territory with one culture and one language, found itself divided because of the occupation of south Korea by the US imperialists after liberation. The territorial division and national split caused the people in the southern half of our country to remain as before with the status of colonial slaves even after liberation, and placed grave difficulties in the way of our revolution.

As long as the tragic state of national division continues, there can be no complete liberation of the country and the nation, no nationwide
victory of the cause of socialism and communism. Therefore, we made
reunification of the country our most important revolutionary task, and
energetically fought for its accomplishment from the first days of
national division following liberation.

The unswerving policy pursued by our Party and the Government
of the Republic to achieve national reunification consists of
strengthening the three revolutionary forces. In other words, our Party
and the Government of the Republic have adhered to the policy of
striving, first, to strengthen the revolutionary forces of the northern
half of Korea, secondly, to strengthen the revolutionary forces of south
Korea and, thirdly, to strengthen the international revolutionary forces
and increase solidarity with them in order to achieve the independent
and peaceful reunification of the country.

A decisive guarantee of national reunification is the strengthening
of the revolutionary forces in the northern half of Korea.

Under the conditions in which the country was divided after
liberation, our Party put forward the line of turning the northern half of
Korea into a solid base of the Korean revolution and pressed ahead
with the revolution and construction there.

In the past years the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government
of the Republic have led the masses of the people to carry out the
democratic and the socialist revolutions successfully and to press
ahead with the building of socialism in the northern half of Korea. This
has meant that our revolutionary forces have been developed solidly in
all fields of politics, the economy, culture and military affairs and that
the north has been turned into a powerful base of the Korean
revolution, into a socialist base.

We have established an advanced socialist system and done away
with the sources of exploitation and poverty once and for all in the
northern half of Korea. Freed from exploitation and oppression for
ever, the working people of our country enjoy a contented,
independent and creative life as the masters of the country. Today all
the working people of our country are armed firmly with the Juche idea
and are closely united around the Party with one mind and one will.
This is our most valuable success and a decisive guarantee of new victories in the revolution and construction.

Under the correct guidance of the Workers’ Party of Korea, in a short space of time our people rehabilitated the national economy which had been severely damaged by the war, built a solid independent national economy, and fulfilled with credit the historic task of socialist industrialization by waging a heroic struggle in a high revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. Today our independent national economy produces almost all that is needed for the prosperity and development of the country and the improvement of the people’s lives. It is continuing to develop at a high speed, using our own raw materials and techniques, without being affected in the least by the economic upheaval which is sweeping the world.

We have scored brilliant successes in cultural construction, too. Thanks to the correct education policy of the Workers’ Party of Korea, a large contingent of our own cadres including more than 600,000 technicians and specialists has already been trained, and universal compulsory ten-year education has now been successfully introduced in our country. An all-round growth and development have been achieved in the socialist national culture of our country.

By carrying through the self-defence military line, we have built up a strong defence power to frustrate all the aggressive manoeuvres of the imperialists successfully and firmly defend the gains of the revolution.

All these successes which have been achieved in the revolutionary struggle and construction over the past years are a firm guarantee of the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and a great reserve for accomplishing the cause of socialism and communism. These successes, however, are only initial ones.

Our people are working hard to win the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea, without resting on their laurels.

We are carrying on three revolutions, that is, the ideological revolution, the technical revolution and the cultural revolution, so as to win the complete victory of socialism.
The basic task of the ideological revolution is to root out all obsolete ideas from the minds of the working people and revolutionize and working-classize all members of society. With a view to revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society, we are tempering the working people politically and ideologically by intensifying their ideological education, the education in Juche, and strengthening their organizational life. In revolutionizing and working-classizing the whole of society, we pay particular attention to the intellectuals and peasants.

We are striving to make all the working people acquire knowledge above the senior secondary school graduate level, and more than one skill by stepping up the cultural revolution. Once freed from exploitation and oppression the working people must possess a high level of knowledge and skill, if they are to become the true masters of the new society. Under the slogan: “The Party, the people and the army must all study”, our Party is now trying to make it a rule and a habit to study, the aim being to raise the ideological and cultural level and technical standard of Party members and the working people.

In the technical revolution the main stress is on carrying out its three major tasks put forward by the Fifth Congress of our Party. The principal objective of the three major tasks of the technical revolution is to narrow, by a considerable margin, the gap between heavy and light labour, and between agricultural and industrial labour and to free women from the heavy burdens of housekeeping duties. The three major tasks of the technical revolution are now well under way thanks to the energetic efforts of our technicians and working people.

In October next year we shall be celebrating the 30th anniversary of the Workers’ Party of Korea. Before this anniversary we are going to reach all the targets of the Six-Year Plan whose main content is the three major tasks of the technical revolution. Then we shall continue to advance to a new, higher goal.

Our main targets after the fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan are: 12 million tons of steel, 1 million tons of nonferrous metals, 100 million tons of coal, 50,000 million kwh of electric power, 20 million tons of
cement, 5 million tons of machinery and equipment, 5 million tons of marine products, 5 million tons of chemical fertilizers, 100,000 hectares of reclaimed tidelands and 10 million tons of grain.

A tremendous battle for massive socialist construction is now in progress in order to fulfil the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and reach the ten new major targets of economic construction. The mounting fighting spirit and revolutionary enthusiasm of the working class and all other working people lead us to believe firmly that the fighting goal set by the Party will be attained successfully in a short time.

When the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions have been successfully achieved by our people and the battle for massive socialist construction has been crowned by brilliant victory, the revolutionary base of the northern half of Korea will be still further consolidated and positive progress will have been made in our people’s struggle for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and the final victory of the Korean revolution.

In working for the reunification of the country it is very important to increase the revolutionary forces in south Korea.

A prerequisite for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country, and an urgent task facing the south Korean revolution at the present stage, is to check and frustrate the colonial enslavement policy and nation-splitting moves of US imperialism in Korea and democratize south Korean society. This task can only be carried out successfully when the revolutionary forces are strengthened in south Korea and an energetic struggle is waged against US imperialism and its stooges.

Whatever happens, the master of the south Korean revolution is the south Korean people. Only through their own decisive action can the south Korean people end the colonial rule of US imperialism, pave the way for the democratic development of south Korean society and free themselves from every kind of exploitation and subjugation.

The south Korean people who suffered under the Japanese imperialists’ colonial rule for 36 years in the past have been subjected
to colonial slavery for nearly 30 years under the colonial rule of US imperialism since it occupied south Korea in the place of Japanese imperialism. Today the lot of the south Korean people under the colonial rule of US imperialism is miserable indeed. They are not only forced to submit abjectly to the US imperialists, but are also suffering from harsh exploitation and oppression by the landlords, comprador capitalists and reactionary bureaucrats. The south Korean people are denied the smallest democratic liberties and rights, and are simply condemned to hard toil and poverty.

Where there are exploitation and oppression, there will be resistance, and where there is resistance, there will be revolutionary struggle. The south Korean people have persistently waged a revolutionary struggle against US imperialism and its stooges in the past years.

In the course of their revolutionary struggle, the south Korean people suffered many a temporary setback and underwent many ordeals. However, they have gained valuable experiences and lessons from this and have been further tempered. Today the south Korean people are putting up a valiant fight against the colonial enslavement policy of the foreign imperialists and the fascist-terror rule of their lackeys, further closing their fighting ranks even under such harsh fascist suppression by the enemy.

This struggle of the south Korean people is a patriotic struggle to save the country and the nation from the nation-splitting tactics of the internal and external divisive elements and reunify the country. It is a just struggle for the democratization of south Korean society and for the right to existence. When the south Korean people win the revolutionary struggle and a democratic government is established in south Korea, the socialist forces of the north and the democratic forces of south Korea will be able to unite and successfully achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

Our Party and all the people of the northern half of Korea are giving every possible support and encouragement to the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people. Being the same nation, we regard
it as our bounden duty to actively support and encourage the just struggle of the south Korean people.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic have until now done all that they can to check and frustrate the colonial enslavement policy of US imperialism towards Korea and the nation-splitting manoeuvres of the domestic and foreign divisive elements and achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

Thanks to our tireless and sincere efforts, a dialogue for reunification began between the north and the south a few years ago and the North-South Joint Statement was published, the keynote of which is the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity.

We put forward a new five-point policy for national reunification last year to break the deadlock and to promote national reunification under conditions in which the actions of internal and external divisive elements to obstruct the reunification of Korea and perpetuate division were becoming more blatant. The essence of the proposal is to remove military confrontation and ease tension between the north and the south, realize multilateral cooperation and interchange between the two parts, convene a Great National Congress composed of representatives of people of all levels and political parties and social organizations in the north and the south, institute a north-south Federation under the name of the Federal Republic of Koryo and enter the United Nations under that name.

Our five-point policy for national reunification is the most correct and rational one to solve the question of the country’s reunification in conformity with the will and demand of all the people of north and south Korea. Therefore, all the people of north and south Korea warmly support this policy and are working actively to bring it about. Our five-point policy for national reunification has also been warmly supported and welcomed by people all over the world.

The Korean revolution is a part of the world revolution and the struggle of our people for national reunification is a link in the whole chain of the worldwide anti-imperialist, national-liberation struggle.
Therefore, to strengthen the international revolutionary forces and cement solidarity with them is an important guarantee for driving the US imperialist aggressors out of South Korea and achieving the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. It is very important for us to strengthen solidarity with the international revolutionary forces, all the more so because we are standing face to face with US imperialism, the chieftain of world imperialism.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic pay great attention to strengthening the international revolutionary forces and cementing solidarity with them in the fight to achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

We set it forth as an enduring principle of our external activities to unite with the peoples of the socialist countries, the peoples of the third world and all the peace-loving people of the world. In particular, we are working hard to strengthen friendship and solidarity with the peoples of the third world, the newly-emerging forces, who are moving forward, holding aloft the banner of anti-imperialism and independence.

The third world represents the powerful anti-imperialist revolutionary force of the present time. Today the peoples of the third world are fighting courageously against imperialism; they play an important role in the international arena.

The peoples of the third world have enough strength to strike heavy blows at the imperialists. The third world countries have rich natural resources, including oil, and the imperialists depend on them for nearly all the raw materials they need. Under such conditions, if the third world peoples unite closely and strike hard at the imperialists and put pressure on them, they can tie them down and ruin them. This is clearly borne out by the fact that last year the Arab countries drove the Western world into a serious economic crisis by placing a concerted embargo on oil exports to the imperialists who had been assisting the Israeli aggressors, and by the events at the Special Session of the UN General Assembly on the Problem of Raw Materials and Development some time ago.

If the third world countries fight in unity, they can shatter the old
order where the imperialist powers unilaterally decided and disposed of international issues in their favour in the international arena; they can establish a new order and settle all questions in accordance with the will and interests of the peoples of the third world and the peace-loving people.

The peoples of the third world have the strength and the wisdom to shape their own future and build a new society by themselves. If they unite and cooperate, teaching and learning from each other, and accommodating one another, they can rapidly develop their economy, culture, science and technology and achieve progress and prosperity.

The imperialists, headed by the US imperialists, fear most of all the united strength of the third world peoples. Therefore, the imperialists leave no stone unturned in obstructing the unity of the third world peoples and employ the strategy of destroying the anti-imperialist forces one by one. The peoples of third world should frustrate every kind of obstructions by the imperialists in every way, and further strengthen unity. Unity is the source of the indestructible strength of the third world peoples.

The Korean people are linked with the peoples of the third world by bonds of friendship because of the identity of their positions in the past and their struggles today, and are fighting shoulder to shoulder with them for a common goal and ideal.

In the future, too, the Korean people will actively support and encourage the anti-imperialist revolutionary struggle of the peoples of Asia, Africa and Latin America and other peoples of the third world and the peoples of all countries of the world and strengthen militant solidarity with them in every way, holding aloft the revolutionary banner of the anti-imperialist struggle.

We shall decisively frustrate the plans of the internal and external divisive elements and shall definitely achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of the country by the united strength of all the people of north and south Korea with the support and encouragement of the people of the world.

National reunification will be a historic event delivering the south
Korean people from the misery of colonial slavery and opening wide vistas to lasting prosperity for our whole country and people, and will be an epoch-making event leading to the further consolidation of peace in Asia and the world.

**Question:** Peru has recently established trade relations with the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, as a step towards establishing overall diplomatic relations, and, in Peru, too, a revolution is under way.

Your Excellency Mr. President, how do you view these relations, their present and future, and the Peruvian revolution led by General Juan Velasco Alvarado, President of the Republic of Peru?

**Answer:** Although the Korean and Peruvian peoples live far away from each other, separated by an ocean, they have common aspirations and aims as peoples who were both previously subjected to imperialist and colonialist exploitation and oppression. Therefore, the peoples of our two countries understand each other well and have very friendly relations.

The relations of friendship and cooperation between our two countries have developed rapidly since General Juan Velasco Alvarado overthrew the pro-US reactionary regime and established a new government in October 1968. Since the establishment of the new government in Peru, visits and contacts between Korea and Peru have become frequent. Today our two countries support and cooperate with each other in many fields.

Trade relations were officially established between Korea and Peru last May. This marked the big progress which had been made in the development of relations between the two countries. It will also offer a valuable opportunity for developing the two countries’ relations to a higher stage in the future.

On the international scene, the Government of the Republic of Peru has expressed support and sympathy for the struggle of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Korean people for the independent, peaceful reunification of the
country. Our people are grateful for this. Taking advantage of this opportunity, I express thanks to the Government of the Republic of Peru and the Peruvian people for their support and sympathy for the revolutionary cause of our people.

We are pleased that the relations of friendship and cooperation between Korea and Peru are developing more favourably with every passing day.

In the future, the Government of our Republic will strive to expand and develop friendship and cooperation with the Republic of Peru in various fields—political, economic and cultural—still further.

We believe that friendship and cooperation between Korea and Peru will develop further in the future in conformity with the common desire and interests of the two peoples, on the principles of complete equality, independence, mutual respect, noninterference in each other’s internal affairs and mutual benefit.

You asked for my opinion of the Peruvian revolution led by President Juan Velasco Alvarado. We are deeply impressed by the progressive, democratic and revolutionary policies pursued by the Government of the Republic of Peru which are compatible with the interests of the Peruvian people.

The Government of the Republic of Peru has nationalized the oil companies and mines owned by the US imperialists, the factories, enterprises, banks, railways and ships of foreign monopolies and domestic capitalists, and is carrying out an agrarian reform to confiscate the land of the US imperialists and domestic owners of large estates and distribute it amongst the peasants. The Government of the Republic of Peru took the revolutionary step of driving out the United States “military mission”, a tool of the US imperialists’ interference in its internal affairs. It declared a 200-mile sea limit and metes out stern punishment to US imperialist pirate ships intruding into its territorial waters.

All these measures taken by the Government of the Republic of Peru are very important for opposing domination and subjugation by US imperialism, defending national independence and sovereignty and
achieving prosperity for the country.

These progressive and revolutionary measures taken by the Government of the Republic of Peru under the very nose of US imperialism, the chieftain of world reaction, are a very courageous and bold action, something which deserves to be followed by the whole world. The courageous fight of the Government of the Republic of Peru and the Peruvian people and the victorious advance of the Peruvian revolution are a great inspiration to the peoples of all countries including the peoples of the Asian, African and Latin-American countries who, under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence, are trying to build prosperous, powerful, independent and sovereign states.

We fully support the revolutionary measures taken by the Government of the Republic of Peru to put an end to the interference of the US imperialists, protect the natural resources of the country and develop the national economy, and the valiant, just struggle of the Peruvian people.

We also support the independent foreign policy of the Government of the Republic of Peru and think highly of the major role played by it in the struggle to win complete independence for the Latin-American countries and to form a united front of non-aligned states under the banner of anti-imperialism and anti-colonialism.

The Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Korean people will, as always, support and encourage the revolutionary struggle of the Peruvian people to defend the sovereignty of the country and achieve national prosperity.

**Question:** Next December 9 will mark the 150th anniversary of the Battle of Ayacucho which made Latin America independent of the Spanish Empire.

The countries liberated by Bolivar (the then leader of the liberation movement)—Peru, Ecuador, Colombia, Venezuela and Bolivia—in company with other fraternal countries of the continent, are preparing to celebrate this anniversary at a time when all the Latin-American countries are waging an
arduous struggle in various ways for their national liberation against US imperialism.

Your Excellency Mr. President, what is your opinion of this anniversary and the struggle going on in Latin America?

**Answer:** The valiant struggle waged by the Latin-American peoples against Spanish aggressors in the past is well known to our people. The courageous Latin-American peoples waged an unceasing struggle against the Spanish aggressors, with arms in hand, from the first day the Spaniards set foot in Latin America, and finally drove them from Latin America and won independence. The Battle of Ayacucho waged by the Latin-American peoples under the guidance of Bolivar on December 9, 1824, was a historic battle which put an end to the 300-year rule of the Spanish colonialists in South America. The victory in this battle showed that the Latin-American peoples were alive, not dead, and that if a people were united and rose in battle, they could defeat any aggressor.

You said that many Latin-American countries are preparing to celebrate the 150th anniversary of the victory in the Battle of Ayacucho. That is natural. It is to be commended. The Latin-American countries are going to celebrate the 150th anniversary of the victory in the Battle of Ayacucho on a grand scale particularly at a time when they are waging a courageous fight against US imperialism for national independence and sovereignty. This will be an auspicious occasion to intensify the anti-US struggle in Latin America and cement the militant solidarity of the peoples in this region.

The Korean people regard the festival of the Latin-Americans as their own. We warmly congratulate the Peruvian people and the peoples of many other Latin-American countries on their great celebration of the 150th anniversary of the victory in the Battle of Ayacucho.

The struggle for national independence and sovereignty is now developing in scope and depth in diverse forms in Latin America. Today the flag of anti-imperialism and independence is flying high.
over Latin America which was once called a “hereditary estate” and the “quiet backyard” of the US imperialists.

The Latin-American peoples are today carrying on a hard fight against US imperialism’s domination and control in defence of their political sovereignty, natural resources and sea limit. The day is gone for ever when the US imperialists could freely oppress and plunder the Latin-American peoples. An era has dawned when the Latin-American peoples are emerging as the master in Latin America.

The struggle now being waged by the Latin-American peoples under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence is a just struggle to defend national independence and dignity and national interests; it is part of the great revolutionary struggle of the third world peoples. It is also a valiant struggle to destroy the basis of US imperialism. This courageous struggle of the Latin-American peoples enjoys the full support and encouragement of progressive people the world over.

The Korean people highly esteem and resolutely support the struggle of the Latin-American peoples against the domination and interference of US imperialism in defence of their national interests and dignity and for the complete attainment of sovereignty. Our people will always remain a close comrade-in-arms of the Latin-American peoples in their struggle against the common enemy and support and encourage them in their just struggle.

We firmly believe that the Latin-American peoples, with their long tradition of struggle against foreign aggressors and marauders, will firmly unite under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence and continue their persistent fight against the domination and interference of US imperialism, in this way building a Latin America without imperialism and colonialism, a new peaceful, prosperous Latin America.

**Question:** Your Excellency Mr. President, what, in your opinion, is the creative significance of the Juche idea, the Korean revolution and your personal activities for Korea, first of all, and for all countries of the world in
general, in applying Marxism-Leninism to the realities of each country while taking revolutionary internationalism into consideration?

**Answer:** You asked me what significance the Juche idea, the Korean revolution and our activities have for Korea and for the world. I think you will get the answer when I explain the Juche idea of our Party.

The word Juche, widely known to the world today, is a term standing for the idea that the masses of the people are masters of the revolution and construction and that they are also their motive force. Revolution can neither be exported nor imported, nor can it be made by another people in one’s stead. The master of the revolution in each country is its people themselves. Therefore, the people of each country should solve all the problems arising in the course of revolution and construction by their own efforts, adopting an independent and creative attitude, the attitude of a master towards the revolution in their country.

In the course of the struggle for national liberation and independence, we realized sharply that in order to make the Korean revolution a success, the Korean people would have to adopt the attitude of master, use their own initiative and form their own judgement on all problems arising in the revolution and solve them by their own efforts in conformity with the specific conditions prevailing in their country. On the basis of the experience and lessons gained in the revolutionary struggle we put forward the Juche idea and persistently strove to embody it in all fields of the revolution and construction. It can be said that the road covered by the Korean revolution was one in which the Juche idea was embodied in all spheres of social life.

The Juche idea is the only guiding idea of our Party and the guiding compass for all the activities of the Government of our Republic. All the lines and policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic are based on the Juche idea and embody it.

Guided by the Juche idea and thoroughly embodying it in all
political, economic, military and cultural fields, our people have won a great victory in the revolution and construction. All the successes achieved by our people in these spheres strikingly demonstrate the correctness and vitality of the Juche idea.

Our Party’s Juche idea fully conforms to the fundamental principles of Marxism-Leninism and completely tallies with proletarian internationalism. The Juche idea is a revolutionary concept which leads one to carry out the revolution in one’s country on one’s own responsibility and to accomplish the world revolution successfully by carrying out the revolution in one’s country efficiently. The final victory of the world revolution is possible when the revolution in every country is successful. If we establish Juche and lead the Korean revolution correctly, thus building socialism and communism successfully in Korea, we shall discharge our national duty and, at the same time, make an immediate contribution to the world revolution.

Today the Juche idea is not only triumphing completely in Korea; it is also gaining support and sympathy amongst people all over the world. This, we think, is because the Juche idea conforms to the aspirations and desires of people everywhere, although we were the first to advance it to meet the needs of the revolution in Korea.

Today the progressive people of the world want to live in the spirit of Juche and many countries are going to follow the road of independence. Nobody wants to live in subordination to others or to tolerate the dignity of his nation being trampled underfoot. Therefore, it is quite natural that people the world over should insist on independence.

In the international arena the third world peoples, in particular, are now advancing, holding aloft the banner of independence. Even the second world countries show a desire to follow the path of independence. It is an irresistible world trend today that the people are taking the road of independence. The present age can be called an age of independence when the peoples oppressed and humiliated under the rule and yoke of great countries in the past, emerge as masters of the world and shape their destinies independently and creatively.
We believe that, as time passes, the Juche idea will receive ever greater support and acclaim from people everywhere, for it correctly expresses the need and trend of modern times. No force can dampen the desire of the people of the world for independence.

I take this opportunity of expressing thanks to the officials of the Peru-Korea Institute of Culture and Friendship for introducing and propagating the Juche idea of our Party widely and for supporting and encouraging the revolutionary cause of our people.

I wish you greater success in your future activities for developing friendship and cooperation between the Korean and Peruvian peoples.
I should like to express thanks to the American-Korean Friendship and Information Centre and the editorial board of the magazine Korea Focus for giving wide publicity to our people’s struggle to build socialism and achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of our country; and for their extensive activities in exposing the fascist dictatorship of the south Korean reactionaries and their nation-splitting policy, as well as US aggression in Korea and interference in its internal affairs.

I believe that the American-Korean Friendship and Information Centre and the editorial board of the magazine Korea Focus will continue to give active support and encouragement to the revolutionary cause of our people. Now I should like to answer your questions.

You have asked many questions, and for convenience’s sake, I should like to answer them in groups classified according to their subjects.

To begin with, I should like to talk about the question of how to describe the present period in the context of the national-liberation movement.
Today the people’s national-liberation movements of Asia, Africa and Latin America are advancing victoriously. The peoples of these continents, who have long suffered from oppression by imperialism and colonialism, have cast off the colonial yoke and risen as one in a sacred fight for their countries’ independence and national liberation. Many peoples have taken up arms and are fighting bravely. In the course of the continuous advance of the national-liberation struggle, a great number of countries have achieved national independence.

The national-liberation movements of the newly independent countries are now gaining in depth and scope, assuming new forms. Holding aloft the banner of anti-imperialism and independence, the peoples of the third world, who were condemned to exploitation and oppression in former days, have resolutely risen in struggle to safeguard their political sovereignty, protect their natural resources and territorial waters and bring about social progress. Under the impact of the courageous peoples’ struggle of the third world against imperialist domination and interference and for the liquidation of colonialist vestiges and the attainment of sovereignty in all fields—political, economic, military and cultural—imperialism is being shaken to its very foundation.

Today the imperialists hate and fear the national-liberation movements of the third world peoples most bitterly and are making every possible attempt to strangle them. In order to sway independent, anti-imperialist countries to the Right and tear them away from the anti-imperialist front, the US imperialists, while interfering in their internal affairs, have in recent years frequently engineered reactionary military coups by bribing and whipping up the reactionaries. The fascist military coup which took place in Chile last year is a striking illustration of this.

The imperialists’ attempt to block the revolutionary struggle of the people by force is foolish and absurd; it is nothing but the deathbed struggle of a doomed man. There may be temporary setbacks and vicissitudes in the course of the revolutionary struggle. But no force can check the revolutionary advance or prevent the final victory of the
revolution. This is an inexorable law of historical development.

Although the national-liberation movements in some countries are now temporarily experiencing difficulties and tribulations because of the imperialists’ intervention and plots to overthrow their governments, the general international situation is developing strongly in favour of the revolutionary peoples and to the disadvantage of the imperialists and colonialists.

In terms of the national-liberation struggle, the present era can be characterized as a historical turning point when the colonial system of imperialism is crumbling for good and the liberation struggle of the oppressed people to achieve independence and self-reliance is triumphing on a wide scale.

The days are gone forever when the imperialists dominated the world and decided the fate of the oppressed people. Today the oppressed people, who were once deprived of their national independence and sovereignty and stood on the sidelines of history, have emerged as masters of the world. The old order is gone when the great powers bargained over international problems amongst themselves and disposed of them at will. The newly-emerging force has an ever greater voice and authority to decide international problems. The processes of the recent Special Session of the United Nations General Assembly on the Problem of Raw Materials and Development and the 17th Congress of the Universal Postal Union were graphic examples of this trend of our age.

The peoples of the third world, the newly-emerging force, are now a powerful motive force in human history and a great revolutionary force fighting against imperialism. The third world peoples’ appearance on the scene of history has brought about a radical change in the international balance of power and is hastening the doom of imperialism.

We are fully convinced that the day will soon come when imperialism and colonialism will be eliminated for ever by the joint struggle of the people of the third world, and when the national-liberation movements of the peoples of Asia, Africa and Latin
America will win complete victory.

Now a few remarks on the question of our country’s reunification.

The unchanging stand of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of our Republic concerning the country’s reunification is to achieve it independently and peacefully, and on a democratic basis. Ever since the day our country was divided into north and south, we have endeavoured with perseverance to reunify Korea peacefully by the Korean people themselves without any foreign interference, and have put forward innumerable fair and realistic proposals for reunification.

After the announcement of the North-South Joint Statement on July 4, 1972, we put forward many reasonable proposals to promote the cause of reunification, in conformity with the requirements of the joint statement, the gist of which is the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity. The most typical of them is the five-point policy for national reunification—to eliminate military confrontation and ease tension between the north and the south; to bring about multilateral collaboration and interchange; to convene a Great National Congress composed of representatives of people of all walks of life, political parties and public organizations in the north and the south; to institute a north-south Federation under the name of the Federal Republic of Koryo; and to enter the UN under this name. It is our firm belief that this five-point policy is a most realistic and fair one to settle the reunification question in conformity with the will and demand of all the people in north and south Korea.

Some time ago, as another important step to create favourable conditions to eliminate tension in Korea and facilitate independent and peaceful reunification, we sent a letter from the Supreme People’s Assembly to the US Congress in which we proposed concluding a peace agreement with the United States. In the letter we suggested that the peace agreement should provide that both sides refrain from invading each other and discontinue military reinforcement and the arms race; that the United States should not interfere in the internal affairs of Korea nor obstruct its reunification, and should withdraw its
troops stationed in south Korea; and that Korea should not be made a military or operational base of any other country after the withdrawal of the US troops. If a peace agreement is signed between Korea and the United States in accordance with our proposal, tension will be removed in our country; moreover, a most favourable phase will open for the solution of Korea’s reunification problem.

Our recent proposals for national reunification have been warmly supported and welcomed by all the Korean people and the progressive people of the world. This clearly testifies to the correctness of our reunification proposals.

However, the rulers of the United States and the south Korean authorities, whom they back, reject our just proposals for reunification and attempt in every way to check our sincere efforts to bring them about.

Since the north-south dialogue for reunification started and the North-South Joint Statement was issued, the south Korean authorities have aggravated their acts of national division. Trampling on the unanimous desire of the whole nation for reunification, they published the “two Koreas” conspiracy aimed at perpetuating the country’s division as a “policy”, and are resorting to every possible trick and scheme to carry it into effect. As you know, the south Korean authorities attempted to pass a “resolution on the simultaneous entry into the United Nations of north and south Korea” through last year’s General Assembly session, but met an ignominious defeat in the eyes of the world.

Behind the screen of the north-south dialogue the south Korean authorities continue their harsh fascist repression of the south Korean people. Successively taking repressive measures such as proclaiming a “state of emergency”, “garrison decree” and an “emergency measure”, they frequently call out troops and the police to close down educational institutions and repress the righteous struggle of the students and the people; agents of the “Central Intelligence Agency” have been planted everywhere to watch every move of the people and restrict all their activities. The crooked hands of the south Korean “CIA” have stretched out even to the Koreans living in Japan and the United States. Recently,
the south Korean authorities have trumped up the so-called “case of a spy group” and “case of the National Federation of Youth and Students for Democracy” and so on, arresting innumerable young people and students and people of all walks of life at will, brutally torturing them and conducting murderous court trials to impose severe penalties.

The south Korean authorities allege that all these repressive fascist measures are necessary for the north-south dialogue and reunification. However, this is nothing but an absurd pretext. In reality, their repressive measures are aimed at giving effect to their plot to divide the nation and their unrestrained ambition to remain in power for ever.

The south Korean authorities advocate “peaceful reunification” in word, but in deed they persist in war preparations and military provocation. Under the slogan of “modernization of the National Army” they are introducing different types of up-to-date weapons and military equipment into south Korea, and are incessantly carrying out military provocation and war exercises against the northern half of Korea. This has created a situation in our country which threatens to set off another war at any time.

More specifically, the United States is encouraging the south Korean authorities in acts aimed at igniting a war. It provides them with weapons and military equipment; and it is the United States which encourages them in their hostile acts.

The United States not only eggs the south Korean authorities on to unleash war but also maintains tens of thousands of US troops in south Korea. This is a major factor aggravating tension and creating the danger of war in our country, and it remains the greatest obstacle to reunification.

The US imperialists are keeping their troops in south Korea under the name of “UN forces”. This is completely unjustified. Under the “UN Command” there are no troops of any other country but the United States which act solely on the orders of the US Army Commander. In fact, they have nothing to do with the United Nations. The “UN forces” is nothing but an ostentatious name to cover the aggressive nature of the US occupation troops in south Korea.
The phantom “UN Command” must be dissolved as soon as possible. In our opinion, the United Nations whose name has been abused, should pay serious attention to this. As a result of the positive struggle of the Government of our Republic and of many countries, the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea”, a US instrument of aggression in Korea and interference in our country’s internal affairs, was dissolved by a decision of the UN General Assembly last year. This was a great victory for us and an important step towards the solution of our reunification question. In the same way, we shall work hard to dissolve the “UN Command” and thus strip the US occupation army in south Korea of the helmet of “UN forces” and get it to withdraw.

To remove tension in Korea and facilitate peaceful reunification today, it is necessary to replace the Armistice Agreement with a peace agreement.

The Korean Armistice Agreement signed in July 1953 is, to all intents and purposes, an agreement on a military truce, and cannot be a guarantee for a lasting peace. Now, when over 20 years have passed since it was signed, this agreement is completely out of touch with the present situation in many respects. Therefore, we have more than once proposed to the south Korean authorities the conclusion of a peace agreement which will ensure a lasting peace in our country. However, they have paid no heed to our proposals. They do not want to sign a peace agreement, nor are they competent to do so because all the real power in south Korea is in the hands of the US imperialists. The whole course of the north-south dialogue clearly shows this.

That is why we deemed it right to discuss the question of concluding a peace agreement directly with the United States whose armed forces are stationed in south Korea, which holds all control of south Korea’s military affairs and is a signatory to the Korean Armistice Agreement. We thus proposed to the United States that we hold negotiations for the solution of this question.

It is more than two months since we sent the letter to the US Congress, but the US authorities have not yet replied. This means that
the US imperialists have not dropped aggressive designs on our country yet, and proves that the “peace” pronounced by them is a sham.

You asked me to evaluate the struggle of the young people, students and people of south Korea against its authorities. Their struggle is a patriotic struggle to save the country and the nation and to reunify the country.

The courageous battle which they have been waging since last October is striking a heavy blow at the divisive elements and reactionaries who are plotting the permanent division of the nation and who are suppressing the people.

The ranks of the fighting people in south Korea now comprise large numbers of people from all walks of life, including young people and students, professors, journalists and the religious community. They oppose the plans of the south Korean authorities to perpetuate national division, the imposition of fascist rule and their policy of dependence on foreign forces; they want reunification of the country and the democratization of south Korean society. Because of the fascist tyranny of the south Korean authorities, the young people, students and people of south Korea are now undergoing an ordeal in their struggle, but they will be further tempered and will attain maturity through this. Their righteous patriotic struggle will certainly win final victory.

Now I should like to refer to the factors in the great victories the DPRK has won in its foreign relations in recent years.

As you know, with the support of the socialist countries, the third world nations and progressive people throughout the world, our Republic has in recent years frustrated US imperialism’s policy of isolation and blockade against our country, and has won new diplomatic victories. In the past few years, the DPRK has established diplomatic relations with scores of countries; it has won membership of a number of international organizations such as the World Health Organization, the Inter-Parliamentary Union and the Universal Postal Union; and it has set up its mission at the United Nations. This is now an international trend: many countries recognize and establish friendly relations with our country and express support and sympathy for our
people’s revolutionary cause.

Such great diplomatic victories scored by our country are due to the growing strength of the DPRK and the rise in its international prestige. This resulted from the correctness of all the lines and policies of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic and from the major successes our people have achieved in the revolution and construction.

All the lines and policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic proceed from the Juche idea and are permeated with this idea. We shape all our lines and policies for the revolution and construction by doing our own creative thinking in conformity with the specific conditions of our country and the needs and interests of our people.

Take for example the basic line of national reunification consistently followed by the Government of our Republic. It is strictly based on the Juche idea. Our line for reunifying the country independently and peacefully on democratic principles is the only correct line to solve the question of national reunification by the masters of Korea, the Koreans themselves, in conformity with their wishes and interests. This is why all the progressive people of the world who value justice and peace, not to mention all the people in north and south Korea who love their country and their nation and are desirous of national reunification, are unanimous in supporting our line of independent and peaceful reunification.

In foreign affairs also, the Government of our Republic strictly maintains an independent and revolutionary position and pursues a straightforward foreign policy.

In our external activities, we never dance to the tune of others, nor do we act on anybody’s orders or instructions. We always solve all problems, large and small, in our foreign relations, including relations between states, from our own conviction and independent judgement, in conformity with our country’s situation and the high aspirations and desires of our people and the peoples of the world.

The Government of the Republic is striving to promote friendship and cooperation with all progressive countries, including those in Asia,
Africa and Latin America, and to strengthen militant solidarity with the revolutionary people of the world.

Our Republic extends active support and encouragement to the national-liberation struggles and the revolutionary struggles of the peoples of all countries against imperialism. In particular, the Government of our Republic makes it an iron rule to give unconditional and unreserved support and encouragement to the revolutionary cause of the peoples of the third world fighting to defend their national independence and sovereignty and to build a new society. It also consistently adheres to the line of active struggle against the policy of aggression and war followed by the US and other imperialists, and in defence of world peace and security.

These domestic and foreign policies of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic express not only our people’s wishes and longing but also the common aspirations and desires of the peoples of the world and fully conform to the contemporary trend of all countries advancing along the path of independence. That is why all these policies have the active support and sympathy of the socialist countries, the third world nations and all progressive people of the world.

Wholeheartedly supporting the correct lines and policies of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, our people in the past waged a heroic struggle in a high revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and thus converted our once backward agrarian country into a powerful socialist industrial state in a short time. At present we produce for ourselves almost all the supplies necessary for the prosperity and development of the country and the well-being of the people; our economy keeps advancing at a rapid pace, relying on our own raw materials and technology, without being affected by the economic upheavals which have swept the whole world.

Our people’s great successes in the revolution and construction in the past have enhanced the might of the DPRK beyond comparison and, accordingly, its international prestige has risen higher than ever before. This is one factor in our country’s new diplomatic victories in recent years.
Holding aloft the banner of anti-imperialism and independence, and firmly united with the socialist countries, the countries of the third world and all progressive people of the world, our people will continue to fight resolutely for the victory of the common cause of peace, democracy, national independence and socialism.

Now I should like to pass on to the question of relations between Korea and the United States.

Ever since its inception, the DPRK has always developed friendship and cooperation on the principles of equality and mutual benefit with all countries which are friendly towards our country, irrespective of their size or social system. At present our country has state relations with more than 80 countries and promotes trade with over 100 countries, many of them capitalist countries.

However, there are still no friendly relations between the DPRK and the United States. This is entirely because the US government pursues a hostile policy towards our country.

You asked me what is the prerequisite for the establishment of state relations between the DPRK and the United States. First of all, the US government should drop its hostile policy and stop aggressive acts against our country.

For nearly 30 years the United States has been occupying the southern half of our country and conducting aggressive acts against our people. Lately, it has sent high-speed, high-altitude reconnaissance planes and helicopters into our airspace to conduct espionage and hostile activities, thereby increasing tension in our country. It is introducing various kinds of the latest weapons and operational equipment on a large scale into south Korea, and has recently introduced formations of the newest-type US fighter-bombers which had formerly been stationed in Taiwan and Thailand.

The hostile and aggressive policy of the US government towards our country remains unchanged.

The US government speaks of “peace” in Korea, but in fact it is not the least interested in peace. If the United States sincerely wants peace in Korea, it should accept our peace-loving initiative to conclude a peace
agreement and drop its hostile and aggressive acts against our country.

As long as the US government persists in aggressive acts against our people without renouncing its hostile policy towards our country, the relations between the two countries cannot be improved. How can one establish good relations with a man who has broken into one’s house with a dagger in his hand? There can be friendly relations between countries and these relations can be fruitful only when they take a friendly attitude to one another on the principles of equality and mutual respect.

If the United States is to improve its relations with our country, it should also refrain from interfering in our internal affairs and stop hampering Korea’s reunification.

The United States should not impede but should help the reunification of Korea. To do so, it must first of all remove its troops from south Korea.

The continued presence of US troops in south Korea runs counter both to the Korean Armistice Agreement which provides for the withdrawal of all foreign troops from Korea, and to the North-South Joint Statement which pledges that the Korean people will reunify their country independently.

Even from South Viet Nam, where a truce was made last year, the United States has withdrawn its forces. What need is there for it to maintain its troops in south Korea until now despite the armistice which was declared more than 20 years ago in our country? It is high time the US forces left south Korea.

In the international arena including the United Nations, the United States should refrain from acts which aggravate the division of Korea, and should stop adopting an unwarranted attitude towards our country. The US government is encouraging the Japanese militarists and the south Korean reactionaries to carry out the “two Koreas” plot for the permanent division of Korea. This is a very unfriendly, hostile act against our people. The United States must discontinue this unfriendly action against our country.

In a nutshell, for state relations to be established between Korea and
the United States, it is necessary for the US government to discard its antagonistic and aggressive policy towards our country and stop impeding Korea’s reunification.

Provided these prerequisites are satisfied, we are ready to improve our relations with the United States, although Korea and the United States have differing social systems and many problems remain unsettled between them.

In conclusion, I should like to give a brief answer to your question on whether we have any suggestions to make to the progressive movement and working people of the United States.

The progressive movement and working people in the United States are waging an unyielding struggle against their reactionary ruling circles’ policy of aggression and war, and for world peace and security and their democratic liberties and rights. The American people’s anti-war struggle gives great support and stimulus to the peoples fighting against imperialist aggression, and strikes a heavy blow to the reactionary ruling circles of the United States. The Korean people highly appreciate the just struggle of the US people and express firm solidarity with it.

The progressive people of the United States are calling loudly for the withdrawal of US troops from south Korea, for peace and for an end to US imperialist aggression in Korea. This greatly encourages our people. We express our earnest thanks to the progressive people of the United States for their active support and encouragement to the Korean people who are fighting for the independent, peaceful reunification of their country.

We are convinced that the US people, in union with the Korean people and other peace-loving peoples, will also in the future wage a vigorous joint struggle against the US imperialist policy of aggression and war and for peace in Korea, the Far East and the rest of the world.

I should like to take this opportunity to wish the American-Korean Friendship and Information Centre and the editorial board of the magazine Korea Focus still greater successes in their future activities.
KOREAN ARTISTS IN JAPAN MUST DEVELOP SOCIALIST NATIONAL ART

Talk to the Members of the Korean Art Troupe in Japan, the Delegation of Korean Traders and Industrialists in Japan and the 15th Home-Visiting Group of Korean Residents in Japan

June 27, 1974

I warmly welcome you to the homeland after you have crossed the sea from an alien land.

I have seen performances of the Korean Art Troupe in Japan on several occasions on the screen, but this was the first time that I could enjoy your performance in person. You performed very well. We were greatly moved by your fine performance.

In this performance you fully demonstrated your loyalty to the homeland, and to the Party and the leader, and also your loyalty to the people and the working class. Nothing in a man’s life is more honourable and dignifying to him than to be loyal to his homeland and people, to his Party and leader. In your performance you fully displayed your boundless love for and loyalty to the homeland and the people and moved many people, even foreigners, to tears.

Indeed, your performance was one of socialist, patriotic, people-oriented and revolutionary art with a high ideological quality which represents boundless loyalty to the homeland and the people, as well as a high degree of artistic skill.

In the past, you have fought abroad to defend your democratic
national rights, and to protect the homeland and worked hard to develop socialist and patriotic art. I take great pride in having such fine ranks of overseas artists as the Korean Art Troupe in Japan and congratulate you warmly on your success.

You have also performed the revolutionary opera, Song of Mt. Kumgang, well. While in the homeland you have mastered this revolutionary opera in only one month through a speed campaign. It is wonderful, indeed. It shows that you are firmly equipped with the revolutionary idea of our Party, the Juche idea. You are revolutionary artists who are filled with the Juche idea, and talented artists who have inherited the blood of the resourceful Korean nation.

All the leading operatic singers performed well. The parts of Sun I, the mother and the composer were all well acted. Not only the acting but also the singing and dancing were excellent. Musical conduct was good and the stage setting was very fine.

On this occasion you have learned this fine revolutionary opera in the homeland before returning home. It will be a most precious gift for the 600,000 Koreans in Japan.

If you present the revolutionary opera, Song of Mt. Kumgang in Japan, it will create a great sensation. It will be a good idea for you to form a Kumgangsan Opera Troupe on your return to Japan and stage the revolutionary opera, Song of Mt. Kumgang, for a few years. This will give our compatriots in Japan a good idea of the advantages of our socialist system.

This revolutionary opera should also be shown to our fellow countrymen who are affiliated with “Mindan” (the Federation of South Korean Residents in Japan) and also to south Koreans visiting Japan. When the Koreans in Japan see the opera, they will all shed tears, recalling their sad past when they were subjected to unbearable humiliation and mistreatment as stateless people living in a foreign country. I was told that a foreign journalist in exile in another country, who saw the performance of the opera in Pyongyang, wept, because he was missing his daughter at home. The opera will be very effective in educating people in patriotism.
While in the homeland, you have greatly encouraged the workers, farmers and working intellectuals who are building socialism. You have mastered the revolutionary opera, *Song of Mt. Kumgang*, in only one month. I am very satisfied to see you going back with this success.

Korean artists in Japan have been able to develop socialist and patriotic art and display their artistic talents to the full because they have their Party and their homeland. However talented you are, you would not have been able to do what you are doing now, had it not been for the Party and the homeland.

During the former anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we produced and staged *The Flower Girl*, *The Sea of Blood* and other plays. *The Flower Girl* and *The Sea of Blood* are excellent in ideological content. In those days, however, we had no country of our own and so we were unable to present them as well as we are doing now.

Because they have their glorious motherland, the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, our compatriots in Japan are now able to enjoy and develop socialist national art fully even in a foreign land. Your performance has shown us clearly how dear the homeland is to the overseas compatriots and what a beautiful and excellent art they can create when they have their homeland.

You must regard it as the greatest honour and happiness to have a motherland and must fight to defend it.

The Koreans in Japan have an excellent troupe, the Korean Art Troupe, and socialist national art can flourish there because there is Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) which implements the lines and policies of our Party and the Government of our Republic.

When I was watching your dance, *We Will Defend the National Flag of the Republic at the Cost of Our Lives*, I was reminded of the Chongryon officials and patriotic compatriots who were fighting courageously underground to defend the National Flag of the Republic over 20 years ago when the Japanese reactionaries were pursuing a hostile policy towards our country and repressing the democratic
movement of the Koreans in Japan cruelly. Chongryon now has many activists who have fought bravely for our Party and our Republic, and in defence of the democratic, national rights of the Korean residents in Japan. Because of these hard-core elements, it has become a strong and dignified revolutionary organization capable of protecting the interests of the Koreans in Japan.

I extend warm congratulations to the Chairman of Chongryon and its core elements who, upholding the lines and policies of our Party, are working courageously to educate the 600,000 Koreans in Japan to become infinitely loyal to the Party, to the homeland and the people and to rally them closely behind our Party and the Government of our Republic.

Everything has a nucleus. A nucleus means the central part or the kernel of something. Just as everything else has a nucleus, so an organization must have a nucleus or hard core. This is essential for its formation and sound development. Therefore, we always consider it an important task to train strong hard-core elements of the Party and protect them.

Doing this is all the more important for Chongryon because it is working in very difficult and complicated circumstances.

The officials and activists of Chongryon are the hard core of the organization. Without these hard-core elements, Chongryon could not exist. Without Chongryon, it would be impossible for you to equip yourselves with the Juche idea of our Party and socialist patriotism, and produce the excellent work of art which you have performed today. Therefore, you must love our Party and the homeland and, at the same time, you must protect your organization and love its hard-core elements.

Today the Korean people are faced with the weighty and honourable task of reunifying the divided country. We have not yet driven the US imperialist aggressors out of south Korea, nor have we wiped out their lackeys. We have to continue a hard-fought struggle to get the US imperialists out and achieve national reunification.

In the struggle for national reunification, Chongryon and our
compatriots in Japan have a very important role. All the Koreans in Japan must rally more firmly behind Chongryon and fight unyieldingly to hasten the reunification of the country in accordance with our Party’s policy of independent and peaceful reunification.

Our country will assuredly be reunified by the united efforts of all the Korean people. Our people are a homogeneous nation with a history going back 5,000 years and the same language and culture. We cannot tolerate “two Koreas”: we cannot live as two divided nations. We must reunify the country during our generation.

At the instigation of the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists, the south Korean puppet clique are plotting viciously to establish “two Koreas” with a view to dividing our country for ever. But the Korean people are unanimous in their opposition to this scheme. At present the south Korean people are also fighting resolutely against it. Even men of religion in south Korea are praying for the downfall of the south Korean puppet clique, out of a desire for national reunification. Some time ago the Rodong Sinmun printed the appeal and resolution of the “Federation of Christian Missions” and the declaration and resolution of the “National Federation of Youth and Students for Democracy” in south Korea, which showed the south Korean people’s firm conviction and determination that they would never allow the division of the country and that they would reunify the country, come what may.

We fully support the south Korean people in their patriotic struggle for national reunification. If all the people in both north and south Korea fight resolutely in cooperation, they will definitely be able to reunify the country.

The south Korean puppet clique are now increasing fascist repression of the south Korean people, proclaiming “emergency martial law” in addition to “martial law” and taking one “emergency measure” after another. But this is only the last-ditch efforts of those who are on the brink of death. Where there are exploitation and oppression, there will be resistance, and where there is resistance, there will be a revolutionary struggle. It is an immutable law. The more the
south Korean puppet clique resort to fascist repression, the fiercer the south Korean people’s struggle against it will become.

When the south Korean people emerge victorious from the fight against fascism and for democracy and set up a democratic government in south Korea, the people in north and south Korea will be able to reunify the country by establishing an all-Korea unified government by their united efforts.

I wish you success in your visit to the homeland and a safe journey back to Japan and hope that you will give our fellow countrymen a proud account of our achievements in socialist construction in the homeland and that you will fight even more stoutly to hasten national reunification.
ON THE DIRECTION OF DRAFTING
A SECOND SEVEN-YEAR PLAN

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Planning Officials
July 10-11, 1974

Today I should like to give you my opinion on some subjects in connection with the drafting of a Second Seven-Year Plan.

When working out the Six-Year Plan, we formed a large group and considered and discussed it for a long time. Today we have also formed a group to prepare the Second Seven-Year Plan and are going to discuss the long-term plan. We have to begin to prepare it now so that we can make the necessary contracts with other countries as well as adequate technical preparations from next year. So we have decided to organize sections for the major branches of the national economy and to draft the Second Seven-Year Plan in one or two months.

We have already set out the major objectives and targets to be attained during the Second Seven-Year Plan. But these alone are not enough to ensure the drafting of an accurate new long-term plan. If they are to do this properly, the planning officials must clearly understand the shortcomings in the work of drafting the Six-Year Plan and the points they should pay attention to in drawing up the new Seven-Year Plan.

When drafting the Six-Year Plan, the planning officials discussed it at great length and tried hard to make accurate estimates. But in the course of implementing the Six-Year Plan we found many items which had been overlooked or miscalculated at the planning stage. That is
why today I am going to talk to you about the defects in the making of the Six-Year Plan and about measures to prevent the recurrence of such shortcomings in working out the Second Seven-Year Plan.

In order to draw up a correct long-term plan, you need, first of all, a correct understanding of the major items which are planned for the national economy in a socialist society.

In this society the major factors in economic development are first, labour; second, technology; third, raw materials; and fourth, funds. So these four factors, namely labour, technology, raw materials and funds, are the major items which should be planned for the socialist economy.

The planning officials, however, failed to calculate them accurately in drafting the Six-Year Plan.

First, the calculation of labour was inaccurate.

We had intended to ease the strain on manpower in carrying out the Six-Year Plan by eliminating the waste of labour on the one hand and by pressing ahead with the technical revolution on the other. But neither of these was implemented successfully because of the lack of a detailed estimate of the labour situation.

Labour is still being wasted in many sectors of the national economy because of its inefficient calculation.

The State Planning Commission only collects information on the birth rate and the natural growth of labour. It does not know where labour is being wasted or to what extent, where machines can replace manual labour, and how much labour can be saved so that it can be used in other sectors. In other words, it made no calculations on exploring manpower reserves and making effective use of the existing manpower.

In drafting the Six-Year Plan, they did not make a correct estimate of the amount of labour to be recruited from rural communities for other sectors by making a saving through efficient rural mechanization. If the planning officials had planned in such a way as to ensure successful implementation of the tasks of the rural technical revolution set forth by the rural theses, by quickly increasing the production of tractors and lorries from the beginning of the Six-Year
Plan, they could not only have overcome the shortage of labour in the rural communities but also saved a great deal of rural manpower for other sectors. But they did not make this point explicit in the plan. Every year they reduced the tractor production plan on the grounds of the shortage of steel. They also did not supply a large number of lorries to the country areas. As a result, they were unable to recruit labour from the rural communities, although this should have been possible.

Because of this, the coal and mining industries are now complaining about the shortage of labour and the geological survey and capital construction sectors are asking for more workers. But we are not able to meet their needs.

More than once we have stressed that efficient labour administration is more important than anything else in a socialist society. It seems, however, that this idea has not been accepted sincerely by the planning officials. If they had accepted the Party’s policy wholeheartedly, they would have investigated the sources of labour, its distribution and its use from every angle, and would then have taken positive measures to make effective use of the nation’s manpower resources. But they have wasted labour because of the inaccurate calculation of the work force: they have supplied labour to some sectors which did not need it, instead of supplying it to those which did, and they have not made economies in the sectors where this could be done.

Their estimate of manpower has been wrong, not only in making the long-term plan but also in making short-term plans: every year they distribute labour in a rule-of-thumb way, allocating it wherever labour is claimed to be in short supply. This is tantamount to filling sandbags to stop a gap in a river bank where it gives way and then another when it gives way again, instead of building it up systematically. If you work in such a careless way, you cannot manage the socialist economy as you should.

It can be said that the careless calculation of labour is a manifestation of capitalist ideas. In a capitalist society the source of labour is not regarded as important in business management and it is
almost neglected in making estimates. This is because there is a large number of unemployed workers in that society; because as much as one needs is available if one has the money to pay for it. The capitalists are only interested in getting cheap labour. At present, Japanese monopoly capitalists are looking for cheap labour all over the world and have even come to south Korea to exploit the local people.

We believe that at the moment the greatest defect in planning the national economy is the neglect of the labour force in making estimates, and this shortcoming is mainly due to the fact that the remnants of capitalist ideology and the evil aftereffects of capitalist economics have not been eradicated. If you do not calculate manpower correctly in drafting the Second Seven-Year Plan as in the past, you will again have to face the same difficulties as you did in carrying out the Six-Year Plan.

As we always say, man decides everything. He plays the decisive role in harnessing and exploiting nature. Therefore, the question of labour must be regarded as the most important factor in the development of the socialist economy and it must be given the first and foremost consideration in planning. I think that the accurate calculation of labour and its correct allocation will remain a very important question in a communist society as well as in a socialist one. If you calculate manpower carelessly as you do now and do not curb the practice of wasting labour, you will be unable to press ahead with socialist construction successfully and build communism.

Although you did not make an accurate estimate of labour in drafting the Six-Year Plan, the most important factor in planning the socialist economy, you must overcome this fault in preparing the new long-term plan. On this occasion you must examine the sources of labour and its allocation, and its use from every angle and draft the long-term plan on this basis.

If you are to make an accurate estimate of labour, you must first closely examine how labour is being wasted at present and how to introduce mechanization to eliminate this waste, so as to transfer the manpower you have saved to other sectors.
It is also essential to assess work norms correctly. The present work norms are generally very low. Because you calculate labour on the basis of old work norms which were set up when the level of mechanization was low, it is natural that you are always short of manpower. You must ensure that work norms are assessed correctly as required by the situation.

In this way you will make an accurate estimate of labour, the first factor in planning the socialist economy, in keeping with the law of the socialist economy. This is the first matter which I want to emphasize to you today.

Second, another major defect in drafting the Six-Year Plan was the inaccurate estimate of technology.

Technology is also a major factor in planning the socialist economy. Technology works for man and also plays an important role in social progress. In other words, it makes difficult work easier and eliminates the difference between agricultural and industrial work. That is why it is one of the important matters in planning the national economy to appraise the technical level correctly. In drafting the Six-Year Plan, however, the planning officials sometimes overestimated our technical forces and technical levels and sometimes underestimated them in many respects.

When I say that they overestimated them I mean that in drawing up the Six-Year Plan they exaggerated the national capacity to produce custom-built equipment. They drew up a subjective plan to produce the equipment of a cement factory locally without making an accurate estimate of the capacity of our machine industry, but it was not produced as planned. As a result, the building of the cement factory was delayed.

There are also many examples of underestimating our technology in drawing up the Six-Year Plan. For instance, it can be said that the vinalon production plan was very conservative because it was based on an underestimation of our technology. The planners considered it difficult to extend the vinalon factory and became conservative. The result was that they planned an annual production of only 30,000 tons
of vinalon during the Six-Year Plan. However, last year when only half 
the period of the Six-Year Plan had passed, the annual production of 
vinalon reached the 40,000-ton level.

In the past no effective steps have been taken to keep a record of the 
production capacity of factories and of their equipment and to make the 
most of them.

When we were visiting the Songjin Steel Plant some time ago I 
found that it had a total of 380 machine tools and that, of these, the 
maintenance and power supply shop had only 66 and the rest were 
scattered over various shops. We have inspected many factories before 
but I have never seen a factory like that which had distributed its 
machine tools throughout the shops. Machine tools can only be 
efficient and capable of producing spare parts as they should when they 
are used in proper combination of different kinds. But, as many of 
them were scattered through the shops, most of them were not being 
used or were being wasted. We discovered this by chance and the state 
planning bodies knew nothing about it.

The planning of the production of custom-built equipment over and 
above production capacity, the setting of the target of only 30,000 tons 
of vinalon during the Six-Year Plan, and the failure to keep a good 
record of the facilities which were not being used efficiently—these 
facts show that the estimate of our technical forces and technical levels 
was not correct.

The estimate of technical factors was not accurate because the 
planning officials planned in a subjective and bureaucratic manner, 
without a firm knowledge of the actual situation. We have always 
emphasized that they should make their plans by visiting the local 
units. But the officials of the State Planning Commission and other 
planning bodies have not implemented this policy of the Party’s or 
abandoned the old habit of drawing up a plan in the office. Since they 
sit at a desk, without visiting subordinate units, they cannot know the 
actual situation and, therefore, cannot estimate the technical forces 
correctly.

The failure to make an accurate estimate of the labour and technical
factors means in the final analysis that they were not good at calculating their own fighting force. The combat power of an army consists of troops and weapons. Labour in the national economy is what the troops are to an army, and the technical means, that is, production tools, are what weapons are to the army. Just as an army which has no accurate knowledge of its capabilities cannot fight well, so an economic official who cannot make a correct assessment of labour and technical means cannot be successful in economic construction.

For success in economic construction, we must calculate and recognize our technical forces and technical levels correctly. We ought not to say that we can do what is really impossible in view of our technical levels, and vice versa. I must say that the various shortcomings which were revealed in carrying out the Six-Year Plan resulted from the failure of the State Planning Commission and other planning bodies to make detailed calculations of the major factors in economic planning.

Learning a lesson from this, we must make an accurate calculation of our technical forces and technical levels, and make a correct estimate of our fighting capabilities and draft the new long-range plan on this basis. If, instead, you draw up the plan by mechanically compiling the figures on the major economic targets which have been issued, it will be useless.

One cannot fight without making an accurate calculation of one’s own combat capacity. This time we must make a correct estimate of combat power.

Third, the raw material assessment was inaccurate.

In the development of the national economy it is very important to give priority to the production of raw materials.

At present, there are many instances of production not proceeding steadily and production capacity not being used to the full because the production of raw materials is not being given priority. Although our country has not many blast furnaces, mines do not supply them with iron ore quickly, so they are unable to work at full
capacity. I was told that the furnaces have not been supplied with sufficient iron ore. As furnaces do not operate as they should, the machine factories are not supplied with adequate amounts of steel and cannot operate all their machines at capacity.

The shortage of raw materials is largely due to the fact that planning officials did not make an accurate calculation of raw materials when drawing up the Six-Year Plan.

A long time ago we stressed the need to give priority to the production of raw materials and other necessities so as to build up reserves for three months for all sectors and even for six months for some sectors. Despite this, the planning officials did not pay due attention to this requirement of the Party’s in planning.

Giving priority to the production of raw materials and coordinating the efforts of the extractive industries with those of the manufacturing industries are principles which must not be violated in planning the socialist economy. It would be even better if a surplus of raw materials was produced by giving priority to their production so that some reserves can be built up.

The slow progress of geological survey is also a major cause of the shortage of raw materials and other necessities in our national economy. At present, the mining industry is not efficient in service prospecting, so that it can provide barely one or two months’ mining reserves and, worse still, 15 days’ reserves sometimes. In these circumstances, it is impossible to develop the production of raw materials quickly.

When drawing up the new long-range plan, you must correctly estimate the priority which should be given to the mining industry.

Next, I should like to refer to the question of funds.

In planning the national economy you must calculate the money from two angles. In other words, the money available both at home and abroad must be taken into consideration.

We can say that in the past the planning officials were conservative in solving the problem of funds.

Our trade and planning workers are still attempting to rely solely on
the socialist market in foreign trade; they are paying scant attention to the third-world market. Of course, it is right in principle that we should mainly rely on the socialist market in foreign trade. However, we must not ignore the third-world market. It is one of the world markets which has come into being and is developing in our time. We must advance into the third-world market on a large scale.

When drawing up the Six-Year Plan you did not consider trade with the third world, but in future you must take a particular interest in it. If you make broad inroads into the third-world market and trade with it well, using money flexibly, you will be able to earn a great deal more foreign currency. In recent years we have directed foreign trade ourselves, with the result that this work is going fairly well. The trade workers have just begun to get rid of their inefficiency. It will suffice if they work well from now onwards.

In the past a great deal of conservatism was revealed in the use of funds at home.

Although our economic officials are well aware that at present they are unable to carry on capital construction as planned because of the lack of materials, they allocate a large sum of money for capital construction at the beginning of the year and thus leave it idle. Every year a large amount of unused money is carried forward. However, the economic officials do not think of using the money for other purposes. They retain it as though it was a reserve, and then use it to make up any deficit in carrying out a budget.

In order to manage the socialist economy well, it is necessary to mobilize all idle funds and use them efficiently. You must not lock up a large sum of money for capital construction every year as you are doing now, but circulate it through the home market. If, for instance, you use the money to make ice cream or soft drinks, and sell them, the money will grow several times over.

But our economic officials do not know how to circulate funds. They just keep them locked up, even though they cannot undertake capital construction as planned. This reminds us of a feudalistic old woman who hoards any money she gets hold of.
Currency is something which circulates. Over a long period, paper money has evolved. By nature, money is something which must circulate. It must continuously be circulated in keeping with its basic character. If it is locked up, it will be useless. Money which is not used is locked-up money, not circulating funds. If you want to accumulate wealth, you should collect gold or gold rings, not paper money.

At present our economic officials, like an old peasant, do not know how to use the money they have. As they do not know how to circulate their funds, they cannot obtain more money than they are now using. This shows that our economic officials really lack a knowledge of economics and are ignorant of the Party’s policy on the use of funds. We have already spoken a great deal on economic matters and explained in detail how to use money. But they are not making effective use of funds in accordance with the Party’s policy because they neglect their studies and do not know the Party’s policy well.

In a socialist society the circulating speed of currency must increase in step with the rapid development of the economy. This makes it possible to satisfy the growing needs of the national economy for funds.

If we had facilitated the circulation of funds on the home market, we could have improved the people’s living conditions further, while increasing the state revenues at the same time, and if we had improved the turnover of funds in foreign markets as well, we could have earned much more foreign currency. Because of their inefficiency, however, the economic officials could not use these possibilities as they should have done. This shortcoming must not recur in drawing up the new long-term plan.

As I explained earlier, when drafting the Six-Year Plan you did not make correct estimates of labour, technology, raw materials and funds, the major factors in planning the socialist economy. Now that you have been made aware of your shortcomings, you must assess these factors well in drawing up the new long-term plan.

Another serious shortcoming revealed in planning in the past is the lack of balance between different economic branches.
At present, there are many examples of imbalance between different economic sectors and particularly between production and transport.

There are even instances of heaps of coal catching fire because of the delay in transporting the mined coal, as well as cases where stacked rice has sprouted in production centres because of the shortage of transport while people in some other districts have to eat only maize. During the pollack-fishing season, the fish are piled up so high at the fishing ports that they are left to rot or have to be supplied in 50 kg, or even 100 kg lots to every household near the port, whereas in some other districts fish are not available for the inhabitants because of the shortage of transport.

Although there are large piles of timber at the Tumangang Station, it is not delivered to construction sites and pulp mills because of the shortage of transport. Because of the shortage of timber the pulp mills are not producing regularly, and this has a bad effect on the production of paper and cloth.

In the foreign trade sector, rice, although it is being stockpiled, is not being sold to foreign countries according to contract, and goods bought overseas are not being brought in, because there are no large cargo ships available.

The area of our country is not very great, so you can reach any part of it within 24 hours. It is absurd that production and construction should be held up because of the lack of transport.

The imbalance in the development of the socialist economy means that the law of planned economy has been violated. The strain on transport in our country was caused by the failure, in working out the Six-Year Plan, to balance production and transport correctly and to make an accurate estimate of the development of rail, water and motor transport.

An examination of the use of the wagons in the railway transport sector shows that their utilization and idling times are almost equal. This is not an insoluble problem. At present, the planning officials consider it an investment in railway transport just to produce wagons
but not an investment to manufacture cranes for the goods stations. This is a mistake. A long time ago we instructed that cranes should be made and supplied to goods stations so as to load and unload goods easily and quickly. But the senior officials in charge of economic affairs and planning workers have not implemented these instructions.

It is not very difficult to produce loading and unloading cranes. Even repair shops can make them easily if they are supplied with steel and welding rods. Some time ago I visited the Kim Chaek Dockyard and saw a large harbour crane which had been made by its workers, and it was not inferior to imported ones in any respect. If we had produced about 1,000 cranes every year, we could have supplied cranes to all the major stations and harbours, and thus eased the strain on transport to a considerable extent.

Balance is not guaranteed properly between the production of raw materials and the processing industry and also between power production and the processing industry. At present a serious defect is that the production of power, raw materials and other necessities is not keeping ahead of other sectors. As we have foresightedly built thermal power stations, the strain on electric power has eased considerably in recent years compared to the period of the First Seven-Year Plan or the first days of the Six-Year Plan, but the production of electricity is not keeping far ahead of the development of the national economy.

It is very important to balance accumulation and consumption. As we have done a great deal of work for the development of light industry and the improvement of the people’s living standards during the Six-Year Plan, this balance is being generally maintained. In recent years the construction of light industry has been undertaken on a large scale, with the result that conditions have been created to increase consumption quickly in step with the growth of accumulation. But we cannot yet say that the question of balance between accumulation and consumption, to which we attach such great importance, has been solved. Although great progress has been made in guaranteeing the equilibrium between accumulation and consumption during the Six-Year Plan, we must continue to try to balance accumulation and
consumption satisfactorily.

The most important problem in the planned socialist economy is to ensure balance in the development of the national economy. The planned development of the economy in a socialist society means precisely the balanced development of the economy. We cannot talk about a planned economy without balance in economic development.

The planned and balanced development of the economy is the main superiority of the socialist economy over the capitalist economy. In a capitalist society where the means of production are privately owned, there can be no balance in economic development.

The advantage of the planned socialist economy is not achieved automatically. Unless balance between economic sectors is ensured, the superiority of the planned economy cannot be demonstrated and the high speed of economic development cannot be achieved.

We have pointed out more than once the need to ensure balance in planning the national economy, but the officials concerned have not performed this task as they should have done. No matter how correct our economic theory is, it will be useless if it is not translated into practice. A theory can only be effective and valuable when it has been put into practice.

If you are going to plan the national economy on a scientific basis, you must compile accurate statistics.

At present statistics on the economy are not precise. There are no statistics on the waste of labour, and the statistics on equipment are not accurate.

Without accurate statistics, it is impossible for you to draw up a correct plan. So, in order to draft the Second Seven-Year Plan correctly on this occasion, you must first collect accurate statistical information.

For this purpose, it is necessary to take a statistical inventory and make a statistical investigation. It is particularly necessary to examine the statistics on manpower and machines and equipment carefully.

We consider that, apart from the planning group, the Administration Council should form a fact-finding group to examine the labour situation, the efficiency of machines and equipment and their use.
If the group formed by the Administration Council visits several large factories and enterprises and investigates the actual situation, the information it collects will be the basis on which to estimate machine and equipment efficiency and the labour situation in all fields of the national economy. The estimate may not be accurate, but when you have no data based on fact-finding surveys of the whole national economy, you will have to plan on the basis of your estimate.

In general, these are the shortcomings revealed in the process of drawing up and implementing the Six-Year Plan.

The Six-Year Plan was made by our planning officials, not by foreigners. The officials prepared the plan themselves and have learned the shortcomings revealed in the course of implementing it. This is as good as their having graduated from another university. Since you yourselves have erred in drafting the Six-Year Plan and since you yourselves understand them clearly, you will be able to rectify them. Taking into consideration the mistakes in drafting the Six-Year Plan, you must work out the Second Seven-Year Plan accurately.

To proceed, I should like to speak about some problems which deserve your attention in drafting the Second Seven-Year Plan.

First, you must pay particular attention to calculating labour accurately.

Your calculations show that the workforce in the state sector of the national economy will increase by some 1,300,000 people. This is because you have assumed that of the graduates from senior middle schools, only those from cities and workers’ districts will go to work as replacements in the state sector and that those from the country areas will be appointed there. From now onwards, you need not increase rural labour above its present level. Thanks to the measures adopted by the Party, a large number of young and middle-aged people have already gone to work in the country areas and a large number of tractors and other farm machines are constantly being supplied to them. So I do not think it necessary to increase the total number of working people in the rural communities, although it may be necessary
to replace some rural manpower with young and middle-aged people. If further work-hands are sent to the rural communities in the future, the same number of rural women should be transferred to other branches of the national economy. During the period of the new long-term plan you should plan to appoint senior middle school graduates in the country areas to the state sector and not to the rural areas. Then, the number of workers in the state sector will be some 500,000 higher than your present estimate.

When calculating labour, you must not only consider the new replacements but stringently investigate the manpower which is being wasted in different sectors of the national economy and also calculate the labour which can be saved through the technical revolution.

There is still a large number of workers being appointed needlessly to various sectors of the national economy and a great deal of labour is also being wasted. You must investigate this matter in detail and then adopt measures to make efficient use of them.

You must also make an appropriate plan to economize greatly on labour through the technical revolution.

You must organize labour carefully in all sectors of the national economy and forge ahead with the technical revolution, so as to raise the per-capita output. You must consider how much you can increase this during the Second Seven-Year Plan.

If you assess per-capita output accurately, the figure can serve as a target of the technical revolution and, at the same time, as a standard by which to measure the efficiency of labour administration.

Second, it is necessary for you to appraise the machine industry and its technical levels correctly.

You must first calculate the national capacity to produce custom-built equipment.

The principle of obtaining the custom-built equipment needed in the industrial sector during the new long-range plan is that the facilities which are not widely used should be imported and that what is widely used should be produced locally.

It is desirable to import the facilities which are not widely used.
From the economic point of view it is absurd to produce one or two of these facilities in our machine factories. They must, therefore, be imported from socialist market and also from third-world and capitalist markets.

In particular, we must take a great interest in the third-world market. At present, there are more than 100 developing third world countries. If these countries exchange even only ten kinds of good techniques, all of them will be able to acquire 1,000 modern techniques. We must promote technical interchange and cooperation with the third world countries so that we can teach them our techniques and also learn theirs, and thus rapidly develop our country’s technology. We did not take this problem into account when drawing up the Six-Year Plan, but in drafting the Second Seven-Year Plan we must have a proper understanding of the importance of the third-world market and take into account the subject of increasing technical interchange and cooperation with the third world countries.

In addition to making an accurate estimate of the capacity of our machine industry to produce custom-built machinery, we must accurately calculate the maximum capacity at which our machine industry can work under optimum conditions. You must not estimate the processing capacity merely on the basis of the total number of machine tools; you must examine in detail how much each of the machine factories and machines can produce if it works at maximum capacity. On this basis, you must make detailed plans to use the capabilities of our machine industry to the full.

Third, it is necessary to assess our mineral resources accurately and work out how to develop the mining industry on a priority basis.

Since we had not given priority to developing geological prospecting, we lacked the courage to plan the large-scale development of mineral resources when we were drafting the Six-Year Plan. It was not until the Six-Year Plan was well under way that we became bold enough to undertake large-scale development.

Our country abounds in mineral resources. But there is no point in simply boasting about them. They can only be called resources when
we know where they are and in what quantities. Otherwise they cannot be called resources. They can only prove their worth when they are brought to the surface and used for economic development and for the good of the people. If they remain underground, they are useless. In that condition they are nothing more than mountains or rocks.

During the new long-term plan we must strengthen the geological prospecting force to the maximum and develop the mining industry on a large scale so as to keep the production of raw materials well ahead of the processing industry.

We must first make great efforts to strengthen the geological prospecting force.

If we are to strengthen it, we must provide it with solid material and technical foundations. Prospecting equipment is not sophisticated nor is it difficult to produce. You need not regard it as something beyond your reach. You must build factories to make prospecting equipment and take the plunge and produce modern prospecting equipment locally, import special items, and provide the prospecting sector with adequate supplies of technical equipment.

Meanwhile, we must greatly increase the ranks of the geological prospectors.

We are still short of prospectors. The total number is too small, and their proportion in the composition of mining labour is also too small. During the new long-term plan we must increase the number of prospectors considerably until they account for 20 to 25 per cent of the total mining population.

If you know the distribution of the nation’s resources by giving priority to geological prospecting, you will be able to develop them boldly and increase mineral production on a large scale during the new long-term plan. If you are not certain about your mineral resources, you will not have the courage to undertake the great battle to conquer nature.

Also if you are certain of the mineral resources, you will be able to make sound investments in the development of the mines and increase the effectiveness of those investments.
It can be said that giving priority to geological prospecting is like collecting advance information on the enemy during a war. If you have the enemy situation at your fingertips through efficient reconnaissance, you will be able to formulate a correct plan of operations and destroy a large enemy force with a small force of your own. But if you attack the enemy at random, without knowing his situation, you will not succeed in battle. This is true of the mining industry. If you have a clear picture of the mineral deposits by giving priority to prospecting, you will be able to mine the mineral resources efficiently. But if you try to develop mines haphazardly without a clear knowledge of your mineral deposits, you will not succeed; you will only waste large amounts of manpower, materials and funds.

At present, there are many examples of futile excavation and of abandoning the development of mines halfway through because prospecting has not been conducted in advance. As a result, large amounts of labour, materials and funds are wasted and the state suffers heavy losses. In order to halt this practice, it is necessary to strengthen the prospecting force and keep prospecting well ahead of excavation.

Prospectors making up 20 to 25 per cent of the mining force is not a high rate by any standard. There is still a great deal of work to be done in the geological prospecting sector. We have to improve prospecting in the vicinity of the existing mines and also in new areas on a large scale. This requires a tremendous increase in the ranks of prospecting workers.

We must ensure that the Party’s policy on massive mining and massive treating is carried out for the development of the mining industry.

We must completely eradicate the speculative and petty way of exploring and exploiting only high-grade ore, the conventional method which we have used previously. If we go on mining in this manner, we may waste all the valuable resources.

We must not only mine high-grade ore but low-grade ore also and use it competently. In order to do this, we must bring about a great revolution in the mining industry, so that we can increase the mining
capacity ten or twenty times over and mine one million to two million tons of minerals from one stope which, for instance, used to produce 100,000 tons in the past.

Without applying massive mining and massive treating, the mining industry will be unable to succeed in attaining the goals of one million tons of nonferrous metal and 12 million tons of steel during the new long-term plan.

In order to produce one million tons of nonferrous metal, we have to process 50 million tons of ore, at an average rate of 2 per cent of mineral content. If we are to produce 12 million tons of steel, it is necessary to treat 50 million tons of ore. If we are to reach the goals of one million tons of nonferrous metal and 12 million tons of steel, we have to mine and treat a 100 million tons of minerals a year. This is by no means easy. In addition, for the production of 100 million tons of coal, we shall have to mine and deal with 200 million tons of debris and 100 million tons of coal. We must also mine tens of millions of tons of various nonmetallic minerals such as limestone, magnesite, apatite and silica which are used by the cement, chemical and other industries. It is literally a great campaign to conquer nature to mine and treat such a large amount of minerals.

It is only when the mining industry carries out the massive treating of ore that we can supply the industry with adequate amounts of raw materials and improve the people’s living standards rapidly. But, if it operates on a small scale as it does now, it will be unable to provide sufficient raw materials for rapidly developing industry.

If it is to adopt the method of massive mining and treating, the mining industry must use high-speed machinery and modernize its equipment and introduce transport by means of pipelines, cableways and conveyer belts on a wide scale. It is also necessary to enlarge the existing ore-dressing plants considerably, and build many new ones.

It is important to allocate forces well in order to ensure success in the great campaign to develop the mining industry on a grand scale. We must not disperse them here and there but concentrate them in the areas which are highly promising and advantageous for mass production.
In mining nonferrous minerals, we shall have to concentrate on the Komdok district and the Yangdok district including Hoechang, Mannyaon, Suan and Poptong. It is necessary to investigate carefully whether the Yangdok district has the capability of mass production.

Efforts must be concentrated on the Musan district for the production of iron ore. The officials concerned say that the vein of iron ore in Musan stretches to the Kim Chaek district. We need to study plans to develop this district.

You must not abandon small mines on the excuse of concentrating your efforts on very promising ones. While concentrating your efforts on the development of highly promising districts, you must also continue to open small mines. In this way we shall extensively develop medium and small mines as well as large modern ones so as to exploit our rich mineral resources to a greater extent.

Next, we must continue to make great efforts to strengthen the Juche character of industry during the new long-term plan.

We must thus ensure that 60 to 70 per cent of the raw materials needed by the iron and steel industry, chemical and all other industries can be produced locally.

During the next long-term plan, the ferrous metallurgical industry must achieve a change in producing iron by using our own coal.

When we visited North Hamgyong Province some time ago, we found that the local workers, scientists and technicians had succeeded in producing granulated iron using lignite and had thus opened up a bright prospect of strengthening the independence of our iron industry. This gave me the greatest satisfaction. If we replace half the amount of pig iron with granulated iron and crude steel in the manufacture of steel, it will mean solving a large problem in developing our steel industry. If this proves successful we shall be able to develop the production of steel by using granulated iron and crude steel, the Juche-oriented raw materials, without increasing the production of pig iron.

The ferrous metallurgical industry will have to develop the production of granulated iron and crude steel on a large scale in the
future. The construction of a rotary kiln for the manufacture of granulated iron or a crude steel furnace costs much less than building a blast furnace and is favourable in every respect.

For the ferrous metallurgical industry we shall have to set a target to increase the annual output of steel to five million tons by using domestic raw materials during the period of the Second Seven-Year Plan. This is a very interesting undertaking. We must make every effort to achieve this militant target of the Party.

It is also important to strengthen the Juche character in developing the chemical industry.

The question of developing the petrochemical industry in our country calls for a cautious approach. We know what a heavy blow many capitalist countries suffered during the world oil crisis last year. I do not think it necessary to import petroleum and develop the petrochemical industry which is unstable and high in pollution.

The oil crisis caused serious economic fluctuations in many countries but it had no effect on our country. This shows clearly how strong the Juche-oriented industry is. We must advance towards developing a chemical industry which is provided with anthracite and limestone which abound in our country rather than the petrochemical industry. In other words, we must follow the direction of developing an organic chemical industry on the basis of carbide. The production of carbide requires a great deal of electricity. This can be achieved by building more power stations.

If we work hard to develop the Juche-oriented industry, our country will be able to lead the world in the production of granulated iron and crude steel, in the organic chemical industry based on carbide and in some other industries.

A major task in the chemical industry during the new long-term plan is to increase the production of vinalon, vinyl chloride and synthetic rubber.

There will be no obstacle to developing vimalon production. We can say that the technical problems in this field have been completely solved. We should value and train the technicians in this field well and
increase vinalon production in a rather more enterprising manner.

It is advisable to plan to increase the annual production of chemical fibre to 200,000 tons during the new long-term plan. There is no problem in this regard except the supply of timber for the production of staple fibre.

The pressure on the timber position will continue in the future. Nevertheless, we have to plan 200,000 tons of chemical fibre during this plan period, including 100,000 tons of vinalon, 50,000 tons of staple fibre, 20,000 tons of rayon yarn and 30,000 tons of Orlon, tetoron and nylon in all. If we produce 200,000 tons of these chemical fibres in our country, our people can be splendidly dressed.

Since there are no large problems in attaining the target of chemical fertilizer, I shall not speak about it at length.

One thing I am worried about is whether or not potash fertilizer can be produced as you have suggested. This fertilizer is one of the indispensable three-element fertilizers, so we must produce it for ourselves. But the production of potash fertilizer consumes too much electricity. The production of aluminium and potash fertilizer which uses a large amount of electricity seems to need a little further consideration.

In any event, potash fertilizer factories will have to be built in our country during the Second Seven-Year Plan. But it is necessary to reconsider the need to build them in many parts of the country as you are thinking of doing.

If it is difficult to produce potash fertilizer in our country, we can export some nitrogenous fertilizer in exchange for it. At present it is not difficult to exchange nitrogenous fertilizer for potash fertilizer on the world markets. It will be better to produce some 200,000 tons of potash fertilizer at home and import 300,000 tons in exchange for nitrogenous fertilizer than to produce as many as 500,000 tons here.

Next, I should like to speak about the problem of electric power.

Since this problem will have to be discussed fully at the section meeting, today I shall talk briefly about the direction in which efforts should be made.
The direction of our main effort to solve the problem of electric power during the Second Seven-Year Plan is to build hydroelectric power stations on a large scale, rather than thermal power stations.

I am not in favour of building many thermal power stations during the long-term plan because I am not sure about the future of coal production. In these circumstances, we cannot chance building many more thermal stations.

You must examine the problem of coal production with prudence. We published the target of 100 million tons of coal as one of the ten major objectives to be achieved in socialist economic construction during the long-term plan. But it is doubtful whether we shall be able to produce 100 million tons as we do not have a clear idea of our coal resources because advance prospecting has not been done.

We can predict an output of 50 million tons of coal in the final year of the Six-Year Plan. It will be difficult to double the output during the new long-term plan. So you must calculate carefully and draw up a feasible coal production plan. It does not matter if you make it 80 million tons. You have to say that you can do what can be done; you must not draw up an unreasonable, impossible plan.

Even if we produce 100 million tons of coal during the long-term plan, it may be difficult to supply thermal power stations with coal because the other sectors of the national economy need large amounts of coal. The coal needs of the chemical industry, the metallurgical industry and other major industrial sectors, even without counting the requirement of thermal power stations, are tremendous.

The existing thermal power plants in Pyongyang and Pukchang, that is, without building new ones, will be perfectly able to overcome possible seasonal fluctuations in power production at hydroelectric power stations.

Therefore, the task of large-scale construction of thermal power stations in our country should be considered again when we are sure of the future development of our coal industry as a result of intensive geological prospecting during the new Seven-Year Plan. For the present, the power problem should be solved by building many
hydroelectric power stations. We must on no account follow other countries, which mainly build thermal power stations.

We believe that only those thermal power stations which are under contemplation for providing major cities with heating during the plan period should be built and that the rest should be discontinued. Thermal power stations for heating should be built under the plan in Nampho, Hamhung, Chongjin, Sariwon, Sinuiju, Kanggye, Haeju, Wonsan and east Pyongyang and another which burns peat in Hyesan. If thermal power stations are built in the major cities central heating and electric cooking can be introduced. This will save a great deal of coal and give the people greater comfort.

The idea of constructing a thermal power station with a capacity of 400,000 kw in the district of North Hamgyong Province should be re-examined. The experience in the management of the Pukchang Thermal Power Plant shows that it may be difficult to supply coal to this power station in the northern area.

We must build many hydroelectric power stations during the new long-term plan.

It will be a very heavy task to build just the hydroelectric power stations which you are planning. But we can say that we can build hydroelectric power stations more confidently than thermal power stations.

We have the forces capable of building hydroelectric power stations.

We have both the manpower for these projects and the experience of building them.

There is no problem of materials for their construction. In the final year of the Second Seven-Year Plan we shall be producing 20 million tons of cement. Even if we export approximately 10 million tons a year, we shall still have enough cement left for the construction of hydroelectric power stations, ports and so on. Steel poses no problem because not much steel is required in building these power stations.

A hydroelectric power station is more difficult to build and needs more capital investments than the construction of a thermal power
station. But it costs less to operate, so it is much more economical. If we build hydroelectric power stations, some area of land will be flooded. But we must produce a large amount of electricity even though this less fertile land in mountain regions has to be submerged. The decrease in the area of cultivated land because of the new hydroelectric power stations can be made up by reclaiming tidal flats in the future.

In our opinion, it seems a good idea to build more dams at many places in the rivers where power stations now exist. If a river is dammed at every neck of the valley along its course so as to use the water to generate electricity in many places, a large amount of electricity can be obtained. Supposing you produce 50,000 kw by building one dam, you will be able to create a total capacity of 200,000 kw by building four to five dams. At the rate of 20,000 kw from one station, a capacity of 140,000 to 160,000 kw can be obtained from seven to eight stations. If dams are built at every neck of a valley in this manner, they will help to prevent flood damage and facilitate water transport and benefit us in many other ways.

We must organize dam construction corps to build hydroelectric power stations. As I said in Tokchon some time ago, we shall have to build one or two large dams every year in future, so as to be able to meet the growing need for electricity.

You must explore all the power resources in every way and determine by how much the production of electricity can be increased during the new long-term plan. You estimated the annual output of electricity in the final year of the Second Seven-Year Plan at 70,000 million kwh. This seems a little difficult to achieve. You should make every effort to explore the reserves capable of increasing power output to 60,000 million kwh without building many thermal power stations.

Now, I shall talk briefly about the machine-building industry.

Heavy industry is the core of a country’s industry, and the machine industry is basic to heavy industry. We can say that the machine industry is the heart of heavy industry. Without the machine-building industry, it would be impossible to carry out the technical revolution.
The technical revolution is no less than a revolution in machinery. So if we are to press ahead with the technical revolution in all sectors of the national economy, we must first develop the machine industry on a large scale.

As I mentioned earlier, when drawing up the Six-Year Plan, planning workers overestimated the capacity of our machine industry to produce custom-built equipment. When implementing the plan they were conservative about increasing this capacity, instead of undertaking it in an enterprising manner. As a result, there are problems in the production of custom-built equipment and this is giving us a great deal of trouble. The consequence of the failure to increase this capacity in the machine industry during the Six-Year Plan is now becoming apparent.

During the Second Seven-Year Plan the machine industry must extend the centre of producing custom-built equipment boldly. The Party Central Committee must supervise this work efficiently and give it a powerful stimulus.

We believe that the Pukjung Machine Factory should be considerably extended to become a large centre for the production of custom-built equipment. There is enough space in its vicinity to extend the factory. This factory’s existing systems for the serial production of refrigerators and engines should be retained unchanged, and a new, large centre for the production of custom-built equipment should be built.

The Ragwon Machine Factory is also capable of manufacturing custom-built equipment. It can also find the space needed for an extension. At present, the serial production of excavators is being undertaken in this factory, but it should be changed to the manufacture of custom-built equipment.

It is more advantageous to enlarge factories like the Pukjung and Ragwon Machine Factories which have technical foundations and develop them as centres for the production of custom-built equipment than to increase the number of machine factories by building new factories for this purpose.
It is also advisable to enlarge the Charyongwan Mining Machinery Factory, so that it can produce custom-built equipment for the mining industry. The officials of the machine industry must not neglect the development of this factory just because it belongs to the Mining Industry Commission. This factory should be extended considerably to manufacture ore-dressing equipment, crushers, loading machines and various other large mining machinery.

At present, there are 6,000-ton and 2,000-ton power presses and horizontal forging machines in the Kangson Steel Plant. But these good machines are seldom used. It will be a good idea to build a big machine factory capable of producing custom-built equipment in the Kangson district so as to make use of these fine machines. There is a cast steel factory built by South Phyongan Province there, and the machine factory can take it over and use it as its cast steel shop. Since power presses and a cast steel shop are available, it is as good as building half a new factory. If we build a large processing shop, they will constitute an excellent machine factory capable of manufacturing a large number of custom-built machines.

A large factory of this kind will also have to be built in Sariwon or in Songnim, as you have suggested. If it is built there, the factory will have no problem of a shortage of steel with which to produce machines because it is situated near the steel works.

The Ryongsong Machine Factory is very important to our national economy. It needs enlarging but the idea of extending it seaward from its present location is not good from the point of view of national defence. At present, there is no big satellite town for Hamhung. It seems a good idea to develop Sinhung as its satellite and build a branch factory of the Ryongsong Machine Factory there.

Although the Ranam Coal Mining Machine Factory was transferred to the Mining Industry Commission, it should be given the task of producing custom-built equipment according to the unified state plan. Even if it does so, it must produce custom-built mining machines.

The Taean Electrical Machinery Plant must also be enlarged to
increase the production of custom-built electric motors and other equipment.

In this way the existing machine factories will be enlarged, so as to increase production of equipment such as coal and ore-mining machines, rolling machines and other metallurgical facilities, and those for chemical factories including oxygen and nitrogen plants and large-size compressors.

In our opinion, it seems desirable to start the work of enlarging machine factories next year, instead of doing it at the beginning of the Second Seven-Year Plan. These projects should be undertaken next year and finished by 1977. Then, these factories will prove their worth during the Second Seven-Year Plan and make a greater contribution to achieving the ten major targets of economic construction.

One important task of the machine industry is to increase the production of machine tools.

Our country is still short of machine tools, and grinders and gear cutters in particular. Even before entering the Six-Year Plan we stressed the need to build the grinder and gear cutter factories to increase the production of these machines. But this problem has not yet been solved because of our officials’ lackadaisicalness. We must increase the production of these machines so as to achieve a better balance in the variety of machine tools quickly.

In order to meet the national economy’s need for machine tools we must quickly boost their production and increase the varieties greatly during the new long-term plan.

In the first place, we must enlarge the Huichon Machine-Tool Factory so as to produce large numbers of medium and large machines. The Kusong, Mangyongdae, Chongjin and Hamhung Machine-Tool Factories must also be considerably extended. We should thus enlarge the machine-tool factories which have already laid technical foundations, so that they will increase the output of machine tools three to five times over and extend their variety greatly during the new long-term plan. A large increase in their volume and variety will enable us to improve the equipment of the machine factories and, in
particular, to develop our machine repair centres in every sector of the national economy.

We shall have to export some of the machine tools in order to cultivate our foreign markets. But the main task is to supply the machine tools needed to consolidate the repair centres in different sectors of our national economy. Large numbers of lorries and tractors are now produced every year, and this compels us to strengthen the repair centres in step with the production of these machines. The repair and power-supply shops of the local industry factories and those in other fields of the national economy must also be developed. We must strengthen the repair centres in all sectors of the national economy during the new long-term plan.

Next, I shall talk about the production of lorries, tractors, locomotive engines and wagons and about shipbuilding.

The Sungni-58 lorry now being produced is a good one. Its only defect is that it has the same bodywork as a foreign make. If this is changed a little, it will leave nothing to be desired. The lorry runs fast, turns corners easily and is very convenient for carrying loads. This lorry is used widely in city management and in transporting cereals and commodities. So we must continue to produce large quantities.

You must make a careful estimate of the scale of production during the new long-term plan.

As large numbers of the Sungni-58 have to be supplied to the rural communities, you must first determine exactly how many are needed for agriculture. You must calculate the loads to be transported in the rural communities and make this the basis on which to determine the number of lorries needed for agriculture. The number of lorries required must be determined by the total loads to be carried, and not by fixing on abstract figures.

At present, there are two million hectares of cultivated land and more than 3,000 cooperative farms in our country. This means nearly 700 hectares for each farm. If we exclude the area of orchards and assume that each cooperative farm has a grain cultivation area of 650 hectares and that per-hectare grain yield is eight tons on average, the
total grain production of a farm will be 5,200 tons. If the ratio of grain and straw is considered one to one, the loads will total 10,000 tons. In addition to this, if we consider loads such as fertilizer and slaked lime for land improvement, the total for a farm will be about 30,000 tons. If the annual capacity of a Sungni-58 is estimated at 3,000 tons, ten lorries of this type will be needed for a cooperative farm or 1.5 lorries per 100 hectares of cultivated land. Because the volume of goods to be transported by cooperative farms will continue to increase in future, 15 lorries will have to be supplied to each farm. This means that 45,000 lorries will be needed for the cooperative farms throughout the country, and approximately 50,000 for the agricultural sector including state farms.

One thing which must be brought to your attention is that you must calculate not only the number of lorries to be produced in the final year of the Seven-Year Plan but also the number to be supplied to the rural communities every year from now onwards. If, instead, you delay their delivery year after year, you will be unable to supply the planned number by the final year. In that event, the tasks set by the rural theses might not be carried out. At present, a large number of people around the world are looking forward to our early fulfilment of the theses and the publication of new ones. We must, therefore, carry out the tasks set by the rural theses as soon as possible.

Many Sungni-58 lorries must also be supplied to other sectors of the national economy and the People’s Army.

In addition to this model, the Jaju, Thujaeng, and Konsol should also continue to be produced.

The present annual production capacity of 10,000 lorries is not enough. Lorries are now required everywhere. When we were visiting local districts, a girl workteam leader and the chairwoman of the management board of a cooperative farm and the manager of a local industry factory asked for lorries. Although the steel situation is rather strained, we have to increase lorry production capacity considerably.

Your estimate of tractor production seems too high.

It seems unnecessary to produce too many tractors in our country.
The rural theses set the task of providing the rural communities with 70,000 to 80,000 15-hp tractors, but when I reconsider the matter now this figure is a little too small for the two million hectares of cultivated land. Six or seven Chollima tractors per 100 hectares of cultivated land will probably meet the need. The Phungnyon tractor is needed for improving the layout of fields in the lowlands and for walling off the sea on the tidal flats, but not very much for farm work. So it is advisable to plan six Chollima tractors and one Phungnyon tractor per 100 hectares of cultivated land.

Plans must not be made to use Chungsong and Jonjin tractors for farm work other than carrying loads instead of carts. It is difficult for these tractors to plough the large area of stony and hard fields in our country. Our firsthand experience in directing farm work in the past few years shows that these tractors are more suitable for use in place of carts than for ploughing. In future these tractors should gradually replace oxcarts.

Jonjin and Chungsong tractors should be produced in every province in line with the policy we have already set forth, instead of in only one place. Each province must build an assembly plant and assemble them on receiving supplies of engines. The engines for small tractors should be mass-produced in Sunchon and supplied to every province. The September 25 Tractor Factory should be enlarged so that it can produce small tractors for South Phyongan Province as well as the engines needed by other provinces.

We have already allocated the task of building factories which will each have the capacity to assemble 500 small tractors in Haeju and Hamhung this year. All the provinces except Jagang and Ryanggang Provinces must build such factories by their own efforts. In this way 1,000 small tractors will each be assembled annually in North Hwanghae Province, South Hwanghae Province, North Phyongan Province, Kangwon Province, North Hamgyong Province and South Hamgyong Province and 500 in Pyongyang during the new long-term plan. It is advisable for Jagang Province, too, to assemble about 500 small tractors a year if possible.
In view of the possibility that many lorries will be supplied to the rural communities in the future, it is advisable to estimate the scale of tractor production for agriculture at the rate of six Chollima and one Phungnyon per 100 hectares of cultivated land.

Chollima tractors are used only for farm work, so an annual production of 20,000 will meet the need. This means one more tractor per 100 hectares every year or five more in five years. Then, they will suffice. Phungnyon tractors are used not only in the rural communities but also in the People’s Army, the timber industry, and the mining and building industries. If we produce 10,000 a year, we shall be able to meet this need.

You must plan an annual production of 30,000 tractors, that is, 20,000 Chollima and 10,000 Phungnyon.

The estimate for the development of the shipbuilding industry seems too conservative. You are planning to build five 5,000-ton cargo ships, six 10,000-ton ships, three 20,000-ton and eight 30,000-ton ships in the final year of the Second Seven-Year Plan. The number is too small.

We have to develop the shipbuilding industry on a large scale. Today this can be called a lifeline in the development of our national economy. If we develop this industry, we shall be able to earn a large amount of foreign currency and catch a great deal of fish. Many large ships are needed for the development of deep-sea fishing and for trade with many third world countries. They are needed also for eliminating imbalance between production and transport.

In our country which is bounded by the sea on three sides, we can live well by developing the shipbuilding industry. That is why the Party put forward the policy of developing the shipbuilding industry a long time ago. But the officials in this field have not gone ahead with this work, so the shipbuilding industry is developing very slowly in terms of the Party’s requirement.

There is no great problem now in developing the shipbuilding industry in our country. We are now producing low, medium and high-speed engines.
We are even producing ships’ detectors ourselves although they are considered one of the difficult items in shipbuilding. We still cannot mass-produce things like automatic steering gear and compasses, and these can be imported. It does not cost us a great deal of foreign currency to import ships’ equipment. About 10 million pounds a year will be enough to import the equipment needed to build many ships. So it is unnecessary to draw up such a conservative shipbuilding plan.

We can build a 10,000-ton ship if we use three of the 2,500-hp medium-speed engines which we are producing. If it makes efficient use of its engine production capacity, the Pukjung Machine Factory can make sixty 2,500-hp engines a year. With these we can build twenty 10,000-ton ships.

We should take the plunge and plan to build about twenty 10,000-ton ships every year. Twenty ships of this kind a year means 140 ships in seven years. We should have at least 100 cargo ships of 10,000 tons.

It seems that building 5,000-ton cargo ships will not be of great significance. It is better to build 10,000-ton ships than 5,000-ton ships. The building of the smaller ships does not necessarily require that much less steel than the larger ones. Therefore, if we are determined to build cargo ships we must build 10,000-ton ships rather than 5,000-ton ships.

For transport within the country 3,000-ton, 2,000-ton and 1,500-ton ships should be built. These ships will be suitable for use not only at home but also for trade with neighbouring countries like Japan. Locally-made engines are quite suitable for 1,500-ton and 2,000-ton ships. These ships can load and unload a lot of cargo quickly, so their turnaround is short. Approximately 100 cargo ships are needed for transport within the country. You have made no plans to build 1,500-ton and 2,000-ton ships for this purpose during the new long-term plan. You must include them.

It is advisable to build many specialized ships for the transport of such items as timber, oil, cement, coal and so on.

10,000-ton and 20,000-ton ships are suitable as factory ships for
deep-sea fishing. These large ships are good for this purpose. The fishing industry needs approximately fifty 10,000-ton factory ships and transports. Five thousand-ton refrigerator transports are not bad. It also needs about two hundred 3,750-ton stern trawlers to catch fish. We shall have to build 30 stern trawlers of this type every year during the new long-term plan.

If we are to build a total of one hundred and fifty 10,000-ton cargo ships, factory ships and refrigerator transports during the new long-term plan, we shall have to work very hard.

At present, the Chongjin, Wonsan and Sinpho Shipyards on the east coast are capable of building large vessels and the Kim Chaek Dockyard can also do so if it is better equipped.

In the future we must greatly enlarge the Chongjin, Sinpho and Wonsan Shipyards. In the past, no investment has been made in the shipbuilding industry and nothing has been done to develop shipyards. The industry has only been urged to build many ships. So it is natural that ships have not been built. We must make a large investment in the shipbuilding industry and modernize the equipment of our shipyards.

It is advisable to specialize in shipbuilding by giving the Chongjin and Wonsan Shipyards the task of building 10,000-ton and larger ships, the Kim Chaek Dockyard the task of building ships for local transport and the Sinpho Shipyard the task of building 3,750-ton stern trawlers.

On the west coast a big shipyard must be built in Haeju. The existing dockyard there must be used as the parent body of a new shipyard capable of building 10,000-ton ships. A big heavy industry establishment in Haeju will also facilitate the planning of the city. If shipbuilding plant is available on foreign markets, we must import it as soon as possible and build a modern shipyard in Nampho.

The Sinuiju Dockyard must build 1,500-ton cargo boats for transport within the country. You must reconsider whether or not the Ryongampho Shipyard can build slightly larger ships. It would be good if it could build 10,000-ton ships but I am afraid it will be difficult to do so because the waters near Ryongampho are too shallow.
You have to study the possibility of building 10,000-ton ships there by
dredging the neighbouring waters.

In order to build a large number of ships, we must carry out a great
technical revolution in the shipbuilding industry by mobilizing the
whole country just as we did when we were re-equipping the
Kum Song Tractor Plant with new technical equipment a few years
ago.

During the new long-term plan the machine industry should
concentrate on strengthening the bases of the shipbuilding industry and
on those for the production of custom-built equipment and focus all its
efforts on them. We shall have to work hard to build one hundred and
fifty 10,000-ton ships in eight years from 1975.

Cement and timber production should be planned just as you have
suggested.

I should like to mention light industry.

The textile industry must increase its spinning capacity to 1.5 to 1.6
million spindles during the Second Seven-Year Plan. You have
planned an increase to 1.68 million spindles. That will do.

Our light-industry centre has been strengthened during the
Six-Year Plan. If we obtain further 200,000 spindles, we shall have a
capacity of one million spindles. So it is not very difficult to increase
this to 1.6 million spindles during the new long-term plan. We have
only to increase it by 100,000 spindles every year, and this poses no
problem. It seems better to import the necessary spinning equipment
than to make it in our country. It is advisable to import approximately
100,000 spindles every year rather than to build new factories to
manufacture the spinning equipment.

The proposed idea of innovating food production needs further
examination.

You have estimated the production of seafood during the new
long-term plan at 6.1 million tons, including 5.3 million tons of fish.
This seems too high.

If we catch 3 to 3.5 million tons of fish in our country, we shall be
able to live decently. Three million tons of fish means a daily supply of
600 grammes per head. This is a very high standard. In fact, it is not necessary to catch more than three million tons of fish if we are to supply them as a non-staple food for the people. But we have to produce a large amount of fishmeal in order to develop livestock and poultry farming. So it is advisable to plan to catch 3.5 to 4 million tons of fish.

Instead of lowering the fish production target, we should plan the production of one to 1.5 million tons of seaweed and similar items. In the future it is necessary to develop aquaculture on a large scale. If we do this well, we shall be able to produce more than 1.5 million tons of seafood. It is better to obtain plants with a high iodine content from the sea than to get vegetables from the fields.

I shall not speak about agriculture at length because I have mentioned it on several occasions and because you are well aware of it.

Now that a large number of machines have been supplied to the rural communities I think it necessary to make a study of the character of cooperative farms. I am thinking of conducting a campaign to increase agricultural production for just one more year next year, and then seriously examining the problems of manpowers, ownership and management of the cooperative farms.

With regard to agriculture you must consider and assess how to carry out the task of strengthening the material and technical foundations of the cooperative farms in the coming four years, that is, by the end of 1978, the task set by the rural theses, except the task of converting cooperative ownership to all-people ownership. This is the tenth year since the publication of the rural theses. The task of strengthening the material and technical foundations of the cooperative farms must be completed so that the achievement can be announced in the 15th year after the publication of the theses.

It is possible to produce 10 million tons of grain in our country during the new long-term plan.

The important thing in this work is to provide the area for grain cultivation without fail, i.e., 600,000 hectares for maize, 650,000 hectares for rice, 100,000 hectares for potatoes and sweet potatoes and
50,000 hectares for wheat.

If these crop areas are ensured, the grain production target can be achieved. If we produce eight tons of maize per hectare, we shall produce 4.8 million tons from these 600,000 hectares, and if we produce seven tons of rice per hectare, we shall produce 4.55 million tons of rice from those 650,000 hectares. This means a total of 9.35 million tons of rice and maize. Supposing that one hectare of wheat field produces four tons, we shall produce 200,000 tons of wheat from these 50,000 hectares. If one hectare of potato and sweet potato fields produces 30 tons, the total output from the 100,000 hectares will be three million tons of potatoes or 750,000 tons of grain in the ratio of four to one between potatoes and cereals. About 100,000 to 200,000 tons of beans and other dry-field crops can also be produced.

In the final analysis, providing the area of grain cultivation is decisive in producing 10 million tons of grain. On no account should the 600,000 hectares of maize fields, 650,000 hectares of rice fields, 100,000 hectares of potato and sweet potato fields and 50,000 hectares of wheat fields be used for any other purposes. If farmland is to be used for industrial construction, the loss must be made up by reclaiming tidal flats or by some other means. In preparing state plans we must establish the strict principle of permitting the use of farmland for industrial construction only when a corresponding area of new farmland has been provided.

In addition, we must undertake large-scale soil improvement and land conservation. We must take steps to prevent damage from frost and moisture and must remove ridges between paddy and non-paddy fields as well as piles of stones. At present, the ridges between these fields amount to 15 per cent of the total area of farmland, and the assessment of the estimated crop yields is made by sampling part of the farmland without taking into account the area occupied by the ridges. So the real harvest in the autumn is lower than the estimate. In future the agricultural sector must direct great efforts to soil improvement and land conservation. You must plan exactly how much wet land should be improved every year and how much land
should be obtained by removing ridges.

You must also take measures to improve seeds and obtain micronutrients.

The reclamation of 100,000 hectares of tidal flats should be considered for the new long-term plan.

According to recent technical information, in a certain country reclaimed tideland is first used for breeding fish and then for the cultivation of rice when the salt has been removed. We also need to do this to a certain extent. Part of the tidal flats which are reclaimed every year can be used for breeding mullet and eels and then for cultivating rice when the salt has been removed. It seems a good idea to undertake this scheme and continue with it every year.

The mechanization and use of chemicals in agriculture should continue to be planned in the direction which has already been shown.

Our livestock and poultry farming are backward. We must take firm steps to improve them.

In future, too, we must continue to direct most of our efforts to the development of poultry farming. It seems preferable to encourage individual rural families to raise pigs rather than to raise them collectively. It is difficult to raise large numbers of cattle in our country. Even though we want to graze them on the mountains, there is little pasture.

Silkworm raising must be further developed in the future. There is a large area of fields on steep slopes in our country. It is better to plant them with mulberry trees and develop silkworm raising everywhere. It does not matter if the soil of mulberry fields is not very good. All the fields on steep slopes should be converted to mulberry fields by terracing them where necessary. It is not difficult but cheerful and interesting to pick mulberry leaves and raise silkworms, and women in our country have been used to this work for very many years. The women living in workers’ districts should be encouraged to raise silkworms widely. When the mechanization of agriculture and the greater use of chemicals are completed in the future, a great deal of rural labour will be saved and farmers will not have to do
labour-consuming work. Then, rural women will be able to raise more silkworms. You must consider this in planning the development of silkworm raising for the long term.

A question that deserves particular attention in drawing up the new long–term plan is the task of developing transport so as to ease the strain on this sector.

Railways have always been the key to transport. Of course, we should pay proper attention to developing motor transport and organize long-distance motor transport on a large scale. But the development of motor transport alone cannot meet the growing need for transport. It can only play an auxiliary role in easing the strain on transport.

In order to remove this strain once and for all, we must develop railway transport further.

You should consider the construction of new railways during the new long-term plan. You should plan the construction of new railways along the western coast and all over South Hwanghae Province and the rest of the country so as to increase the density of the railway network. In which specific areas they should be built must be discussed again at some time in the future.

In addition to building new railways, the railway operations will have to be improved.

Our officials are using trains as they use lorries. They must not do this. The smaller their country is, the more carefully they must organize the operation of the railways. At present, each goods train stops at every station and leaves a wagon there, so it has to stop too frequently, and its speed is very slow. The method of railway operation must be improved radically as discussed by the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee a few days ago.

Supposing that lignite is being carried from North Hamgyong Province to South Hwanghae Province, for instance, then you must organize a goods train which is loaded with lignite and send it straight to Haeju or Sinchon without stopping. And if timber is transported from North Hamgyong Province to South Hamgyong Province, you must organize a timber train and let it stop and unload at some major
stations such as Tanchon, Sinpho, Hamhung and Kowon instead of stopping at every station.

If goods trains are to be operated in this way, specialized goods stations will have to be designated. A few goods stations specializing in the unloading of timber, coal, ore and so on should be designated for every province. These stations must be provided with adequate storing facilities and cranes.

Lorries should be used to carry goods from goods stations to factories and enterprises. Large lorry stations should be organized for efficient cooperation with railway transport. You must calculate the number of lorries needed for this.

Light industrial goods can be unloaded at every station by organizing passenger trains to each of which are coupled some goods wagons. In the future these goods should be carried by lorry if possible.

But some bulk loads such as coal, ore, timber, oil, fertilizer, cement, steel and grain should mainly be transported by rail, and this should be combined with motor transport.

Industrial spurs should be provided for industrial complexes and large factories so that goods can be transported to them directly by train.

If the railways are operated in this way, a great deal of the wagons’ idle time can be eliminated and wagons can be used much more efficiently. Then, the officials of factories and enterprises will not have to run about everywhere to obtain goods wagons.

Foreign trade and foreign currency are very important. These questions must be discussed in greater detail by sectional meetings and also dealt with extensively by the general section.

I should like to give you my opinion on some points so that you can refer to it as a guide in your discussions.

So far we have traded mainly with socialist countries, but in future we shall have to deal also with the third world and capitalist countries. The socialist market is too small. If we depend on this market alone, we shall be unable to solve the problem of foreign currency needed for economic development satisfactorily. We must get into the third world
and capitalist markets in every way in order to earn the large amount of foreign currency we need.

We must nominate the factories to produce export goods and take positive steps to increase their production, so as to export a larger amount of goods to foreign countries.

Internal commerce as well as foreign trade should be developed in every possible way.

We must produce and sell many kinds of light industrial goods including large quantities of daily necessities and food and, in particular, increase the service network greatly so as to recover internal investments in greater quantity and faster.

In conclusion, I should like to refer briefly to the question of unified and detailed planning.

We must also adhere to the principle of unified and detailed planning in drawing up the Second Seven-Year Plan. But you must not restrain the creativity of local people under the pretext of unified planning. You must encourage their creativity in every way. At present, you control them to such an extent that they cannot even build a noodle shop on their own. It is unnecessary to do this. They must be free to build whatever they please, noodle houses or meat-soup restaurants. They must be encouraged to display creativity in developing the production of daily necessities and food and in extending the service network. This is the way to improve the people’s living standards more rapidly.

Our planning workers seem to be too narrow in their ideas about the system of unified planning. It is by no means contradictory to this system to encourage local people to creativity. If you let the local planning bodies draw up their plans after showing them the direction of planning, and then, integrate these local plans in the uniform state plan, this also means unified planning.

In addition, you must implement the principle of detailed planning correctly, instead of drawing up a crude long-term plan. In order to do this, you must know all the productive reserves and potentialities. It is only then that you can integrate every detail.
On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, I warmly welcome your visit to our country.

At the same time, I express my thanks to Comrade Secretary General of the French Communist Party who has sent you on this visit. Your visit to our country will contribute greatly to the strengthening of friendship and unity not only between the young people of Korea and France but also between our two Parties. I should like you to visit our country frequently.

We are grateful to the French people for their active support which has been given, under the leadership of the French Communist Party, to the Korean people in their struggle to reunify their country.

When the US imperialists unleashed the war of aggression against our country, the French Communist Party, the French Communist Youth organization and the French people gave unqualified support to the struggle of the Korean people against the aggressors. The French communists and all the French people conducted a mass anti-US campaign under the slogan “US imperialists, hands off Korea!” and this encouraged our people very much. Since the end of the war, they have also strongly supported the Korean people’s struggle for national reunification.

For this, I express my thanks to the Central Committee of the French Communist Party, to the French Communist Youth
organization and to the French people, on behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and all the Korean people.

We are well aware that you actively support and encourage the struggles of the Vietnamese, Cambodian and Laotian peoples as well as the struggle of the Korean people. Your support and encouragement to the people who are fighting for the country’s freedom and liberation is a fine example of proletarian internationalism.

You are not only supporting and encouraging our people’s revolutionary struggle in every way, but also giving effective assistance to the work of our trade mission to France.

The Paris Committee of the French Communist Party and the French Communist Youth organization gave every assistance to the work of our Mansudae Art Troupe when it visited France the year before last. Although this troupe was visiting a capitalist country like France for the first time, it carried out its mission successfully thanks to your help. On return, our comrades made a very impressive report to the Party about your kind assistance to the troupe.

Because the French Communist Party has a strong mass foundation we thought that it would be a good idea to send the troupe to France first to let it harden itself before visiting other capitalist countries. Many of our young people have no idea of what a capitalist society is like. They have not seen capitalists, nor do they have a clear understanding of a capitalist society. So we organized the troupe’s visit to France so that they would be able to acquire some experience of the capitalist society and train themselves.

Until then the young people of the Mansudae Art Troupe had only had some book knowledge of capitalist society. They obtained a clear picture of it for the first time on their visit to Paris. On their return from Paris they said that money was everything in that society. So we said that they had learned something useful.

During their visit to France these youngsters not only received firsthand experience of a capitalist society but also hardened themselves a great deal in the course of this. Before this visit they had not known how to deal with capitalists, but now they are good at
working in capitalist countries.

On the basis of its training experience in France our Mansudae Art Troupe has performed its mission successfully in Italy, Britain, Japan and other capitalist countries.

I shall not talk about the situation in our country at length because the Chairman of the Central Committee of the League of Socialist Working Youth of Korea has already told you about it.

In brief, socialist construction is going ahead smoothly in our country.

For the victory of our revolutionary cause, we set out three objectives of struggle and are working hard to carry them out. They are: first, to consolidate our country’s revolutionary base further by building socialism successfully in the northern half of Korea; second, to increase the revolutionary forces in south Korea quickly by helping the south Korean people and patriots in their struggle for social democracy in south Korea and for the country’s reunification; and third, to strengthen solidarity with the working class, peace-loving people, Communist Parties, revolutionary forces of other countries and with all the anti-imperialist revolutionary forces of the world.

The first and most important revolutionary task facing us now is to consolidate our revolutionary base still more firmly by building socialism well in the northern half of Korea.

In giving leadership to the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction our policy is to maintain independence in politics, build an independent national economy in the economic sector and ensure self-reliance in national defence.

The facts show that this policy is absolutely correct. Many countries have recently been experiencing serious economic fluctuations and crises due to the oil crisis, but our economy continues to develop at a high rate, free from their influence. This is because we have built a solid, independent national economy according to our Juche-oriented policy.

Our people are now working hard to carry out the Six-Year Plan for socialist construction.
In order to build socialism successfully in the northern half of Korea, we are stepping up the three revolutions—the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions. At present all these tasks are being carried out successfully.

The fundamental task of the ideological revolution is to revolutionize and working-classize all the working people by re-educating them.

Under the leadership of our Party, all our social organizations such as the League of Socialist Working Youth, the trade unions, the Union of Agricultural Working People and the Women’s Union are working hard to this end.

Man transforms nature and society. In other words, both the revolutionary struggle and socialist construction are undertaken by man. That is why we must educate the masses well and set them in motion through efficient work with people. This is the way in which we can succeed in the revolutionary struggle and construction work.

We consider that if we are to build communism we must carry out the ideological revolution and capture the ideological fortress without fail. It will be impossible to build communism only by capturing the material fortress. Nor will it be enough to capture the ideological fortress alone. If we are to build communism we must capture both the material and ideological fortresses.

Our Party attaches the greatest importance to the work with people and directs its main efforts towards this.

We work efficiently with cadres, workers, farmers, intellectuals and women, and so encourage all of them to participate in the revolutionary struggle and the work of socialist construction with enthusiasm.

In particular, we are intensifying ideological education including communist education and ideological struggle amongst the working people so that they work willingly, take good care of communal property and work and live on the collectivist principle, “One for all and all for one”.

Intensifying organizational life is very important in people’s revolutionary education. We educate the working people and conduct
the ideological struggle amongst them through activities in different organizations and reform them in a communist way by means of education and struggle. At present nobody in our country is exempted from organizational life. Everyone belongs to an organization and takes part in its activities.

Our Party has made great efforts for the ideological education of the working people, regarding it as the most important task. As a result, all the masses have been organized and all the people are rallied firmly around the Party Central Committee.

The main effort in our technical revolution at present is being directed to carrying out the three major tasks which were put forward at the Fifth Congress of the Party.

The first major task of the technical revolution is to narrow the difference between heavy and light labour considerably.

We are not yet in a position to eliminate this difference completely. It will probably take a long time to do so.

In order to eliminate backbreaking labour in the industrial sector gradually, we are introducing mechanization, semi-automation and full automation widely. Work in the extractive industries is more laborious than in other sectors. So we are making strenuous efforts to make work in these fields easier.

The next important task in this revolution is to reduce the differences between agricultural and industrial labour to a great extent.

We are working hard to farm by industrial methods at the same time as working-classizing the peasants. Agricultural work in our country is still labour-consuming.

We have set out the four tasks of the rural technical revolution in the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country. These are irrigation, electrification, mechanization and an extensive use of chemicals. We have already completed irrigation and electrification and are now pressing ahead with mechanization and the use of chemicals. The mechanization of agriculture is now progressing rapidly.

Rice-transplanting is the hardest of all our farming operations. Last
year we started to use machines to do this work. This year we have done it by mechanical means on nearly 50 per cent of the paddy fields. According to agricultural workers, the results of mechanized rice-transplanting this year are very good.

We have worked hard to mechanize this operation. We imported rice-transplanters from Italy, Japan and other countries, but none of them suited our conditions. So our technicians worked hard to make a machine which suited our conditions, and they finally succeeded in doing so last year.

If we work well and fulfil the tasks of the Six-Year Plan assigned to agriculture and undertake another Six-Year Plan, I think we shall be able to carry out the tasks of the rural technical revolution.

Another important task of this revolution is to free women from the heavy burden of household chores.

Since women make up half our population, it is very important to encourage many of them to go into the work and take an active part in the revolution and construction. If women coo up at home, they cannot be revolutionized. If they take jobs, we shall be able to revolutionize them and carry out the ideological and cultural revolutions successfully.

In order to free women from the heavy burden of household chores and encourage them to go to work in many fields, we must build a large number of nurseries and kindergartens, increase the number of laundries and other communal amenities and develop the food-processing industry on a large scale.

We have done a great deal for the benefit of women. In every part of our country children are provided with nurseries and kindergartens. The number of children who are now growing up in nurseries and kindergartens amounts to 3,500,000. This is a very large figure. Our country has the largest number of nursery and kindergarten children among the socialist countries, in proportion to the total population.

The policy of providing the country areas with running water for the benefit of women is being carried out successfully. Extensive construction of waterworks in the farming villages has saved our rural
women the trouble of carrying water jars on their heads, a task which has been a heavy burden to them from olden times. In the past, our rural women had to carry water from the well in the evening to prepare supper, after the day’s work in the fields. However, they have now been freed from this burden thanks to the provision of a water supply service for the country areas, and they are very happy about it. When we were visiting a cooperative farm once, an old woman who was moved to tears told us that in the age of the Workers’ Party she was freed from the burden of carrying a water jar on her head, a burden which she had had to bear for scores of years.

In addition to this, we have set out many other tasks to benefit women and they are all being carried out successfully.

The cultural revolution is also going ahead favourably in our country.

Our cultural revolution differs from that in other countries. An important task of our cultural revolution is to raise the intellectual level of all the working people as soon as possible through intensive study.

Under the slogan “The Party, the people and the army must all study!”, everyone in our country is now studying. Through study, we refashion the people’s thinking and also carry out the task of the cultural revolution.

Our country has a very large number of pupils and students. The number of pupils and students who are now studying at different levels from primary school to university amounts to 4,600,000. Of these, the number of students attending universities, colleges and higher technical schools alone is 240,000. We are bringing up nursery and kindergarten children and giving education to all pupils and students at different levels at state expense.

Those who had no access to education in the past are attending working people’s middle schools. Most of them are elderly.

We are trying to raise the general knowledge level of all the working people to at least that of senior middle-school graduates.

For the success of the technical revolution, we emphasize the importance of intensifying technological study amongst the working
people and have also established a number of factory colleges where people can learn while working and various other kinds of institutes of learning.

An important task of the cultural revolution is to fight against the cultural infiltration of imperialism. We are developing our national culture and art thoroughly on the basis of socialist realism so as to prevent the penetration of the ideological venom of capitalism into the field of culture and art.

We have achieved great success in this field. Today our culture and art are flourishing and developing on a very sound basis and have reached a level which is incomparably higher than that of capitalist culture and art. That is why the ideological venom of capitalism cannot infiltrate our culture and art.

The prospects for our socialist construction are very good. All the tasks of the current Six-Year Plan, with the exception of a few important goals, will be completed by the end of next year. The remainder will be achieved by 1976.

At present our working people are accelerating the speed campaign for great socialist construction and spurring on the galloping Chollima.

We are now drafting a new long-term plan. In the period of the new plan we are going to achieve the ten long-term objectives of economic construction put forward by our Party. They are magnificent ones.

We intend to achieve the ten long-term objectives of economic construction and thus give full play to the superiority of the socialist system of the northern half of Korea, so that it will stand out in sharp contrast to the corrupt social system of south Korea. Needless to say, even now our socialist system is immeasurably superior to the social system of south Korea. Without being content with this, however, we intend to accelerate socialist construction, and demonstrate the advantages of our socialist system more clearly so as to deter the US imperialists, Japanese militarists and south Korean reactionaries from encroaching upon our system.

When our country has achieved the ten long-term objectives of economic construction, it will rank amongst the developed countries.
Now I shall talk briefly about the situation in south Korea.

The south Korean authorities have recently fascistized south Korean society to the extreme and are intensifying the fascist repression of the people in south Korea more than ever before. This year they have arrested over 2,800 people of all social levels including patriotic young people and students during the three months or so since April. They are now trying the victims in murderous courts of justice almost every day and punishing them severely.

The fascist repression on the part of the south Korean reactionaries is evoking unanimous protest and denunciation from progressive people throughout the world. Public opinion, including the progressive press of the world trenchantly condemns the south Korean reactionaries for their cruel suppression of the patriots. The voices denouncing the fascist policy of the south Korean reactionaries are being raised in West Germany and other European capitalist countries, Japan, and even in the United States.

We cannot continue the dialogue with the south Korean authorities because they are making south Korean society more fascist and resorting to vicious anti-communist moves, going back on the three principles of national reunification stipulated in the North-South Joint Statement. The three principles of national reunification which we put forward advocate that our divided country should be reunified independently, peacefully and through great national unity. This means that the country must be reunified through dialogue between the north and south, on condition that the south Korean authorities refrain from selling the country and nation to the imperialists and discontinue their anti-communist acts. The south Korean authorities are, however, cruelly arresting, imprisoning and massacring right and left the communists and patriotic people of different sections who advocate the reunification of the country and social democracy. In this situation, how can we negotiate with them?

Because the south Korean authorities are scheming to make “two Koreas” in conspiracy with outside forces and are hampering the independent and peaceful reunification of the country in disregard of
the three principles of national reunification which they agreed with us, we insist on holding a political consultative conference in which the representatives of the political parties and social organizations and public figures of all social sections from the north and south will participate.

At present the south Korean people are fighting valiantly without yielding to the harsh fascist suppression by the reactionaries.

The immediate task facing the south Korean people today is to frustrate fascist suppression by the reactionaries and to bring about democracy in south Korean society. At the same time, they must fight staunchly to drive the US imperialist aggressors out of south Korea and to smash the Japanese militarists’ re-invasion plot.

We believe that progressive people around the world who love justice and value truth will render full support for the just struggle of the south Korean people.

Next, I shall briefly mention the question of our solidarity with the international revolutionary forces.

Because half of our territory is occupied by the US imperialists, the ringleader of world imperialism, and because we are in confrontation with them, we consider it very important for us to strengthen solidarity with the international revolutionary forces and win support and sympathy from the people of the world.

Our Party is paying close attention to strengthening solidarity with all the forces fighting for socialism, with the revolutionary forces of the third world which are struggling for national liberation and independence, with the peace-loving forces of the world advocating peace and security and with all the anti-imperialist forces.

We are endeavouring to unite with any anti-imperialist forces, whether they are active or passive in the anti-imperialist struggle. Our Party insists on the unity of the anti-imperialist revolutionary forces and is opposed to their division.

Our Party particularly objects to the split in the international communist movement. This movement is the main force in the struggle against imperialism. Our Party, therefore, does not approve of division
within it. We consider that, if the party of every country maintains the principled position of Marxism-Leninism, it will be possible to prevent division within the international communist movement and achieve its unity and cohesion.

If we are to achieve the unity and cohesion of the international communist movement, we must observe a number of principles. Our Party insists that all the socialist countries must unite on the basis of, firstly, opposing imperialism; secondly, supporting the national-liberation movement in colonies and the international working-class movement; thirdly, continuing to advance towards socialism and communism; and fourthly, observing the principles of noninterference in each other’s internal affairs, mutual respect, equality and mutual benefit. We consider it particularly important for each country’s party to maintain independence and to respect other parties’ independence.

Ours is an age of independence. When Lenin organized the Third International, we were all young pupils of communism and learners. However, it is nearly 60 years since Lenin carried out the socialist revolution. During this period, all the young pupils of communism have grown up. They have undergone many vicissitudes and gained rich experience in the revolution and construction. They have experienced both victory and failure in the revolutionary struggle. Unlike in their youth, they can now distinguish between what is bitter and sweet, and between what is hot and cold on their own without being told by others. Even if they are not guided by others, they can now walk by themselves and know which is the right way they should follow. That is why today every party must act independently. Of course, they may make mistakes in the course of this. However, they themselves can rectify the error which they have committed while standing on their own feet. But they cannot rectify those errors which they have made in the course of following the advice of others.

The master of the revolution in each country is the party of that country. Marxist-Leninist parties know the ability of their own people better than anyone else.
Marxist-Leninist parties must respect each other’s independence and refrain from interfering in each other’s affairs. This is the only way to achieve the unity of the international communist movement and make it a truly comradely one.

The French Communist Party has a long history and a wealth of experience acquired during its struggle. Therefore, I think that it can take an independent path more efficiently. In France the Paris Commune existed before the start of the Russian revolution. More than a hundred years have passed since the Commune.

We greatly appreciate the fact that the French Communist Party emphasizes independence and regard its stand of noninterference in the affairs of others as extremely proper. I am convinced that the Workers’ Party of Korea and the French Communist Party will be able to strengthen their unity on the principle of independence.

Korean communists have also grown up and can stand on their own feet. They know the Korean situation better than anyone else.

There can be no proletarian internationalism without independence and vice versa. Korean communists consider that the successful execution of their revolutionary tasks amounts to carrying out their internationalist duty. If a party does not carry out its revolutionary tasks and fails to do its share, it will not discharge its internationalist duty.

In the international arena today, the people of the third world countries, the Asian, African and Latin-American peoples who were oppressed and ill-treated in the past, are now united and developing a powerful struggle against the aggressive acts of the imperialists. In particular, the third world countries are advancing under the banner of independence against imperialism. The struggle to protect their natural resources and defend their maritime rights is part of the struggle to oppose imperialist oppression and exploitation and defend national independence and sovereignty. We fully support this struggle of the third world peoples and are trying to strengthen solidarity with them.

This is the stand which our Party maintains in strengthening solidarity with the revolutionary forces of the world.

Thank you for your attention.
ON FURTHER STRENGTHENING PARTY WORK

A Letter to Those Attending a Short Course for the Party’s Organizational Workers

July 31, 1974

In accordance with the plan of the Party Central Committee, a short course for the Party’s organizational workers has now been taking place for about a month.

At the course urgent problems arising in Party work at the present time have been dealt with widely and in great depth. I believe that this course will produce an important advance in raising the political and theoretical levels and improving the practical qualifications of Party workers, Party organizers in particular, and in broadening and developing all aspects of Party work.

On this occasion when Party organizers have gathered from all parts of the country, I should like to emphasize a few points on the strengthening of Party work at the present time.

Today our revolution has entered a new stage of development.

The ideological, technical and cultural revolutions are deepening and developing on the whole and a great improvement is taking place on all fronts of the building of socialism.

The revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people is gaining in scope and strength with every day, despite severe trials, and the trend towards national reunification is spreading amongst them.

The international position of our Party and the Government of our
Republic has improved greatly and the scope of our foreign activities has broadened tremendously. International solidarity with our revolution has been further strengthened.

A great change has also taken place in the development of our Party itself.

The monolithic ideological system has been established firmly throughout the whole Party, the unity and cohesion of Party ranks based on the Juche idea have been strengthened and the fighting power of the Party has increased tremendously. The mass foundation of the Party has been consolidated and the Party’s authority and prestige have risen greatly in the eyes of the masses of the people. A well-regulated system of Party work has been established throughout and the methods and style of Party work have markedly improved. Today a new turn is taking place in our Party work.

The developing situation has set a new, higher, task before our Party. We must carry out the revolutionary tasks confronting our Party successfully by further strengthening Party work based on the changing situation.

1. ON STRENGTHENING THE PARTY RANKS AND ORGANIZATIONS STILL FURTHER

Our Party is the General Staff for the Korean revolution and the guiding force of our people. It assumes complete responsibility for all matters, large and small, arising in the Korean revolution, for our people’s life today and their fate tomorrow. In the final analysis, the issues of the Korean revolution and the destiny of our people depend on the strengthening of our Party.

It is the basic duty and primary task of all Party organizations to work actively to strengthen our Party ranks into an invincible revolutionary force.
The most important task in the work of consolidating the Party ranks is to build up the ranks of cadres solidly.

The cadres are the core force of our Party and the commanding personnel of the revolution. Only if the ranks of cadres are strong, can our Party’s ranks be strong and only if the cadres fulfil their role satisfactorily, can all of our Party work be successful. The practical experience of the revolution shows that the cadres decide everything.

The correct selection and placement of cadres and their development into competent, commanding personnel of the revolution must be the starting point, the basis of our Party work.

What kind of people does our Party want as cadres today? In brief it needs people who are infinitely loyal to our Party, firmly determined to work with total devotion for the benefit of the Party and the people, for the revolution and construction, and who are well prepared to cope with the revolutionary tasks assigned to them by the Party.

Fidelity to the Party is the first criterion of a cadre. A cadre should arm himself with the revolutionary thought of our Party, the Juche idea, defend the Party politically and ideologically with his very life, be unshakable in his working-class positions and revolutionary principles, and remain faithful to the Party at all times without retrogressing or vacillating in any conditions or circumstances. Fidelity to the Party should be manifested in practical activities. Cadres should go through fire and water in their efforts to carry out the Party line and policy and perform revolutionary tasks unconditionally and honestly.

A communist of the Juche type with pure blood of this type coursing through his whole body, competent and highly conscious politically and working with total devotion to implement the policy and intentions of the Party—this is the type of person qualified to be a cadre.

Party organizations should pay paramount attention to the work of personnel administration so as to build up the ranks of cadres solidly with such people who measure up to the demands of the Party.

While abiding by the class principle in considering and selecting
and appointing cadres. Party organizations should strictly observe the principle of evaluating people primarily on their own merits. To do this, they must thoroughly do away with the old method of judging people simply by their personal files. Man is a social being with ideological consciousness and so it is impossible to assess people correctly only by looking into their personal files. Only when they are observed in practical life and tested through practical activities, can people be correctly placed. We should observe people themselves, know their thoughts, instead of studying their personal files and prying into their family backgrounds, and we must appoint people who are genuinely loyal to the Party as cadres.

In personnel administration work today, the question of revolutionizing the cadres thoroughly should be particularly stressed. People are not unalterable, but change constantly. As iron left in the open air gets rusty by the action of oxygen, so people can become mentally rusty and degenerate under the influence of bad thoughts, when left to their own devices without education. If a man is not educated and tempered tirelessly under organizational control after his appointment as a cadre, he may become lax and easygoing and arrogant, no matter how good he may have been. It has been noticed amongst some of our cadres that such practices exist as working half-heartedly in an irresponsible manner, acting from expediency, instead of a revolutionary and master-like way, lacking the working-class trait in their style of work, putting on airs, domineering and acting bureaucratically. This is a manifestation of the fact that cadres have not been revolutionized. If cadres are not quickly cured of such practices, our Party will not be able to organize and guide the revolution and construction properly and may lose many cadres.

Party organizations should continue to work hard to revolutionize cadres. They must ensure that no cadre degenerates and that all of them remain infinitely loyal in their revolutionary work with an un tarnished revolutionary spirit and unfailing revolutionary drive and enthusiasm.

In conjunction with the struggle for revolutionization, the battle to improve qualifications must be strengthened amongst the cadres. By
studying harder and raising their political and practical levels steadily, all cadres should carry out their assigned revolutionary tasks smoothly.

Another important aspect of consolidating the Party ranks is to train all members of our Party to be hard-core revolutionaries.

The party is a political organization of its members, and so if the party is to become a powerful organization, each of its members must be healthy and staunch and perform his role with credit. Basically, a Marxist-Leninist party is the advanced detachment of the working class, and only pioneers of the working class, the best core elements of the working people, can join it. To build up the party ranks with hard-core revolutionaries is one of the basic principles in Marxist-Leninist party building.

Our Party, the revolutionary vanguard of the working class and working people of Korea, has now put out the fighting programme of infusing the whole of society with its revolutionary thought, the Juche idea, and is working to bring this about. The task of infusing the whole of society with one revolutionary thought is difficult and very demanding. To carry out this difficult task successfully, all Party members must be brought up as loyal, hard-core revolutionaries. The level of every Party cadre should be raised one grade and all Party members elevated to the level of cadres. We should thus train all Party members to be elite cadres.

To make hard-core revolutionaries of the Party members, Party organizations must resolutely strengthen the guidance of their organized Party lives and their political and ideological education. All Party members should thus become communists who are boundlessly loyal to the Party and politically and ideologically tried and tested.

Building up the Party to be a collective of hard-core revolutionaries requires proper handling of the work of increasing Party membership.

It is only when the Party ranks are continuously reinforced with the best progressive elements of the workers, peasants, soldiers and working intellectuals of the younger generation, that it will be possible to improve the quality of the Party ranks constantly and increase the Party’s fighting efficiency.
Paying particular attention to the work of Party growth, Party organizations should get to know and register reserves of members amongst the working masses including the working class, rear them systematically, and admit to the Party those qualified core elements who are firmly equipped with the monolithic ideological system of the Party and are exemplary in carrying out revolutionary tasks which are assigned to them.

We must develop our Party as a revolutionary party which is always fresh and full of vitality, by admitting a large number of young people who are well-trained with the Juche idea and vibrant with revolutionary drive and spirit. And all members must be well educated to prevent them from becoming stale and sluggish.

To strengthen the ranks of our Party and increase its fighting efficiency, it is necessary to firmly ensure the unity and cohesion of the whole Party based on the monolithic idea of the Party, the Juche idea.

The unity and cohesion of the whole Party, based on its monolithic idea, is our Party’s life and soul. Only if the unity and cohesion of the ranks is firmly ensured on the basis of the monolithic idea of the Party, can our Party become a revolutionary party with invincible fighting strength to guide the revolutionary struggle and construction successfully. Therefore, Party organizations must always make it the main factor in Party work to guarantee the Party’s unity and cohesion based on its monolithic idea, and constantly deepen and develop this cause.

Arming the cadres and members firmly with our Party’s monolithic idea, the Juche idea, is of the utmost importance in strengthening the Party’s unity and cohesion.

The Juche idea is the guiding idea of our Party and the ideological basis for its unity and cohesion. Only the Juche idea can exist in our Party, and the unity and cohesion of the Party which we need is unity and cohesion based on the Juche idea.

Party organizations should further strengthen the education of cadres and members in Juche to equip them solidly with the Juche idea and unite them closely around the Party Central Committee, thereby
firmly establishing the ideological system of Juche in our Party. Party organizations should resolutely combat all unsound ideas which are incompatible with the Juche idea: capitalist ideas, feudal-Confucian ideas, revisionism, dogmatism, worship of the great powers, factionalism, parochialism and nepotism. They should also wage a determined ideological struggle against disloyalty to the Party and anything which is contrary to its monolithic ideological system. They must not connive at the slightest manifestation detrimental to the unity and cohesion of the Party, but strike quickly and overcome it thoroughly.

Enforcement of rigid organizational discipline throughout the Party to move under the unified guidance of the Party Central Committee is an important condition for assuring the unity and cohesion of the Party ranks. Without the unified guidance of the Party Central Committee, unity of thought and will cannot be ensured in the Party and the Party cannot be an organization existing as a complete whole acting as a single man. We must ensure that iron discipline prevails throughout the Party so that all Party organizations act together under the unified guidance of the Party Central Committee, unconditionally accepting and thoroughly implementing all its policies.

The key to the successful solution of all problems arising in consolidating the Party ranks and organizations lies in tightening the life of Party members within the Party organization.

The tightening of the life of Party members within the Party organization is vital for the work of revolutionizing the cadres, building up the Party ranks with hard-core revolutionaries and of strengthening the unity and cohesion of the whole Party based on the Juche idea. Therefore, Party organizations should make great efforts to tighten the organizational life of Party members.

Party organizations should thoroughly establish a revolutionary norm of Party life amongst members, ensuring that all members participate in the Party’s organizational life willingly and actively, according to the standards of Party life. Party organizations should regularly give assignments to all members to see that they are always
active with a high degree of revolutionary consciousness. Their Party life must be regularly reviewed and Party meetings must be conducted at a high political and ideological level so that Party members are constantly tempered in the crucible of criticism and ideological struggle.

In particular, the cadres’ life within the Party organization should be tightened. This is the best way to ensure their revolutionization. Party organizations must ensure that all cadres participate unfailingly in the organizational life of their Party cell and are always under the control of Party organizations and members.

To tighten the life of Party members and cadres within the Party organization, it is necessary to improve the role of the organizational department of the Party. This department guides life within Party organizations by directly controlling and guiding the Party life of members. So the tightening of the life of Party members within the Party organization depends largely on the proper fulfilment of the organizational department’s role. Party committees at all levels should improve the role of their organizational departments decisively so as to know and register the Party life of their members systematically and to exercise better control and guidance.

2. ON ADHERING STRICTLY TO THE MASS LINE OF THE PARTY

It is important to unite the masses closely around the Party, strengthening the Party as the General Staff of the revolution. Without uniting the masses, we can neither strengthen the Party nor make the revolution.

Our Party’s consistent mass line is to unite the masses with the Party by re-educating them and to carry out revolutionary tasks by enlisting their energy and wisdom.
The mass line is the fundamental principle of our Party’s activities based on the Juche idea that the working masses are the masters of everything and decide everything.

The revolution is a cause for the masses of the people and can only win with the active participation of the broad masses. Therefore, Party organizations should always pay particular attention to the task of uniting the masses firmly around the Party and raising their revolutionary enthusiasm.

Today the revolutionary situation and the revolutionary tasks confronting the Party urgently demand the thorough implementation of the mass line to unite the broad masses more closely around the Party.

In our country a vigorous struggle is now being waged to reunify the country by curbing and frustrating the policy of national division of the US imperialists and the south Korean reactionaries and their intrigues in favour of a new war. The fight for national reunification is a nationwide fight against the US imperialists and their lackeys and an acute class struggle between socialism and capitalism, between the revolution and the counter-revolution. In the final analysis, victory in this struggle depends on winning over a greater part of the masses. Only if our Party enlists the broad masses, shall we be able to beat the enemy militarily or politically and accomplish the historic cause of national reunification.

In the northern half of Korea today, a historic struggle is being waged for great socialist construction. This struggle demands that our Party, adhering strictly to the mass line, should enlist the revolutionary enthusiasm and creative power of all the people.

An important task in the mass line of the Party at the present time is to re-educate and unite all social sections closely around the Party.

The prolonged colonial rule of Japanese imperialism, the country’s division by US imperialism and the enemy’s wedge-driving acts during the Fatherland Liberation War have made the socio-political composition of our population complex. But we cannot make the revolution only with spotless people by dismissing all those whose family background or record is questionable. By re-educating all the
people with an undesirable family background and record of socio-political life, we must unite them around the Party and persuade them to support and follow the Party sincerely.

Above all, the Party’s organizational workers should have a correct understanding of people’s social status and evaluate them correctly.

The social status of people refers to their ideological status.

Their social status is not immutable, but changes with changes in the circumstances and conditions of their lives. The thoughts of people may improve or retrogress depending on their education. Even a man with a good family origin can degenerate if he fails to train himself constantly in a revolutionary way and a man from a bad family can become a fine revolutionary if he makes strenuous efforts to equip himself firmly with the Party’s ideas.

The social status of people should be reassessed on the basis of the development of society and changes in their way of thinking. It is nearly 30 years since our country was liberated from Japanese imperialism’s colonial rule and more than 20 years since the end of the Fatherland Liberation War. In this period a radical change has taken place in our country’s social, economic and class relations and the ideological and mental characteristics of people have also changed beyond recognition. Many people with problematic social backgrounds have followed our Party through all difficulties and trials and worked with devotion to carry out the revolutionary tasks set by the Party. These people have been tried and tested in the course of the revolutionary struggle.

If we do not assess the social status of people properly in keeping with changed conditions, we may lose people who support and follow us. Therefore, Party organizations should not judge people only by their family backgrounds and records, but mainly by their present class preparation and mental attitudes.

We must also evaluate the sons and daughters of those with a questionable family background and socio-political record correctly.

We look into the social status and origin of people to find out the environment they lived in and the ideological influences they have
received, the ideas they have acquired and the determination they can display in the class struggle. Sons of those who were members of the “peace maintenance corps” or who defected to the south are not always bad men. The question is how they have been educated.

As for the young people who have grown up under our system, receiving a revolutionary education, and are faithful to the Party even if their parents have undesirable records, the social status and origin of their fathers or grandfathers should not be held against them.

Party organizations should boldly trust and embrace people from all walks of life, providing conditions for them to work with peace of mind.

Party workers should not suspect people with heterogeneous backgrounds unreasonably; they must not repel or shun those who follow the Party. No one who supports our Party and works with enthusiasm, should be discriminated against in social and political life. They should be given Party confidence and their services and achievements in work should be judged properly. In this way, everyone should be encouraged to live fully and to devote themselves to the revolution and construction with pride as full-fledged masters of our society, full of hope for and confidence in their future.

The work of embracing and re-educating people from various social sections does not rule out the class struggle. Party organizations should strictly observe the class principle in work with the masses and further intensify the class struggle against reactionaries and anti-Party counter-revolutionary elements. The Party’s organizational workers should draw a distinct line between those to be isolated and those to be reformed through education: they should carry on the struggle against the handful of hostile elements in a different way from the re-education of the broad masses.

If they are to acquit themselves well in their work with people of various social sections, Party organizers should closely arm themselves with the class policy of the Party. They should make a deep study of the class policy pursued by our Party in each stage of the revolution and the experiences of the class struggle in our country, so
that there will not be even a slight deviation in the work with people of various social sections.

A well-regulated system of mass work should be established to unite the masses solidly around the Party.

The work of uniting the masses around the Party through re-education can only be successful when all Party members and core elements of the broad masses take an active part in it.

Party organizations should turn the work of educating and uniting the masses into a concern of the masses themselves. To this end, they must enhance the vanguard role of Party members to ensure that members educate the core elements of the masses and that these core elements, in turn, educate the broad masses. In other words, the masses must be re-educated and rallied to the Party with the traditional method of work of our Party which consists of one person educating and stirring up ten, ten–a hundred, and a hundred–a thousand.

Party organizations should also establish the system of conducting work with the masses through working people’s organizations properly.

The conduct of Party work with the masses through working people’s organizations is a fundamental principle of the guidance of the masses and our Party’s traditional method of mass guidance.

The working people’s organizations are bodies charged with educating the masses ideologically and they form a medium between the Party and the masses. The proper function and key revolutionary task of the working people’s organizations are to revolutionize and unite non-Party people firmly around the Party and to mobilize them vigorously for the implementation of Party policy.

Party organizations should guide and control the officials of the working people’s organizations so as not to engross themselves in administrative and economic rush work, but to devote themselves entirely to their proper function. They should help these organizations to do their work willingly. With a correct understanding of the working people’s organizations, Party bodies must actively encourage them in their work with the masses, boldly entrusting them with
responsibilities, showing them clearly the direction and ways to carry out their responsibilities and providing good conditions for work. In this way, the working people’s organizations must be persuaded to play a large part in re-educating the masses.

Party organizations must implement the mass line of the Party thoroughly and rally people from all walks of life closely around the Party, ensuring that all members of our society support our Party and fight to the end on the path shown by the Party whatever obstacles might arise.

3. ON STRENGTHENING THE PARTY’S GUIDANCE OF THE BUILDING OF SOCIALISM

Building socialism is the most important revolutionary task facing the party of the working class after the establishment of the socialist system. Forceful promotion of socialist construction is essential for laying the solid material and technical foundations of socialism and conquering the material fortress of communism.

While consolidating the Party ranks and uniting the broad masses around the Party, Party organizations should pay particular attention to improving the Party’s guidance of socialist construction.

The work of strengthening the Party organizationally and ideologically is not an end in itself. It is aimed at further expediting socialist construction. Party work must always be closely connected with socialist construction and subordinated to advancing it. The results of Party work should be tangible in the achievements of socialist construction.

Success in the revolution and construction depends entirely on the leading role of the Party and the strengthening of the Party’s leadership is the decisive guarantee for victory in the revolution and construction. Without the leadership of our Party, it would be impossible to advance
the revolutionary struggle and construction work by even one step.

Today socialist construction is making great strides to rise to a new level, the scale of the economy has been greatly enlarged, and the fight to conquer nature is progressing on an unprecedented scale. These facts urgently demand that the Party’s leading role be further enhanced on all fronts of socialist construction.

An important task in the Party’s guidance of socialist economic construction is to steer it properly. Party committees at all levels should decide, through collective discussion, on a correct orientation and ways to carry out the Party’s economic tasks and mobilize Party organizations, members and the working masses to work for their implementation, and they should always give direction and exercise control so that decisions can be correctly implemented.

In the Party’s guidance of economic work, both the tendency of Party workers assuming administrative work and their indifference to economic work, while concentrating only on inner-Party work, should be avoided.

Party workers should rid themselves of the erroneous view that everything will only go well if they alone take it in hand and the incorrect position of assuming administrative and economic work without regard for the workers assigned to it. They should strive to ensure economic work by Party methods, political methods. Party officials should direct the course of activity so that administrative and economic workers will do their work in the right way based on the Party line and policy, should do organizational and political work meticulously to make all Party members and working people work selflessly to fulfil the economic tasks, and should always inspect and review the implementation of Party policy and reorganize assignments, and thus constantly help administrative and economic workers to fulfil the Party policy thoroughly without giving up halfway. This is the basic requirement of the Party’s guidance of administrative and economic work.

Party organizers must not neglect economic work on the pretext that they are in charge of inner-Party work. There is no such thing as
Party organizational work which is isolated from socialist construction. Party organizational work should be closely connected with economic work and inner-Party work should be conducted to ensure success in socialist construction and back up economic work.

During the former anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, we rated good marksmen and brave fighters against the enemy as faithful to the revolution, and conducted Party organizational and political work with the main emphasis on making all guerrillas show unconquerable heroism in the fight against the enemy. In the conditions which prevail at present when our Party has taken power and is building socialism, those who have a high level of technical knowledge and skill and devote themselves to the building of socialism are faithful to the Party. So, the emphasis in Party organizational and political work should be on encouraging all the working people to contribute all their knowledge and energy to the Party’s economic tasks.

An urgent matter in strengthening the Party’s guidance of socialist construction is to improve the qualifications of Party workers. Because these workers are poorly qualified, their mental horizon is narrow and they cannot analyse and judge matters correctly from the Party’s point of view. The main reason for formalism in the Party’s guidance of economic work today lies in the low qualifications of Party workers.

Our Party’s economic policy is the criterion indicating the direction and method of economic work and distinguishing right from wrong in this work. Party workers should first of all study our Party’s economic policy deeply and master it.

Without a knowledge of the economy and technology, Party workers can neither express an opinion on economic affairs nor effectively exert Party guidance in economic work. They should all acquire knowledge about the economy and learn technology. To learn is always good and essential for advancing the revolution. All Party workers must acquire knowledge of the economy and technology and thus cultivate an ability to guide economic work skilfully.

The important task confronting us today is to continue to press forward the fight for great socialist construction. Party organizations
must carry on Party organizational and political work energetically in order to accelerate the drive to attain the major targets of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule for the 30th anniversary of the founding of the Party and to reach the 10 long-range goals of economic construction, the new peaks of socialist construction.

Today the three major tasks of the technical revolution are the cardinal objectives on which our Party must concentrate in the field of economic construction, and the fundamental guarantee of the achievement of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and the acceleration of socialist construction lies in pressing ahead with the technical revolution in three major aspects. Party organizations should rouse the broad masses for the technical innovation drive, holding still higher the banner of the technical revolution with emphasis on the three major fields in all sectors and units and, in particular, properly activate and help scientists and technicians in a political way to contribute actively to the technical revolution with all their knowledge and energy.

The improvement of the guidance and management of the economy in keeping with the high spirits of the masses and the demand of the developing situation is very important. Party organizations should help the economic cadres to improve the guidance and management of the economy steadily in conformity with the demand of the Taean work system, the best form of socialist economic management developed by our Party, to carry out the policy of unified and detailed planning correctly and to put the management of enterprises on a regular basis to operate the economy still more scientifically and rationally.

4. ON IMPROVING THE METHODS AND STYLE OF PARTY WORK

Our Party’s line and policy are correct and the measures and ways for implementing them have also been correctly developed. The proper
implementation of the Party’s line and policy depends entirely on the methods and style of the work of the officials. If the officials work badly, they will not be able to achieve success, despite the correctness of the Party’s line and policy and the measures and ways for their implementation. Improvement of the methods and style of Party work is an important guarantee for the successful realization of the Party’s line and policy.

Party organizations should do away completely with the old work methods and style and create a radical change in Party work.

To improve the methods and style of Party work it is extremely necessary to inspire Party work thoroughly with the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method, our Party’s revolutionary work method.

Work with people is basic to Party work. In other words, Party work is the work of re-educating people and mobilizing them for revolutionary struggle and construction. An administrative method such as issuing orders and instructions, receiving reports and statistical statements and sending out copies of decisions, cannot re-educate people and stir up their willing enthusiasm. Party work must always be conducted in combination with political work and explanations, persuasion, education and admonition as required by the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method.

To inspire Party work with the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method, Party workers should understand the existing situation. The objects of Party work are Party members and the working people. Party officials should always go to the lower units where Party members and the working people are, to explain and spread our Party’s line and policy amongst them. They should see whether the line and policy are being properly carried out, and instruct and aid their subordinates by setting them an example.

The elimination of the abuse of Party authority and bureaucracy is important in improving the methods and style of Party work.

Our Party is neither an organ of power nor an organization wielding authority. The abuse of Party authority and bureaucracy have nothing to do with our Party’s work method. If Party officials abuse Party
authority and act bureaucratically, they will cause alienation between
the Party and the masses and make it impossible to spark the creative
spirit and self-awareness of the masses.

Party workers must never abuse Party authority or practise
bureaucracy, and this applies particularly to Party organizers. Party
workers should always treat Party members and the working people
with a parental affection, learn their problems and needs and solve
them quickly. While possessing a strong Party spirit, Party workers
should be humane and highly cultured, modest, simple and courteous
in their behaviour.

To improve the methods and style of Party work we must do away
with formalism and expediency.

Formalism and expediency are very harmful manifestations among
our officials. Some officials lack a master-like attitude in work. They
work superficially to keep up appearances and try to shirk
responsibility for their work on various pretexts.

Party officials should thoroughly rid themselves of formalism and
expediency, tackle all work responsibly like masters, and work
honestly for the Party, the working class and the people with a clear
revolutionary conscience in difficult conditions.

To improve the methods and style of Party work it is also necessary
to abolish the secret-inspector method of work.

The secret-inspector method of work is a conspiratorial work
method of spying upon people. In the work of our Party which fights in
the interests of the people for a righteous purpose and objectives, no
conspiratorial method can ever be permitted.

If Party work is conducted by the secret-inspector method, it is
impossible to know in detail the real state of affairs in the lower units,
to get rid of subjectivism and to deal correctly with all matters
including human affairs. And the secret-inspector method in Party
work may make people suspect one another and cause unrest. In the
final analysis, if Party officials use the secret-inspector method in Party
work, there may be serious consequences. This is even more true for
Party organizational workers.
Party workers should refrain from secretly finding fault behind people’s backs and from keeping a list of people’s faults only. When they visit lower units, they should find out through organizational means how work is progressing there and, if the officials have shortcomings, they should admonish them and help them rectify their shortcomings. They should report questions that arise correctly without exaggeration or distortion, and dispose of the problem with discretion after the confirmation of the material submitted.

Improvement in the work methods of county Party committees is highly important in improving the methods and style of Party work.

The county Party committees are our Party’s lowest leading bodies which control and guide basic organizations and the executive units which directly undertake the implementation of Party policy amongst the masses. So it is impossible to mobilize the masses properly for the execution of Party policy without improving the work methods of the county Party committee and enhancing its fighting function and role.

We have worked hard for a long time to improve the work methods of the county Party committee and raise its fighting function and role, and recently we have taken a number of important measures. Some time ago we instituted county Party committees of a special category in large counties, with the primary intention of improving the county Party committee’s work methods and increasing its function and role.

But many county Party committees are still working by the old method and are not fulfilling their function and role.

Because the county Party committee is an executive unit, it should not work by sending copies of decisions and directions to the primary Party organizations of ri and factories and demanding statistical reports from them. The staff members of all departments of the county Party committee including the organizational, information and publicity departments, should visit the ri and factories and give guidance to primary Party organizations. They should mix with the masses to observe and organize work and educate the masses.

Work methods and style are not based on the working ability or character of officials, but are an expression of their thinking.
Therefore, without correcting the ideological viewpoint of officials, it is impossible to improve their work methods and style.

To improve the methods and style of Party work it is necessary to wage a vigorous ideological struggle to eliminate the old ideas amongst Party workers. Party organizations should launch a vigorous ideological struggle to abolish the old work methods and style and ensure that all Party officials work well for the Party, the working class and the people with revolutionary work methods and a popular style of work.

I believe that after this short course you will bring about a new change in Party work and make a positive contribution to further strengthening and developing our Party, hastening the complete victory of socialism in the northern half of Korea and the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.
**Question:** You are acquainted with President Senghor through his writings and met him last May.

What are your views about cooperation between Senegal and Korea and between Korea and the African countries?

**Answer:** First of all, let me warmly welcome your visit to our country.

As you rightly said, we have known President Senghor for a long time through his writings. Therefore, although we met him for the first time last May, it was like meeting an old friend and, in a few days, we became very closely acquainted.

The visit of President Senghor to our country was an epoch-making occasion in strengthening and developing the relations of friendship and cooperation formed between the peoples of our two countries under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence. Following President Senghor’s visit to our country, the relations of friendship and cooperation between Korea and Senegal entered a new phase of development in all spheres.

Today the relations of friendship and cooperation between the Governments of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the
Republic of Senegal and between the peoples of Korea and Senegal are developing satisfactorily. Our two peoples understand each other well and cooperate closely with each other, because both were previously oppressed and exploited by the imperialists.

The Government of the Republic of Senegal and the Senegalese people support our people’s revolutionary cause and express firm solidarity with their just struggle. In particular, President Senghor and the Government of the Republic of Senegal are working actively in support of our people’s revolutionary cause in the international arena. Our people are grateful for this.

Geographically, Korea and Senegal are far apart, but our people always follow with keen interest the Senegalese people’s struggle to build a new life. The Government of the DPRK and the Korean people strongly support and encourage the just struggle of the Senegalese people against all forms of subversive activities by the imperialists and for the building of a prosperous, powerful, independent and sovereign state. Our people are also striving to learn from the good experience gained by the Senegalese people.

It is very good for the Governments and peoples of our two countries to visit each other frequently and to exchange valuable experience. Such shared support and encouragement and exchange of experience between us will help greatly towards deepening mutual understanding and strengthening solidarity.

We are satisfied with the daily development of solidarity and friendly and cooperative relations between the Korean and Senegalese peoples and will do all we can to further strengthen and develop such solidarity and relations of friendship and cooperation. The militant solidarity and relations of friendship and cooperation between the peoples of Korea and Senegal will flourish and develop to the full in all spheres of politics, the economy and culture and display ever greater strength in the future.

As for the relations of friendship and cooperation between Korea and African nations, we treasure friendship and solidarity with all African peoples and are deeply interested in strengthening and developing this.
The strengthening of solidarity and cooperation between the Korean people and the African peoples is not only in conformity with their interests, but also benefits the common cause of the peoples of the third world, the progressive people throughout the world.

It is a principle consistently maintained by our Government and people to develop friendly relations with the newly independent states of Asia, Africa and Latin America and to support and cooperate with each other. As in the past, so in the future, the Korean people will work actively to unite with all the peoples of Africa, the peoples of the third world and develop friendship and cooperation with them.

The peoples of the third world, including the African peoples, have enough strength and wisdom to chart their way by themselves. If the third world countries cooperate, exchanging expertise with each other, learning from each other and meeting each other’s needs, they will advance rapidly and achieve progress and prosperity without the help of the great powers.

As comrades-in-arms marching ahead together under the uplifted banner of anti-imperialism and independence, the Korean and African peoples will fight shoulder to shoulder to win their common cause against imperialism, always cooperating closely with each other.

**Question:** The youth problem is a matter of the greatest concern to us. How did you solve this problem in your country?

**Answer:** The youth problem is a very important one which is decisive to the success of the revolution and construction and related to the destiny of a nation.

Young people represent a great revolutionary force in the building of a new society. Great social changes can be brought about only when the lively, vigorous and daring young people take an active part in the revolutionary struggle and the work of construction. Young people are also the successors of the revolution and the masters of the future. The bright future of a nation can be guaranteed only when the young people are politically, ideologically and morally sound and fully prepared for
revolution. In the final analysis, a nation can make the revolution and construction a success and achieve its prosperity only when it solves the youth problem correctly.

The correct solution of the youth problem means closely rallying broad sections of young people in a revolutionary organization, educating and training them in a revolutionary way to be competent builders of a new society, and preparing them as fully-equipped successors of the revolution who will shoulder the destiny of a nation.

We have given deep attention to the solution of this problem since the first days of our revolutionary struggle and have succeeded in solving it at each stage of our revolutionary development.

We can say, in fact, that our revolutionary struggle began with educating and uniting the young people. In the period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, our first efforts were dedicated to working with the young people; we educated the patriotic young people of all walks of life in a revolutionary way and rallied them firmly under the banner of anti-imperialist national liberation, organized the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army with them and waged a glorious armed struggle to liberate the motherland.

After liberation, in order to solve this problem correctly, we first formed a youth organization conforming to the specific conditions of our country and the characteristic features of our young people.

Immediately after liberation we were faced with the historic task of building a new, democratic Korea by mobilizing all patriotic, democratic forces in the country. So we organized the Democratic Youth League, a mass youth organization, in conformity with the requirements of our revolutionary development and characteristic features of our young people and rallied into it young people from all walks of life. This enabled us to prevent a split in the youth movement and energetically organize and mobilize the young people from all backgrounds in building a new country even in a very complicated situation.

In solving the youth problem we also attached importance and always directed a great deal of effort to educating and training the young people.
In their education, our primary efforts are directed to strengthening education in Juche.

Our Party’s Juche idea is an idea that the masters of revolution and construction are the masses of the people and that they are also the motive force of revolution and construction. In other words, it is the idea that one is responsible for one’s own destiny and that one also has the capacity for hewing out one’s own destiny. Only when the young people are firmly armed with the Juche idea can they participate actively in the revolution and construction with a high consciousness as people who are directly responsible for the revolution and construction, as masters of the future. Therefore, we always give top priority to the education in Juche in the ideological training of the young.

Our experience shows that when all the young people are firmly armed with the ideas of their Party, its line and policies, they can believe in their own strength and devote themselves to the struggle for the revolution and construction in their country with great national pride and revolutionary self-confidence.

Class education is of particular importance in the ideological education of young people.

Today the revolution has taken on a protracted nature not only within the bounds of a single country but also on a worldwide scale and the generations are constantly changing. It is only when the class education of the young people, the rising generation, is intensified, that they can carry out an uncompromising struggle against the enemies of the revolution, remembering the oppression and exploitation of the past.

Under the slogan “Remember your past”, we are trying to educate the young people so that they will not forget the past when our people were exploited and oppressed by the imperialists.

Since the country is divided and we are directly confronted with US imperialism, the boss of world reaction, we always direct special attention to the class education of the young.

We are also educating the young people in the lofty patriotic spirit
of boundless love for their country and people.

He who does not love his country and people cannot have enthusiasm for the revolution in his country or fight devotedly for its victory. We are intensifying the education of the young people in socialist patriotism to arm them with the spirit of infinite love for their homeland and people, and are firmly preparing them all so that they may devote themselves to the fight for national prosperity and progress and the people’s well-being, and for the defence of the country’s independence and the revolutionary gains from the enemy’s encroachment.

What is also important in the education of the young people is to educate them to love work and acquire sound moral traits.

Without work we cannot speak about the prosperity and development of the country or the happy life of the people. Loving work ought to be one of the noblest traits of the young. We are educating them to love work and regard it as most honourable, and to consider an idle life shameful, to take the lead in tough work anywhere at any time and do their share in the revolution and construction.

We are educating the young people to oppose the corrupt bourgeois way of life resolutely and to lead a frugal life and be polite in their behaviour always. Living a frugal and militant life and working conscientiously for society and the collective is a trait of our young people in their everyday life.

Only when the young master advanced science and technology, while arming themselves with revolutionary ideas, can they take part in all aspects of social life as true masters and press ahead with the revolution and construction energetically. We are now striving to meet the great demand that all young people equip themselves thoroughly with advanced science and technology and possess at least one technical skill.

Our young people are playing a really important role in the revolution and construction. They performed great deeds and undying exploits for the motherland and the people during the periods of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, the democratic construction after
liberation, the harsh Fatherland Liberation War and in the difficult days of postwar reconstruction. Their unshakable resolution and high revolutionary enthusiasm to build a new, happy society and a new life more quickly and successfully, are still being fully displayed even now in all spheres of socialist construction.

Today our young people’s ideological and mental state and their moral qualities are excellent, and all of them are rallied firmly around our Party and the Government of the Republic. Because the revolutionary young people are solidly united around the Party, our country has a bright future.

We can say with great pride that we have trained a fine dependable new generation, the heirs to the revolution, who will carry forward our Party’s and people’s revolutionary cause. This is a source of great pride and joy for our people.

**Question:** In view of Korea’s experience, what do you think of the interrelation of agriculture and industry in the developing countries?

**Answer:** As you are well aware, most of the developing countries are backward agrarian countries whose industries are underdeveloped. As far as their industries are concerned, there are some distorted and one-sided industries built by the imperialists with a view to plundering their rich resources. The industrial backwardness of the developing countries is the outcome of the colonial rule of the imperialists.

Our experience has shown that in order to liquidate the consequences of imperialist colonial rule completely and achieve economic independence, the developing countries must build and develop their own national industry.

Industry and agriculture are the two major branches of the national economy, the first of these being the leading branch of the economy. Without building and developing a national industry it is impossible to develop other branches of the national economy or develop and modernize agriculture.

Industry, and heavy industry in particular, is the material basis of a
country’s economic independence. Unless its own national industry is built with heavy industry as the backbone, it can neither lay the foundation of an independent national economy capable of taking care of its own economic affairs, nor free itself completely from the imperialists’ economic subjugation and plunder. Without a firm independent national industry it cannot consolidate political independence, which it has already won, either.

It is not an easy task, of course, for the developing countries to build an independent national industry. These countries are short of funds and the techniques needed for industrialization and have few technicians. However, if their peoples work hard with a firm resolve to achieve the progress of their countries and national prosperity through their own efforts, using their national resources on the principle of self-reliance, they will be able to carry out any task, no matter how difficult.

The developing countries have abundant resources and inexhaustible production potential.

Moreover, the peoples of the developing countries are striving to build a new life with exceptionally high revolutionary enthusiasm and creative energy. The creative wisdom of the masses of the people is unbounded and there is nothing more powerful and resourceful in the world than the masses of the people. If the peoples of the developing countries, exploited and oppressed in the past, courageously open up the path to a new life, firmly conscious that they themselves are the masters of their destiny and that their destiny must be shaped only by themselves, they will overcome all the obstacles and hardships and capture the fortress of industrialization successfully.

What is more, if the developing countries increase economic and technological exchange and cooperation, they will successfully fulfil the task of building an independent national industry in a short time, without relying on the great powers.

**Question:** What are your views about the reunification of divided Korea free from outside influence?
**Answer:** Eliminating the interference of outside forces and achieving the independent reunification of the divided country is the most important revolutionary task facing our people today.

In origin, our nation is a homogeneous nation which has existed with one culture and one language throughout its long history which spans several thousand years. Our country was divided into north and south by foreign forces after the Second World War and has not yet been reunified because of foreign interference. Outside forces are the real authors of the partition of our nation and form the main obstacle to our country’s reunification.

The question of the reunification of our country is, to all intents and purposes, an internal affair of our nation, which must be solved by the Korean people themselves. A nation’s internal affairs can be solved in conformity with its interests and the people’s will, only through its own efforts. The question of Korea’s reunification cannot be solved by relying on outside forces, and foreigners do not have to meddle in the question of our country’s reunification. Our people are an intelligent and courageous people fully capable of solving the question of their country’s reunification for themselves. Once the interference of outside forces is terminated in our country, our people will be able to achieve the peaceful reunification of the divided country for themselves. If foreign interference is ended, the dialogue now under way between the north and south will progress successfully and rapidly.

The outside forces interfering in the internal affairs of our country and obstructing its reunification are none other than the US imperialists. They have not only divided our country but also enforced colonial rule in south Korea, having occupied it for nearly 30 years. Tens of thousands of hostile US imperialist troops are still stationed in south Korea. There is no outside force in the northern half of our country, and our Party and the Government of the Republic do not tolerate outside interference under any circumstances. Therefore, the most important question in bringing about our country’s independent reunification is to make the US imperialist aggressor troops withdraw.
from south Korea which they occupy under the flag of the “UN forces”.

From the first day of national division our Party and the Government of the Republic have consistently struggled to drive the US imperialist aggressor troops out of south Korea and, the North-South Joint Statement published in 1972, defined it as the most important principle of national reunification to achieve the reunification of the country independently, without relying on outside forces, and free from their interference.

As a result of the consistent efforts of the Government of our Republic and the strong support and encouragement of progressive people the world over, last year the UN General Assembly adopted a resolution supporting the principles of independent and peaceful reunification enunciated in the North-South Joint Statement and dissolving the “United Nations Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea”, a US imperialist tool for aggression in Korea and interference in its internal affairs. This is a great victory for us and an important step towards the solution of the question of Korea’s reunification.

However, in putting an end to outside interference in our country, there still remains a more fundamental question and there are many problems to be solved.

The US imperialists are still occupying south Korea under the UN flag and wantonly interfering in our internal affairs. In order to create “two Koreas” they are constantly instigating the south Korean authorities to keep the nation divided and zealously defending their war plans and fascist ideas. The Japanese militarists also persist in obstructing the independent and peaceful reunification of our country, actively following the US imperialists’ interference in our internal affairs and their partitionist policy.

With the active encouragement of the US imperialists, the south Korean authorities are clinging more tenaciously to the sleeves of outside forces to prop up their crumbling system of military fascist rule, heading for permanent division rather than reunification. The
south Korean authorities, in violation of the principles of independent and peaceful reunification agreed upon in the North-South Joint Statement, are begging the US imperialists to keep their armed forces of aggression in south Korea permanently and are intensifying their fascist repression of the south Korean people, who demand reunification, and are increasing their plans to unleash another war.

If the independent and peaceful reunification of our country is to be accelerated in the present situation, the US imperialist aggressor troops, the main obstacle to it, must be driven out of south Korea and the “two Koreas” plot of the internal and external partitionists must be shattered. Our Party and the Government of the Republic will make every possible effort to remove all obstacles in the way of national reunification and to reunify the divided country by the efforts of the Korean people themselves, without outside interference.

We resolutely demand that the US imperialists stop their aggression and interference against our country, get out of south Korea immediately and stop instigating or patronizing the south Korean authorities. If, despite our repeated warnings, the US imperialists continue to occupy south Korea and protect the south Korean authorities in acting for national division and carrying out their fascist policy they will gain nothing by this and will only suffer an ignominious defeat.

We believe that as a matter of course, the UN should strike a blow against the US imperialists’ aggression in our country and their interference in its internal affairs. The UN should remove the camouflage of “UN forces” from the US imperialist armed forces of aggression occupying south Korea, compel them to withdraw and take steps conducive to the Korean people’s endeavours to reunify the divided country by themselves, without outside interference.

We are convinced that the peoples of all countries who value justice and love truth, will actively support and encourage the Korean people’s struggle to check and frustrate the interference and partitionist schemes of outside forces in our country and to reunify the divided country by themselves.
I take this opportunity to express my deep thanks to the Government of the Republic of Senegal and the Senegalese people for their support for our people’s struggle to reunify the country independently.

**Question:** What is your position with regard to the problem of decolonization on the African continent?

**Answer:** The African peoples have waged a fierce struggle to eliminate colonialism and achieve national independence and have won a great victory in this. On the African continent, many countries have already won national independence and embarked upon the proud road to build a new life. The African continent, called the “Colonial Continent” and the “Dark Continent” in the past, is turning today into a new continent shining with the bright rays of freedom and liberation. Colonialism is living through its last hours on the African continent.

Today the African peoples are fighting determinedly to eradicate the last vestiges of colonialism on the African continent, consolidate their newly-won national independence and build a prosperous, new society.

The Korean people consider the African peoples’ struggle against imperialism and colonialism, for the final liquidation of colonialism on their continent, a most righteous struggle and deem it their noble internationalist duty to support and encourage it. The Korean people fully support the peoples of Mozambique, Angola, Guinea-Bissau, Zimbabwe, Namibia, Azania and other African countries in their struggle against the colonialists and racists and will always stand firmly on their side.

In order to wipe out all forms of colonialism on the African continent, consolidate national independence and attain social progress and prosperity, it is imperative to intensify the anti-imperialist, anti-colonialist struggle steadily.

Unless they are driven out, the imperialist aggressors will not give up their domination over the colonial and dependent countries. It is the
nature of imperialism to invade and plunder other countries.

The people must fight foreign imperialists to the end, upholding the banner of anti-imperialism and independence, and must completely eradicate traces of colonialism in all spheres of politics, the economy and culture. Only then will it be possible to achieve national independence and build an independent and prosperous, new society.

If the African peoples are to win ultimate victory in the struggle for decolonization, they must build up solidarity amongst peoples. Solidarity amongst peoples is a source of strength and a firm guarantee of victory. When the peoples of all the African countries fight resolutely in close unity, they will, sooner or later, drive the imperialists out of all parts of Africa to the last man, finally eliminate colonialism and build a new, independent and prosperous Africa, an Africa for Africans.

It is our firm belief that the African peoples will achieve ultimate victory in their struggle for decolonization.

**Question:** We know that President Senghor invited you to pay a return visit to Senegal. When will you honour our country with this visit?

**Answer:** I accepted the invitation of President Senghor with deep gratitude and remember my commitment to pay a visit to Senegal. I shall visit Senegal at an appropriate time to see for myself the successes achieved by the Senegalese people in their endeavours to build a new life and to learn good experiences from them.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I express the hope that the courageous and industrious Senegalese people will win a brilliant victory in their struggle against imperialism and for the building of a rich, powerful, independent and sovereign state, united closely around the Government of the Republic of Senegal headed by President Senghor.
TALK TO A PANAMANIAN JOURNALIST DELEGATION

September 1, 1974

On behalf of the Korean people and the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, I should like to extend a warm welcome to you.

You are the first Panamanian journalists to visit our country as guests, so we have received you as most distinguished guests, as we would a government delegation.

Your visit to our country will help greatly towards strengthening friendship and solidarity between the Korean and Panamanian peoples. It is my firm belief that your visit to our country will be a landmark in the more favourable development of relations between our two peoples.

Allow me to express my sincere thanks to you for coming to our country and inspiring our people in their struggle for national reunification and socialist construction. I am also grateful for the kind words you have said about our country, our people and me.

I am very happy to meet you envoys of the Panamanian people today and to become a close friend of yours.

You asked me a number of questions, which I am now going to answer briefly.

Let me begin with our educational policy.

Before explaining it, I should like to brief you on the historical conditions of our country. Then, I think, you will have a correct
understanding of our educational policy.

As you know, geographically ours is a small country situated between large countries. Its history is full of vicissitudes. The feudal rulers, obsessed with flunkeyism, did not think of developing the country; they were split into factions and engrossed in factional strife, each backed by a great power. They jostled for power, one faction supported by this great power and another by that one. Therefore, our people were not in a position to acquire political knowledge or scientific and technological knowledge to develop the country.

As a result of the factional strife of the corrupt and incompetent feudal rulers, our country was swallowed up by the Japanese imperialists in 1910 and our people were forced to live as colonial slaves for 36 years under Japanese imperialist rule.

Our people carried out a valiant struggle to shake off the colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists and liberate the homeland. Finally, in 1945 they vanquished Japanese imperialism and won national independence.

Through their almost half a century of bitter experience of colonial slavery, our people were firmly determined not to be deprived of the country by imperialists ever again. We are resolved to reunify the divided country by whatever means in our generation and build a rich and powerful country to hand on to posterity.

In order that the younger generation may not be oppressed and exploited by imperialism, we must bring them up to be dependable masters of their country.

Our country had very few cadres of its own in the past. In order to build a sovereign and independent state, a country must have its own cadres who serve their people, their nation. Cadres decide everything. A country cannot achieve prosperity and progress unless it trains its own cadres.

In order to build a rich, powerful and civilized country, it is also necessary to raise the political and cultural standards of the people as a whole. In particular, when a small country wants to secure political independence and achieve economic self-sufficiency and self-defence
in guarding the nation, its people must be politically aware and acquire highly developed science and technology.

Therefore, from the first days of liberation the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic defined the education of the people and the training of the nation’s cadres as the most important task in building a new society and they have directed enormous effort to this work.

We are primarily devoting our efforts to the education and training of our young people and children, although our country is still not well-off and faces many difficulties. We are dedicating everything for the future. Under the old colonial rule, we were deprived of the right to study and suffered untold hardships, so we are working hard to ensure that our rising generation lives happily, without such suffering. We are striving to bring them up to be full-fledged masters of a new society without exploitation and oppression.

In the education of our younger generation, we adhere to the policy of coordinating school, social and home education. We do not put the accent on school education only. It is true that schooling is of primary importance in the education of young people and children. However, it alone is not enough to educate young people completely. It is only when this is properly combined with social and home upbringing, that it is possible to educate our young people and children to be revolutionaries and excellent cadres serving the nation.

In school, social and home education, our Party, basing itself on the principles of socialist education, puts the main emphasis on training young people and children to develop a spirit of socialist patriotism, a spirit of opposing imperialism and ardently loving their socialist homeland. This is our main educational line.

In socialist education it is important to educate the younger generation to oppose imperialism and possess the attitude of masters towards revolution. It is also important to educate the rising generation to have an infinite love for their socialist homeland, to discard the antiquated and rotten elements of their nation’s cultural heritage and traditions and to develop good elements in keeping with the
requirements of the existing situation.

Socialist education also demands that the younger generation are educated to love work for the country and the people; to take loving care of all the wealth created by the people; and to strive to acquire the scientific knowledge and technology needed to build a good society.

In brief, the basic principle of socialist education is to educate people to be socialist patriots and men of a new communist type, utterly devoted to the country and the people, with the collectivist spirit of “One for all and all for one”.

What I have just said could be called the fundamental policy for educating our young people and children. If you read books written by us, I think, you will be able to ascertain more specifically our Party’s policy on the education of younger people.

By carrying through our Party’s educational policy our country has achieved many successes in educating the young people and children and in training the nation’s cadres.

We had few technical personnel of our own immediately after liberation. Today, however, we have 600,000 graduates from universities and colleges or from higher technical schools.

The Japanese imperialists in their day did not teach Koreans technology. Immediately after liberation our country had only a few dozen university graduates. During Japanese imperialist rule our country had just one university–in Seoul. Even this university had only literature and law faculties, but no technological faculty. So we had only a few lawyers and doctors but no scientists or technicians of our own.

After liberation we fostered and took good care of that small number of intellectuals. Although they came from wealthy families, they had an anti-imperialist consciousness and a national revolutionary spirit, because, while studying, they had been subjected to national discrimination by the Japanese imperialists. Therefore, we generously received and educated them to serve their nation and their people.

The intellectuals whom we educated took an active part in building a new country and did a considerable amount of work, particularly in
training the nation’s technicians. As a result, we have a large army of our own cadres today.

Using our own cadres, we now conduct education, manage factories and enterprises and run the state and society very well. We are very proud of this. This success which we have achieved is a brilliant victory for the correct educational policy of our Party and the Government of the Republic.

We shall work hard to implement our Party’s educational policy with greater thoroughness in the future.

A compulsory 11-year education is now in force in our country. It is a compulsory education of the highest form, comprising compulsory one-year preschool education and compulsory 10-year schooling.

By introducing compulsory 11-year education we are bringing up all members of the rising generation to be able builders of socialism and communism, equipped with a perfect knowledge of secondary schooling.

While paying particular attention to the education of the rising generation, we are also making a great effort to raise the working people’s level of general knowledge and their cultural and technological level.

The overwhelming majority of the adult population could not study science and technology in the past owing to the heinous colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists.

Older people who were denied the opportunity of receiving a systematic education before have now graduated from working people’s schools and are studying at working people’s middle schools which have been set up at factories and enterprises. We plan to equip all of them with knowledge above the level of middle school graduates.

We are also making sure that all the working people learn more than one skill. By doing this, we plan to rapidly raise our country’s level of science and technology which was previously low.

Working people and officials are subject to flunkeyism unless their scientific and technical level is high. If one falls behind others in science and technology, one naturally looks up to others and
idolizes developed countries.

If one fails to develop one’s national culture and art, one is forced to import foreign culture and art and cannot prevent the cultural penetration of imperialism. We strictly guard against the penetration into our country of all brands of decadent reactionary bourgeois culture and the way of life disseminated by the imperialists.

In order to prevent the cultural penetration of imperialism, it is necessary to create and develop Juche-based national culture and art. Juche-based national culture and art must be national in form and socialist in content and must effectively serve the masses of the people in their political and cultural life.

In raising the political and cultural level of society as a whole it is very important to educate cadres.

It is only when the political and ideological level and technical and practical level of cadres, the commanders of revolution, are high, that it is possible to press ahead with revolution and construction and solve the question of raising the cultural and technical level of all the working people satisfactorily.

I hear that you visited the University of National Economy yesterday. Our country has many such institutes of higher learning. There we train and re-educate officials of state and economic organs and management personnel of factories and enterprises.

Our country also has a Higher Party School which trains and re-educates Party workers, and there are communist universities in the provinces. In addition, there are schools to train officials of working people’s organizations, the University of International Affairs and military universities. As you see, in addition to ordinary universities and colleges, our country has many institutions of higher education to train and re-educate cadres for different spheres.

At these institutions of higher education, we arm our cadres with our Party’s revolutionary idea and policies and give them the knowledge needed to manage and operate state and economic organs, factories and enterprises in conformity with the specific conditions of our country.
Our country also has a system under which all the people study.

Our Party regards study as a revolutionary task. We have established a revolutionary habit of study whereby the entire Party, all the people and the whole army study under the motto: “Studying is the first and foremost task of revolutionaries.”

Our country has a system whereby all officials study at least two hours every day, after work. They also attend a lecture every Wednesday and study collectively for half a day on Saturdays. All cadres take refresher courses at school for one month a year while still retaining their positions.

Since the whole nation and all the people study in this way, our people’s political and ideological level and cultural and technical level are rising rapidly.

We are planning to increase the number of intellectuals to one million in the near future by intensifying school education and thoroughly establishing the system under which all the people study.

We are now striving to working-classize all our people. And we intend to turn them into intellectuals in the future. The intellectualization of the working people sounds like turning them into petty bourgeoisie. So we have seldom used this expression. But, today, by intellectuals we mean the revolutionary intellectuals of the working class, not the petty-bourgeois intellectuals as a sector of the old society. Therefore, when all the working people have been working-classized, we may use the word intellectualization, I think.

Our present educational policy makes the state responsible for the education of all the people. Therefore, our country has as many as 3.5 million children attending nurseries and kindergartens under the care of the state and society and 4.6 million students studying at schools of all levels from primary school to university. This means that more than half the population, in addition to those who study while on the job, receive education at state expense. Educating more than half the population at state expense involves vast expenditure. However, we do not regard this as a burden; we are proud of it. It is rather difficult for us at present, but the prospects are very bright.
Once educated by our Party, our people will never again be subjugated by the imperialists or return to a society where exploitation and oppression prevail. Nor will they take to flunkeyism. They will take part in socialist construction as masters with great national pride and confidence. Through the active struggle of our people our country will be turned into a more prosperous socialist state and the independent and peaceful reunification of the motherland will be achieved at all costs.

If I were to go into detail I could tell you much more about our educational policy. But now, basically, I think I have answered your question.

Now, on to the question of Korea’s reunification.

Our people have struggled for the country’s reunification for nearly 30 years ever since it was divided into north and south by the occupation of south Korea by the US imperialists.

The struggle for national reunification in our country is a struggle between patriots and traitors. We are working hard for the complete independence and reunification of the country, whereas the south Korean authorities are working to perpetuate the division, still leaving one half of the country to the imperialists. Reunification is patriotic and division is traitorous.

I do not intend to slander the south Korean authorities or dig into their past in your presence. But, to tell the truth, their treacheries began before liberation. When we were fighting the Japanese imperialist aggressors, the south Korean authorities betrayed the nation and served as officers in the Japanese imperialist army.

Today we cannot tolerate the south Korean authorities obstructing national reunification and selling south Korea to the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists. Our people will completely frustrate all moves of the partitionists and will surely win the cause of national reunification.

The stand taken by the Government of our Republic with regard to national reunification is clear. We hold that this issue must be solved independently on democratic principles by peaceful means without
any interference from outside. This is our unchanging position.

We have so far put forward numerous concrete proposals for an independent, peaceful solution of the question of the country’s reunification and made every possible effort for their implementation.

The most typical of our recent proposals is the five-point policy of national reunification published in June last year. The keynote of this policy is to eliminate the state of military confrontation and ease tension between the north and south; bring about multilateral collaboration and interchange between the two parts; convene a Great National Congress composed of representatives of people of all walks of life and representatives of political parties and social organizations in the north and south; institute a north-south Federation under the name of the Federal Republic of Koryo; and enter the UN under that name.

Our five-point policy for national reunification is a most just policy which correctly reflects the will and desire of all the Korean people; it is a most reasonable policy acceptable to anyone who really wants the country to be reunified. Therefore, all people throughout north and south Korea as well as broad sections of people throughout the world actively support and welcome our proposal.

The US imperialists, the Japanese militarists and the south Korean authorities, however, are violently opposed to our just proposal for national reunification.

The US imperialists and Japanese militarists are working to hamper the reunification of Korea and divide the north and south of our country into “two Koreas” permanently. This is because they can convert south Korea into their permanent military base and commodity market only by perpetuating the partition of our country.

Through the North-South Joint Statement of 1972, the south Korean authorities solemnly pledged to the whole nation that they would endeavour to reunify the country independently and peacefully. However, encouraged by the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists, they have gone back on this pledge and are taking the course of further intensifying their schemes to divide the nation.
Following the US imperialists’ “two Koreas” policy, they insist that the north and south of Korea should enter the UN separately. They mean to preserve and perpetuate the division of our nation.

The south Korean authorities are bent on their “two Koreas” scheme on the one hand and, on the other, intensifying the fascist repression of the south Korean people on an unprecedented scale. By doing this, they are attempting to prolong their crumbling ruling system, if only for a few more days.

These actions of the south Korean authorities can only encounter strong resistance from the people. Enraged at the schemes of the internal and external partitionists to perpetuate the split of the nation and the south Korean reactionaries’ manoeuvres for the spread of fascism, the south Korean people have valiantly risen in a struggle against them.

Last spring there was the “case of the National Federation of Youth and Students for Democracy” in south Korea, and this alone clearly shows how bravely the south Korean people are fighting.

Scared by the persistent struggle of the south Korean young people, students and people, the south Korean reactionaries suppressed it in a bestial fashion under the cloak of “anti-communism”. In a little more than three months from last April, the south Korean authorities arrested and imprisoned over 2,800 south Koreans of various social sections, including young people and students, and monstrously sentenced many of them to death on the absurd charge of being “communists”.

In south Korea today anyone who opposes the present south Korean rulers, whether he is a student, an intellectual or a religious man, is made a target of repression, a victim of “anti-communism”. As you know, the south Korean reactionaries arraigned the poet Kim Ji Ha before a military tribunal and sentenced him to life imprisonment on a charge of having written a poem against them. They put on trial and have been repressing Kim Dae Jung who ran for the “presidency” on the ticket of the New Democratic Party in the 1971 “presidential election”. They kidnapped him in Japan in broad daylight because he had opposed their treacherous policies. Recently the south Korean
reactionaries imprisoned a Catholic bishop named Ji Hak Sun.

At present the south Korean reactionaries are harshly punishing many people on charges of having connections with us. However, they have no connections whatsoever with us nor are they communists. They are patriots who demand the reunification of the country and the democratization of south Korean society; they are ordinary young people and students, intellectuals and religious people of south Korea.

It is not on our orders that the south Korean people and personalities from various social sections are combatting the south Korean reactionaries. As we always say, where there is oppression there will be resistance and where there is resistance there will be a popular revolutionary struggle. A revolutionary struggle is inevitable when the south Korean authorities are cruelly trampling down and repressing the people under the cloak of “anti-communism”.

The struggle being waged by the south Korean people today is a patriotic struggle to prevent a permanent split of the nation and accelerate the reunification of the country; it is a just struggle for the democratization of south Korean society.

A widespread movement is now under way in many countries to condemn the south Korean reactionaries for their cruel fascist suppression and to save the arrested and imprisoned young people, students and figures from various circles in south Korea. The press of the United States, Japan and other capitalist countries and even prime ministers of capitalist countries are protesting and denouncing the south Korean reactionaries’ fascist moves which run counter to the trend of the times.

We firmly support the south Korean people’s struggle against fascism and for democracy. We regard it as our noble national duty to support and encourage their patriotic struggle.

If the struggle against fascism and for democracy is crowned with victory and a democratic figure takes over power in south Korea, our people will be able to achieve the country’s reunification at an early date by means of establishing an all-Korean unified government with the united efforts of the socialist forces in the northern half of Korea.
and the democratic forces in south Korea.

Next, you asked me what influence the Juche idea can exert on the people’s struggle in the third world to achieve independence and social and economic progress. Let me answer it briefly.

It would be more correct to say that our Juche idea is evoking strong sympathy amongst the people of the world and, especially, amongst the peoples of the third world than to say that it exerts an influence on their revolutionary struggle.

Today the Juche idea is gaining great sympathy amongst many people of the world. I think this is primarily because this idea conforms with the aspirations of the world’s people for independence.

Ours is an era when peoples demand independence. Today even the peoples of capitalist countries, to say nothing of the socialist countries, want to take the road of independence and, especially, the people of the third world who were exploited and oppressed by the imperialists over a long period are advancing under the raised banner of independence.

The Juche idea is an idea we were the first to propound, proceeding from the requirements of the Korean revolution and basing ourselves on the experience of the Korean revolution. But it also fully accords with the aspirations of people the world over.

In my opinion, the Juche idea is also evoking a great response amongst the third world people, because it shows them the most correct way of building a new life.

Today the third world peoples are faced with the task of consolidating the national independence they have won and achieving prosperity for their countries. The principal question here is whether to take the road to capitalism or the road to socialism. If the third world countries take the road to capitalism, they may be enslaved again by the imperialists. This is why many countries of the third world are now aspiring to socialism.

If they are to take the road of socialism, it is necessary for the third world countries to learn from the experience of socialist countries. However, their experience is not entirely applicable to the third world countries. Therefore, if they want to follow the road to socialism, the
third world countries should apply the experience of socialist countries to suit the interests of their own peoples and their specific conditions. In other words, they must take the stand of Juche.

The Juche idea is an idea that the masters of revolution and construction are the masses of the people and that the motive force of revolution and construction also lies in the masses.

The masters of revolution in each country are its people. They should have the attitude of masters towards the revolution in their country and solve all problems arising in the course of revolution and construction by their own efforts in keeping with the interests of its people and the specific conditions of their country.

Our experience shows that it is very harmful to apply foreign experience mechanically in the building of socialism. This can be compared to the fact that food can be digested well only when one chews it well, but if one swallows it without chewing, one will suffer from indigestion. One chews food and swallows it if it suits one, but should spit it out if it does not. Likewise, one must accept foreign experience when it meets the interests of one’s people and the specific conditions of one’s country and must reject it when it does not.

When foreigners ask us to speak about our experience, we always say that our experience may not be applicable to the conditions prevailing in other countries and that, therefore, they must use it only for reference and acquire their own experience which will suit the specific conditions of their own countries.

It is not by any means easy for one to hold fast to independence in revolution and construction and work out a correct line and policies in conformity with the interests of one’s people and the specific conditions of one’s country.

Our people, taking the Juche idea as their compass, have thoroughly embodied the Juche idea in all political, economic, military and cultural spheres, and thereby won a great victory in the revolution and construction. This great victory won by our people in the building of a new life clearly proves the correctness and vitality of the Juche idea.

If the countries of the third world are to consolidate the national
independence which they have already won and firmly uphold independence in politics, they should achieve economic independence. In achieving their economic independence it is essential to strengthen economic and technical cooperation between them.

We maintain that the third world countries must not only unite politically but also cooperate in economic and technological spheres.

At present the third world countries are fighting hard to protect their natural resources. At the Special Session of the UN General Assembly on the Problem of Raw Materials and Development held some time ago, the third world countries acted in concert to protect their resources. The recent Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea held in Venezuela discussed the questions of a 200-mile limit for territorial and economic waters. It is very good that the third world people are struggling like this to protect the resources in their territory and territorial waters.

The developing countries of the third world must not only protect their resources from the imperialists’ plunder but also actively exploit and use their rich resources effectively for national prosperity and progress and for the improvement of the people’s lives. It is very important here for the third world countries to exchange each other’s good experience and technology and cooperate with each other in economic matters.

The third world countries not only possess abundant resources but also have plenty of experience and technology which can be exchanged.

As we said some time ago when we met Peruvian correspondents, the fish processing technique has been developed in Peru and we may learn from this. We may also learn about oil processing techniques from the Arab countries.

Our country also has good experiences and technology which can be passed on to other countries. For example, we can pass on our experience of irrigation to the third world countries. Agricultural irrigation has already been completed in our country. We are very proud of this.
Although the third world countries are on the road of development, each of them has some kinds of useful techniques.

Today there are over one hundred developing third world countries. If each of these countries exchanges one good experience and technique, it can have one hundred good experiences and techniques. If each of them exchanges ten, it can have 1,000 good experiences and techniques. Therefore, if the third world countries increase economic and technical cooperation, they can do tremendous things and achieve their economic independence in a short period, without relying on the great powers.

The third world countries must achieve economic independence quickly, as well as political independence, by strengthening economic and technical cooperation. In the past a few great powers lorded it over the world. But now the people of the third world who make up the vast majority of the world’s population must become masters of the world.

Lastly, I should like to refer to the stand of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea with regard to the struggle of the Panamanian people to secure complete and practical sovereignty and legitimate rights in the Panama Canal and the Canal Zone.

The DPRK Government and the Korean people fully support the Panamanian people’s struggle to put an end to the US imperialist occupation of the Panama Canal and the Canal Zone and win complete and practical sovereignty and legitimate rights.

The Panamanian people have waged a persistent struggle to regain the Panama Canal and the Canal Zone. In particular, the Panamanian people are now waging an energetic mass struggle to terminate the US imperialists’ colonial domination and plunder of the Panama Canal and the Canal Zone and achieve their legitimate rights.

The Panamanian people’s struggle to win their sovereignty and legitimate rights in the Panama Canal and the Canal Zone is a just struggle to guarantee their territorial integrity and defend their national sovereignty and national dignity.

In the name of the Korean people, we express firm solidarity with the Panamanian people in their righteous struggle.
Geographically Korea and Panama are far apart, but the Korean people have always followed with keen interest the Panamanian people’s struggle.

Since General Omar Torrijos Herrera took power in 1968, the Government of the Republic of Panama has been introducing progressive policies which accord with the interests of the Panamanian people.

The Government of the Republic of Panama has taken a number of measures—agrarian reform, democratization of the educational system, nationalization of power industries, organization of agricultural cooperatives, and restriction on the profits of US imperialist monopolies and large local capitalists. All these measures are very progressive ones to defend national independence and sovereignty and achieve the prosperity of the country.

In particular, it is very good that the Panamanian people are demanding independence. This shows that our two peoples have common ideas and standpoints. The Government of the Republic of Panama claims a 200-mile sea limit. This position is identical with ours.

We support all the revolutionary steps taken by the Government of the Republic of Panama and the brave struggle of the Panamanian people.

We also fully support and highly value the independent policies pursued by General Omar Torrijos Herrera.

Our people regard the Panamanian people’s victory as their own. The DPRK Government and the Korean people are firmly convinced that the courageous Panamanian people will win complete national sovereignty and independence at an early date, rallied closely around General Omar Torrijos Herrera.

The US imperialists are now encroaching not only on the Panamanian people’s independence and sovereignty but also on the Korean people’s independence and sovereignty.

The Korean people and the Panamanian people are struggling against a common enemy and fighting for the common goal and ideal.
The Korean people will always stand firmly by the fighting Panamanian people in the battle against the common enemy and give support and encouragement to the Panamanian people in their just struggle.

I hope that our two peoples will further cement friendship and solidarity and advance shoulder to shoulder in the joint struggle against imperialism.

That concludes my answers to your questions. Thank you for your kind attention.

Yours is a mission that has built a rainbow bridge of friendship between the peoples of Korea and Panama. Once again I warmly welcome your visit to our country.

Let us work together to see that more frequent visits take place between our two peoples in the future.

I hope that you will visit our country again.
Question: What would you say, Mr. President Kim Il Sung, to the Argentinian and Latin-American peoples who have embarked on the road of liberation?

Answer: Latin America is today the scene of fierce struggle waged in various forms under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence to achieve the independent development of the country and protect national interests and dignity. Many Latin-American peoples including the Argentinian people are fiercely resisting the imperialist policies of political and economic subjugation and plunder. They are stoutly defending their political sovereignty, national resources and territorial waters limits, striking heavy blows at the imperialists. Latin America once called the “hereditary estate” and “quiet backyard” of US imperialism is now turning into a revolutionary continent advancing under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence.

The valiant struggle of the Argentinian and Latin-American peoples has driven the imperialist aggressors into deep waters making it impossible for them to hold out in Latin America any longer. Today the imperialists find it hard to oppress and plunder the Latin-American peoples at will.
The struggle being waged at present by the Argentinian and Latin-American peoples under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence is a just struggle to protect national independence and sovereignty and achieve the prosperity and development of their countries, a valiant struggle striking a deadly blow at the imperialists. An integral part of the great revolutionary fight of the peoples of the third world, this struggle greatly helps to hasten the doom of imperialism.

The Korean people highly appreciate the struggle of the Argentinian and Latin-American peoples against the imperialists’ domination and interference and in defence of their national sovereignty, natural resources and sea limits and extend strong solidarity to them. Our people will always stand firmly on their side and render every possible support and encouragement to them in their just struggle.

**Question:** Mr. President Kim Il Sung, how important do you think it is to strengthen political unity and economic, technological and cultural cooperation between the countries of the third world in our time, and between Argentina and the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea in particular?

**Answer:** The third world which has just taken its place in the arena of history, constitutes a powerful anti-imperialist revolutionary force of our time. It is of great importance at the present time to strengthen the militant solidarity and cooperation of the countries included in this world.

It is important, firstly, because when their political unity and economic, technological and cultural cooperation is strengthened, they will be able to strangle and destroy the imperialists.

The countries of the third world have rich oil and other natural resources, and the imperialists depend on these countries for almost all the raw materials they need. The imperialists boast that without their aid the third world would be unable to exist. The contrary is the case; they find themselves unable to exist without relying on the material
resources of the third world. Unless they pillage and rely on the third world’s natural resources, the imperialists cannot live for one single moment. Consequently, if the peoples of the third world unite closely and bring pressure to bear on the imperialists, they can bring them to their knees. This was proved clearly last year when the Arab countries placed an embargo on the export of oil and caused a serious economic crisis in the Western world.

If the third world countries strengthen their political unity and economic, technical and cultural cooperation, they can break up the old order and introduce a new one into the international arena; the people who were once oppressed and humiliated can play the role of master in their own right on the world scene.

Under the old international order the imperialist powers could decide and settle international issues unilaterally to their own advantage. This old order conflicts with the trend of the present times and, in particular, runs counter to the aspirations and desires of the peoples of the third world. That is why the countries of the third world are now waging a united struggle to establish a new international order.

The recent Special Session of the UN General Assembly on the Problem of Raw Materials and Development was a great step forward in the campaign to change, in the interests of the third world peoples, the international order with regard to raw materials and development which had ignored the interests of those peoples. At the Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea held in Venezuela the third world countries made a concerted effort in favour of 200-mile territorial waters and dealt the sinister designs of the imperialists a telling blow.

The struggle of the third world peoples to abolish the old international order is a noble one to control and carve out their own destinies which were once left to the mercy of the imperialists. If the third world countries fight on in unity, they can topple the old order under which the imperialist powers settled international issues in their own favour and establish a new international order; they can solve all problems in keeping with the will and interests of the peoples of the third world and of peace-loving people.
If the countries of the third world strengthen their political unity and economic, technical and cultural cooperation, they can catch up with the advanced countries quickly and frustrate the imperialists’ colonial enslavement policy and economic encroachment.

The third world countries do not only possess rich natural resources. They also have a great deal of valuable experience and techniques which they can exchange between themselves. There are now over 100 developing countries in the third world. If they offer just a handful of good experience and techniques to each other, they will be able to accumulate a great deal. Therefore, if they strengthen economic and technical cooperation and cultural exchange, they will be able to develop the economy, culture, science and technology rapidly in a short time without turning to the great powers.

Once the third world countries achieve political unity and cooperate closely in the economy, technology and culture, they can demonstrate great power and will find that nothing is beyond them. Providing they support and cooperate with one another and take vigorous steps to build a new life, they will quickly become rich and prosperous, independent and sovereign states and make a tangible contribution to mankind’s progress and emancipation.

Every effort is being made by the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Korean people to strengthen their solidarity and cooperation with the peoples of the third world. As in the past, the Korean people will also give support and encouragement in the future to their anti-imperialist revolutionary struggle and will do everything to strengthen militant solidarity and cooperation with them.

**Question:** Mr. President, you opened an embassy in Argentina when diplomatic relations were established between Argentina and the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea. Will you kindly explain the primary task of the embassy and the prospects for developing relations between the two countries?

**Answer:** Although geographically Korea and Argentina are far
apart, the peoples of our two countries built up friendly relations
during the struggle for a new society, a new life, waged under the
banner of anti-imperialism and independence.

The establishment of diplomatic relations between the Democratic
People’s Republic of Korea and the Republic of Argentina was a
milestone in strengthening and developing friendship and cooperation
between our two peoples.

Today the friendship and cooperation of our two peoples is
progressing favourably. Both the Korean and Argentinian peoples
were oppressed and exploited in the past by the imperialists, and today
they are fighting for a common goal. This promotes good mutual
understanding and close cooperation. At present there are frequent
mutual visits and an exchange of valuable experience between our two
peoples. This is very good indeed.

You asked about the primary task of our embassy in Argentina. It is
to strengthen and develop the militant solidarity and the relations of
friendship and cooperation which exist between the peoples of Korea
and Argentina, and make them more enduring.

We are pleased that the solidarity, friendship and cooperation
between the Korean and Argentinian peoples are developing as time
passes. We will make every effort in future for their further
consolidation and promotion. The friendship and cooperation between
Korea and Argentina will develop ever more favourably in future in all
fields of politics, the economy and culture.

**Question:** Mr. President Kim Il Sung, you always say that Korea should
be reunified, but south Korea and the United States claim that you do not want
national reunification.

What can you say about this?

**Answer:** When our country was first divided into the north and the
south by foreign forces we made reunification our supreme national
task, and have waged a tireless struggle to attain this goal. On more
than 150 occasions the Government of our Republic put forward
reasonable proposals for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country and made every effort to get them accepted. This fact alone is enough to show how earnestly we desire national reunification and how much we are doing to achieve it.

The very opposite is the case with the US imperialists and south Korean reactionaries. They are against reunification and seek the permanent division of Korea. They intend by all means to create “two Koreas” so as to keep our country divided permanently.

After liberation the US imperialists occupied south Korea illegally and, using it as their base, have constantly undertaken aggressive moves to seize the whole of Korea. Finding it impossible to achieve this aggressive design, the US imperialists have now come out with the “two Koreas” policy with the object of keeping a grip on south Korea at least as a permanent colony and military base for aggression, thus throwing a new and serious obstacle in the way of our people’s struggle for reunification.

In an attempt to prolong their ruling system which is being shaken to its very foundation, for even a short time, the south Korean reactionaries are giving their blessing to the “two Koreas” policy of the US imperialists and doggedly obstructing national reunification. In order to satisfy their lust for power and revel in luxury and glory, the south Korean authorities do not hesitate to take the traitorous step of selling the country and people to foreign aggressors.

Progressive people everywhere who cherish justice and truth are well aware who in Korea desire reunification and who are seeking division, who are the true patriots fighting actively for the reunification of the divided country and who are the quislings opposed to reunification and scheming to perpetuate the division.

It is our firm conviction that as time passes more and more people in the world will come to understand clearly the sincere efforts being made by the Government of our Republic and the Korean people to win national reunification and will give strong support and encouragement to our people.

I take this opportunity to extend profound thanks to the Government
and people of Argentina who actively subscribed to our just liberation struggle during the Fatherland Liberation War in the past and who today, without heeding the false propaganda of the US imperialists and the south Korean reactionaries, are positively upholding our people’s revolutionary cause of independent, peaceful reunification.

**Question:** We believe that the Juche idea can be applied to Latin America, too. Mr. President Kim Il Sung, as the author of the Juche idea, what do you think?

**Answer:** The ideology the people of each country adopt as their guide to action and apply in their practical activities is something that must be decided as they themselves wish.

The Juche idea is the guiding ideology of the Korean revolution formulated by us in conformity with the requirements of this revolution and on the basis of its historical experience. All the lines and policies of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of our Republic are based on the Juche idea and embody it. The correctness and vitality of the Juche idea have been fully confirmed in the whole course of our revolution and construction. The Korean people have adopted the Juche idea as the only guiding principle of the Korean revolution, and have unshakable faith in it.

There is great response to the Juche idea today not only amongst the Korean people but also amongst many peoples of the world, particularly the peoples of the third world. This, I think, is because the Juche idea coincides with the common aspirations and desires of those peoples calling for independence. If the peoples of Latin America also feel attracted to the Juche idea, this will be for the same reason.

The Korean people and the peoples of Latin America have many things in common. All suffered from the aggression and plunder of the imperialists in the past, and waged a long, hard struggle for national liberation and independence. Today too, they are fighting against the imperialists’ moves of aggression and intervention and are striving under the banner of independence to build a new society free from
exploitation and oppression. It is natural that the Korean people and the peoples of Latin America who suffered the same fate in the past and who have common fighting goals and aspirations today should have a similar revolutionary ideology, the same thoughts and feelings.

You said that the Juche idea could be applied to Latin America too. I consider that the question of whether or not the Latin-American peoples apply the Juche idea to the revolution and construction in their own countries has to be decided entirely by the Latin-American peoples themselves.

One thing I should like to emphasize here is that the Juche idea and the specific experience of the Korean revolution obtained in the course of its application cannot be made to fit all other continents and peoples. Conditions vary in different countries; so people should settle all problems to suit the specific conditions of their own country and the requirements of their own revolution. The Juche idea too, I believe, will display its superiority and vitality to the full only when the people of each country apply it creatively from an independent standpoint.

**Question:** Mr. President Kim Il Sung, what do you think is your greatest experience in guiding the revolution and construction?

**Answer:** The most important experience gained in directing the revolution and construction is that thorough establishment of Juche is the decisive guarantee of all victories and successes in the revolution and construction.

In the whole course of guiding the revolution and construction of the Korean people we have striven untiringly to establish Juche thoroughly in all fields.

Establishing Juche means adopting the attitude of master towards the revolution and construction. In other words, it means taking an independent stand to settle one’s problems on one’s own responsibility without a feeling of dependence on others by displaying a revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, and taking the creative position of solving the problems posed by the revolution and construction to suit
the conditions of one’s own country.

In directing the revolution and construction we have always mapped out all our lines and policies as we see fit in keeping with the interests of our people and our revolution; we have adhered to the principle of settling all problems of the revolution and construction on our own responsibility and by our own efforts on the principle of self-reliance. We have upheld the principle of applying the general principles of Marxism-Leninism and the experience of other countries creatively to fit the historical conditions and national peculiarities of our country, instead of accepting them intact.

In establishing Juche we made it a priority to equip the masses of working people thoroughly with the Juche idea. As a result, our people have thrown off subservience to the great powers and dogmatism; their national pride and consciousness of independence have risen; and their spirit of self-reliance has become more pronounced. Now that the working masses are equipped with the Juche idea and tackle their work as masters steadily on the Juche standpoint, they have performed wonders and introduced innovations in the course of the revolution and construction.

While establishing Juche in ideology, we have at the same time thoroughly applied the Juche idea in practice in all spheres of the revolution and construction.

Applied to the political field, the Juche idea is our Party’s independent line.

Our Party has adhered to the principle of resolving all problems of the revolution and construction creatively from our own viewpoint to suit the people’s interests and the actual conditions prevailing in our country.

In foreign activities too, our Party has firmly maintained independence. We have developed friendship and cooperation with other countries, both large and small, on the principles of complete equality and mutual respect, and have conducted all our foreign activities on our own judgement and conviction in keeping with our own situation.
Our Party’s line of building an independent economy is a manifestation of the Juche idea in the field of economic construction.

We have maintained the principle of developing the national economy primarily with our own techniques, materials and cadres and by the efforts of our people, and by displaying a revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. In this way, a comprehensively developed independent national economy equipped with modern technology has been built, and our once backward colonial agrarian country has been transformed into a socialist industrial state.

In building up our national defences a policy of self-defence has been consistently followed. With the implementation of our Party’s military line of self-defence, our country now commands a mighty defence power capable of crushing any invader and of firmly protecting the gains of the revolution and the people’s security.

By establishing fully Juche in ideology and applying the Juche idea thoroughly to all fields of the revolution and construction, our country has become a developed socialist state with full political sovereignty, a powerful independent national economy, a vast defence potential and flourishing national culture.

Furthermore, experience gained in the guidance of the revolution and construction shows that it is very important to follow the mass line steadfastly.

The masses of the people are the masters of the revolution and construction and possess the power to drive them forward. Success in the revolution and construction depends on the active participation and conscious enthusiasm and creative initiative of the masses, the masters.

For this reason our Party has paid the greatest attention to the implementation of the revolutionary mass line in guiding the revolution and construction.

Our Party has always adhered to the principle of carrying out the revolutionary tasks in hand by believing in the strength of the masses and enlisting them. Our Party has carried out its revolutionary tasks by going to the masses, explaining the Party line and policy to them and bringing into play their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activity.
Sometimes a big obstacle or ordeal has arisen in the building of socialism; then, too, we put our faith in the working masses and called on them, and consulted them about ways of overcoming the difficulty and introducing innovations. In this way the working masses grasped the Party’s intentions and launched a movement of collective innovation to carry out the Party’s line and policies.

Indeed, there is no limit to the strength and wisdom of the working masses. Once they are aroused to action, nothing is beyond their power. By enlisting their keen revolutionary ardour and creative activity, we have been able to fulfil all the enormous and difficult tasks of the revolution and construction successfully. A secret of our notable success in the revolution and construction lies precisely in the fact that we solved all problems by the revolutionary method of relying on the masses and rousing broad sections of them to action.

All our victories represent a tremendous victory for our Party’s Juche idea, and a brilliant victory for our Party’s revolutionary mass line.

Our experience shows that however far a nation lagged behind in the past, once it establishes Juche firmly in its thinking, applies it profoundly to all fields of the revolution and construction and mobilizes the creative enthusiasm and talents of the masses of the people correctly, it can rapidly build a new, rich and powerful society and achieve the prosperity of the country and the people.
I am grateful to you for visiting our country and attending the celebrations of the anniversary of the founding of our Republic. You have helped to enrich our festive day by joining us in our national holiday celebrations.

Last year you visited our country and on your return home worked extensively to introduce our country and make it known. On this visit, you are again firmly supporting and encouraging our people in their just struggle. I express my thanks for this.

You have asked a number of questions which I am now going to answer.

First, I shall speak briefly about the development of relations between Korea and Dahomey and about the unity of the third world countries.

The Korean and Dahomeyan peoples have supported and cooperated with each other and established friendly relations in the struggle to defend their sovereignty against imperialism and colonialism.

In particular, the establishment of diplomatic relations between the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the Military Revolutionary Government of Dahomey in February 1973 was an epoch-making event in furthering the relations of friendship
and cooperation between our two countries.

Since the opening of diplomatic relations between Korea and Dahomey, the Government and people of Dahomey have supported our people’s cause of national reunification even more. Dahomey supports our draft resolution on the Korean question at the current UN General Assembly session.

We are very satisfied with this. We should like you to convey our warm thanks to your Head of State, Foreign Minister and other government leaders on your return home.

As you said, there is still much to be done to promote friendly and cooperative relations between Korea and Dahomey still further.

I consider it necessary, first and foremost, for the peoples of Korea and Dahomey to support and cooperate more closely with each other in the political sphere.

Previously our two peoples were oppressed and exploited by the imperialists, and today they are working to build a new society with a common goal. Because of their common position in the past and their common fighting goal at present, our two peoples can support and cooperate closely with each other on the principles of genuine equality and reciprocity.

From now onwards they should visit each other frequently, exchange many valuable experiences and support and encourage each other in their just cause. This will enable us to deepen our mutual understanding and increase friendship.

The DPRK Government and the Korean people will always support and encourage the Dahomeyan people in their just struggle to build a new life.

In order to strengthen friendship between the peoples of Korea and Dahomey it is necessary to effect active economic and technical cooperation while supporting and inspiring each other politically.

Closer economic and technical cooperation is of great importance in promoting friendship among nations. The DPRK Government will continue to strive to increase its economic and technical cooperation with the Republic of Dahomey.
Strengthening economic interchange and technical cooperation between the once oppressed and exploited nations of the third world on the principle of meeting each other’s needs is a major guarantee for developing their economy rapidly without the help of the great powers and for building prosperous, powerful, sovereign and independent states. The third world countries must not only unite politically, but also cooperate closely in all spheres of the economy, technology and culture.

The imperialists and colonialists have succumbed to the pressure and struggle of many peoples and have recognized the national independence of many of them, but their evil ambitions remain unchanged. Through their neo-colonialist policy, they are scheming to subjugate the newly independent countries once again.

As you have yourselves experienced, the imperialists and colonialists frequently carry out subversive activities to subjugate the newly independent countries again. In this situation the third world countries must strengthen their militant unity and cooperation to consolidate the national independence which they have already won and achieve prosperity quickly. In order to do this, it is very important for them to increase their economic and technical cooperation and interchange.

Each of the third world countries has good experience and some techniques which can be exchanged between them.

As we said some time ago when we met Peruvian journalists, Peru has a developed technique of fish processing, which we can learn. We think there are good experience and techniques which we can learn from Dahomey, too.

Our country also has good experiences and techniques which can be passed on to other countries. Among them is its experience in irrigation. Our farms are well irrigated. We are very proud of this. We can pass on our experience in irrigation to the third world countries.

There are now more than one hundred countries belonging to the third world. If each of these countries passes on one good experience and technique, they will acquire more than one hundred good
experiences and techniques. This exchange alone will enable the third world countries to solve major problems. At present these countries rely upon the great powers mainly in two respects—finance and technology. If the third world countries increase economic and technical cooperation, teaching and aiding each other, they will achieve prosperity without having to rely upon the big powers.

Our country’s experience shows that nothing is impossible when a people unite and pool their efforts.

Our postwar situation was very difficult. Everything in our country was reduced to ashes during the war. In this situation, the people could not go on living unless they pooled their efforts. Therefore, we decided to embark upon agricultural cooperativization despite the fact that national industrialization had not yet been achieved. Our agricultural cooperatives were first organized with poor peasants. Although there were no modern machines, great power was generated as the peasants combined their efforts, and the advantages of the cooperative economy were clearly demonstrated. Our agricultural irrigation was also carried out by pooling the efforts of the peasants.

Of course, this is the experience of one country—our country. However, it shows that even a poor people can display great strength and take on a tremendous undertaking once they combine their efforts. I think that this is an experience which could also be applied on an international scale.

If the third world countries unite and pool their efforts, they can undertake an enormous amount of work and develop their economy, culture, science and technology rapidly.

The third world countries must not confine themselves to the fight to protect their resources; they must strengthen economic and technical cooperations so as to build rich and powerful countries as soon as possible. In the past a few great powers lorded it over the world. But, now, the third world peoples must be masters of the world.

The DPRK Government regards it as an important principle of its foreign policy to unite with the third world countries and increase economic and technical cooperation with them.
As in the past, so in the future, the Government of our Republic and the Korean people will strive to unite with the third world peoples and promote economic and technical cooperation with them, holding high the banner of anti-imperialism and independence.

Now, I shall deal briefly with our stand regarding the African peoples fighting for their liberation.

On the African continent today, the people are waging a fierce struggle to wipe out the last remnants of colonialism and build a new society, under the banner of independence. Many African peoples who suffered imperialist and colonialisr oppression in the past have already won independence and embarked upon the road of independent progress. And they are playing an important role in the international arena.

In particular, the national-liberation struggle to break the chains of colonialism and achieve national independence is now gaining momentum as never before on the African continent. The peoples of Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique and Angola have struck decisive blows at the Portuguese colonialists and won great victories through their protracted armed struggles.

On the African continent the system of imperialist colonial rule is crumbling at last in face of the fierce national-liberation struggle of the African peoples. Through this struggle the Africans are becoming increasingly aware and growing into a great revolutionary force.

The African peoples’ struggle against imperialism and colonialism is a just struggle to achieve national independence and build a new society by freeing themselves from the yoke of imperialism; it is a noble struggle to cut the last lifeline of imperialism and colonialism. Their righteous liberation struggle is now contributing largely to carrying out the great task of the worldwide anti-imperialist revolution.

We are firmly convinced that by waging vigorous battles in solid unity under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence, the African peoples will build an Africa free from imperialism and colonialism, a free and prosperous new Africa.

The DPRK Government and the Korean people regard supporting
and encouraging the people’s struggle for freedom and liberation as an important principle of their foreign policy and a noble internationalist duty.

In the name of the DPRK Government and the Korean people, I strongly support the African peoples’ struggle to win national independence, sweep away the remnants of colonialism and achieve the independent development of their countries, and express firm militant solidarity with them.

You asked me to explain the Juche idea, the factor behind the brilliant successes achieved by our people in socialist construction. Many of our writings about the Juche idea have already been published, so I think there is no need to go into detail.

As you rightly pointed out, the Juche idea is the decisive factor enabling our people to achieve brilliant successes in the struggle for building a new life.

The Juche idea is the idea that guides the Korean revolution; it is the firm guiding principle in our people’s struggle to construct socialism and communism. The line and policies of our Party are all based on the Juche idea and embody this idea. By arming themselves firmly with the Juche idea and working on this idea as the sole guiding principle, our people were able to eliminate the aftermath of imperialist colonial rule and centuries-old backwardness and bring about great social and economic changes in a very short period.

The Juche idea is the idea that the masters of the revolution and construction are the masses of the people and that they are also the motive force of the revolution and construction. In other words, it is the idea that one is responsible for one’s own destiny and that one has also the capacity for shaping it.

The masters of revolution and construction are the working masses. They can only crush the aggressors and oppressors, win freedom and liberation and build a bountiful and cultured new life through their own struggle.

The working masses are able to transform nature and society. It is they who conquer nature and create the material wealth and it is also
they who overthrow the old society and build the new. The working masses are the strongest and wisest beings in the world.

The revolution and construction constitute the struggle of the working masses to enjoy independent and creative lives as true masters of nature and society, freed from all forms of subjugation, and are their task to work out their own destiny. When the working masses rise in a struggle to shape their destiny with the knowledge that they are the masters of revolution, they can display inexhaustible wisdom and creativity and advance the revolution and construction extremely quickly. This is the very reason why the Juche idea calling for the participation of the working masses in revolution and construction as masters, conscious of being the masters of revolution, constitutes the motive force that powerfully propels our people’s struggle for the building of a new life, and is the guiding principle which firmly guarantees all victories for our people.

You asked me how the Juche idea is being applied in socialist construction. I will say a few words about it.

In applying the Juche idea it is important to carry out the principles of Juche in ideology, independence in politics, self-sufficiency in the economy and self-defence in guarding the nation.

All man’s activities are governed by his ideological consciousness. Therefore, in order to give full play to the conscious enthusiasm and creative initiative of the working masses in socialist construction, it is necessary, first of all, to solve the question of guiding the working masses to take part in the revolution and construction as masters, conscious of being the masters of revolution. That is to say, the question of establishing Juche in ideology.

Our Party has directed and is directing primary attention to arming the working masses solidly with the Juche idea and leading them to participate in the revolution and construction as masters, firmly maintaining the stand of Juche.

If they are to become the real masters of their destiny, each nation must have an independent government and firmly adhere to independence in politics. Your Head of State stresses political
independence, and I think he is quite right. Each people should decide all their line and policies in conformity with the interests of the revolution of their country and its specific conditions. A government acting under pressure or on the orders of others cannot be regarded as a government which is responsible for its people’s destiny. In fact, a country which lacks political independence cannot be regarded as an independent, sovereign state.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic are developing political relations with foreign countries on the principles of complete equality and mutual respect, and are strictly adhering to the principle of solving all questions arising in socialist construction to suit the interests of our people and the specific conditions of our country, according to our own judgement. In drawing on foreign experiences, too, we maintain the principle of selecting only those suited to the interests of our revolution and our people and applying them to meet our country’s specific situation. In other words, the principle we adhere to is this: we chew something and if it suits our taste, we swallow it, but if not, we spit it out.

In addition to political independence, it is likewise important to maintain a self-sufficient economy. The economy is the material basis of social life. To have full political independence, it is imperative to be economically self-reliant, and to achieve economic self-reliance it is necessary to build a national economy developed in a diversified way, with its own solid raw material base and equipped with modern technology. We have turned our once backward colonial agrarian country into a socialist industrial state with the solid foundations of an independent economy in a very short time by carrying through the line of building an independent economy—a line of constructing an economy which enables us to manage the economic affairs of the country and of the people by ourselves using our own resources, technology and our people’s labour.

Self-defence in guarding the nation is an indispensable requirement of an independent, sovereign state. A country without its own defence power capable of safeguarding the sovereignty of the country and the
security of the people from imperialist aggression cannot be called a completely independent, sovereign state. We have built impregnable defences capable of firmly protecting the country’s security and sovereignty by holding fast to the line of self-defence in guarding the nation and by working hard to turn the People’s Army into a cadre army, modernize it, place all the people under arms and convert the whole country into a fortress.

If the countries liberated from the colonial yoke are to build independent and sovereign states, they must firmly maintain the line of independence in politics, self-sufficiency in economic affairs and self-defence in guarding the nation. Otherwise, they could be subjugated once again by the imperialists.

This is clearly borne out by the situation in the northern and southern halves of our divided country, which are taking different roads.

South Korea which has followed a road of dependence on outside forces, not a road of independence, has been completely subordinated to the US and Japanese imperialists.

South Korea, which receives a large amount of “aid” from the US imperialists, is now in debt to the tune of 6,000-7,000 million dollars to other countries. Because of such heavy debts, it can only be subjugated by the imperialists. If the US imperialists were to stop giving money, south Korea could not even maintain its army now. That is why the south Korean authorities are begging for the permanent presence of US troops in south Korea.

How can south Korea as it is, be called an independent state? It is a “state” in name only; in fact, it is not a state. South Korea is a foreign military base and commodity market and a dependent “state” caught in the noose of neo-colonialism.

Because south Korea has no independent national economy, the people’s lives are very hard. In south Korea there are millions of unemployed and the vast majority of the population are going about hungry and in rags. According to south Koreans, south Korean society is a society where “the rich get ever richer and the poor ever poorer.” This means that a tiny handful of wealthy people live better and better,
whereas the poor, the overwhelming majority of the people, grow still poorer. How can we say that the south Korean authorities, who are subjecting the people to misery, have a national conscience?

Unlike south Korea, the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea which adheres strictly to the line of independence is a proud independent state with complete political independence, an independent national economy and a self-reliant defence potential. Our country which has the solid foundations of an independent national economy owes nothing to anyone. This is your second visit to our country, so you are well aware that in our country there is no such thing as “rich people getting richer and poor people poorer”. In our country all the people are equally prosperous and everyone works to the best of his ability, studies free of charge and enjoys the benefits of free medical care without any worry about food, clothing and housing.

The completely different situations in the northern and southern halves of our country were caused by the different policies followed by the north and the south. Our country’s situation shows that if the newly independent countries take the road of relying on outside forces, they may be subordinated again to the imperialists whereas if they advance along the road of independence, they can protect their independence and achieve national prosperity. In order to ensure the independent development of their countries without falling into the trap of neo-colonialism, the peoples of the third world must firmly adhere to the revolutionary line of independence in politics, economic self-sufficiency and self-defence in guarding the nation.

We can say that the history of the glorious revolutionary struggle waged by our people under the leadership of our Party is the course of struggle to establish Juche in ideology, independence in politics, self-sufficiency in the economy and self-defence in national security. The correctness of the Juche idea and its great strength have already been clearly proved through our people’s revolutionary practice.

Just as they have embodied the Juche idea in the past, thereby achieving great successes in socialist construction, so our Party and people will thoroughly embody this idea in the future, too, and press
ahead more vigorously with the building of socialism and communism in our country.

Now, let me touch briefly on the question of our country’s reunification.

The reunification of their divided country is the supreme national desire of all the Korean people and an urgent task whose implementation brooks no delay. All the people in the northern and southern halves of our country eagerly desire national reunification and are waging a vigorous struggle for the independent and peaceful reunification of their motherland.

The DPRK’s position with regard to the question of national reunification is already known widely to the world. We hold that the question of national reunification should be solved independently by the Korean people themselves in a peaceful manner on democratic principles, free from any interference by outside forces. This is the firm stand always maintained by the Government of our Republic in the struggle for national reunification.

In order to achieve the independent and peaceful reunification of the motherland an end must be put first of all to all kinds of outside interference in Korea.

The US imperialists have occupied south Korea by force of arms for nearly 30 years ever since the liberation of our country from the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism and have been wantonly meddling in our internal affairs. This is the main obstacle to our country’s reunification and the root cause of all the misfortunes and sufferings of our nation. The prerequisite for the country’s independent, peaceful reunification and the unanimous demand of all the Korean people is that the US imperialist army of aggression be driven from south Korea which they occupy in the disguise of “UN forces” and that the US imperialist interference in the internal affairs of our country be halted.

The outside force linked with US imperialism in interfering in our internal affairs is Japanese militarism. With the aim of reducing south Korea to a commodity market and a colony the Japanese militarists are
faithfully following the US imperialists’ “two Koreas” policy and viciously scheming to re-invade our country. Therefore, in order to achieve Korea’s independent reunification, the US imperialist army of aggression must be driven out of south Korea and, at the same time, the Japanese militarist re-invasion of south Korea must be completely frustrated.

In order to end outside interference in the domestic affairs of our country, the south Korean reactionaries must stop relying on foreign forces and committing treason to the country and nation. If they had not relied on outside forces and had not persisted in their treachery, the US imperialists would have already been forced out of south Korea by the united efforts of the Korean people in the north and south and foreign interference in our internal affairs would have been brought to an end long ago.

To reunify the divided country in a peaceful manner according to democratic principles, south Korean society must be democratized. In that way, the people’s democratic rights and liberties must be guaranteed and all political parties, social organizations and individuals must be given freedom of political activity in south Korea.

Reunifying the country in a peaceful manner following democratic principles means achieving national reunification by setting up a unified central government through democratic north-south general elections in accordance with the free will of all the Korean people in north and south. But since harsh fascist rule prevails and democracy is totally trampled underfoot in south Korea now, how can the south Korean people express their views freely, how can democratic north-south general elections be held? The democratization of south Korean society is an important condition for reunifying the divided country by peaceful means on democratic principles, and it is most urgently demanded by the south Korean people.

From the first day of national division, we set forth a number of reasonable proposals and worked tirelessly to reunify the motherland through our own efforts, by peaceful means on democratic principles. Thanks to the consistent and sincere efforts of our Party and the
Government of the Republic, a dialogue was started between north and south, and the North-South Joint Statement was published in July 1972, in which our fundamental stand with regard to national reunification was set out.

The publication of the North-South Joint Statement, the keynote of which is the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity proposed by us, and the start of negotiations between north and south, were a milestone in our people’s fight for national reunification. Therefore, all the Korean people in north and south as well as people all over the world overjoyed at this and followed the north-south negotiations with great hope and expectation.

However, because of the treachery of the south Korean reactionaries and their schemes to perpetuate national partition, a grave new obstacle to the country’s reunification has been created. Hard pressed by the general course of events and the south Korean people’s ever-increasing aspirations towards reunification, the south Korean reactionaries arrived to negotiate with us. But they showed not the slightest sincerity in the negotiations and accepted none of our reasonable proposals. On the contrary, behind the scenes of the negotiations, they were engrossed in machinations to perpetuate the division of the nation and in treasonable acts, and accelerated their policy of increasing fascism and their plans to bring about war. As a result, the negotiations started three years ago between north and south have shown no substantial progress.

You asked about the results of the north-south negotiations. Because of the actions of the south Korean reactionaries, the negotiations have made no headway in solving fundamental problems concerning national reunification and are faced with great difficulties. However, we have gained beneficial results in the course of the negotiations.

The just stand of the Government of our Republic with regard to national reunification and the intrigues of the south Korean reactionaries to obstruct it have been more strikingly revealed to the whole world through the negotiations between the north and the south. The south Korean people and the people of the world have come to realize more
clearly who sincerely desire the reunification of the country and who seek its division, who are true patriots and who are traitors in Korea.

In the course of the north-south negotiations the south Korean people have gained more revolutionary awareness and risen courageously in the fight against the south Korean reactionaries who are hindering national reunification. What is more, our people have come to enjoy support and sympathy from many more people of the world in their struggle for national reunification.

Our people are still faced with great obstacles and hardships in their struggle for national reunification. However, if the Korean people in the north and the south fight persistently in firm unity with the active support and encouragement of progressive people the world over, the historic cause of national reunification will be achieved at all costs.

Now, let me tell you about socialist construction in our country.

The Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of our Republic proposed three revolutionary tasks in socialist construction—the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions—and are working hard to carry them out.

In order to build socialism and communism successfully, both the battles to capture the ideological fortress and to take the material fortress must be forcefully pursued. History shows that socialism and communism cannot be built successfully only through efforts to lay their material foundations.

Our Party raised the slogan of the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions a long time ago, and has fought stoutly to capture both the ideological and material fortresses.

The ideological revolution we are carrying on is a struggle to root out the outmoded ideas which still remain in the minds of people and revolutionize and working-classize them.

In carrying out the ideological revolution we are making great efforts to educate the working people through organizational life.

In our country all the working people belong to some kind of organizations and are leading organizational lives through which they temper themselves ideologically. The young people are taking part in

The main feature of organizational life is study. In our country today, all the working people are studying hard.

It is most important in their studies that all the working people arm themselves firmly with the Juche idea, the monolithic ideology of our Party. To carry out the Korean revolution successfully, all the working people must equip themselves firmly with the monolithic ideology of our Party, the Juche idea, which is the guiding idea of the Korean revolution. If, within our Party, there is a man not armed with our Party’s idea but addicted to the idea of a foreign party, he cannot be regarded as a member of our Party. Today our working people are all firmly armed with the Juche idea and closely rallied around our Party with one mind and one will.

Another important aspect of the education of the working people is to train them all to love work and treasure its fruits. Work is the very noble and honourable means of creating the material wealth of society. This is why we educate all the people to love work and observe labour discipline willingly and to care ardently for and firmly protect the gains of socialism achieved through their labour.

In our country today the technical revolution is progressing successfully in combination with the ideological revolution.

An important task confronting the working-class power is to liberate the working people completely from hard and arduous work once they are freed from imperialist and capitalist oppression and exploitation.

The Fifth Congress of our Party put forward three major tasks of the technical revolution to deliver the working people from hard and burdensome work. These which were proposed by our Party are to narrow the distinctions between heavy and light labour and between agricultural and industrial work considerably and to free women from
the heavy burden of household chores.

We have already achieved great successes in the fulfilment of the three major tasks of the technical revolution. With the wide introduction of partial and then total mechanization of the mining, fishing and timber industries where more difficult and arduous work exists than in any other spheres, the workers have been appreciably relieved of hard work.

The technical revolution is making great progress in the rural economy as well. In our rural areas irrigation was completed a long time ago and electrification was also carried out splendidly. Now, an energetic drive is under way to complete the mechanization of agriculture and the full-scale use of chemicals. Threshing, milling and rice-cleaning have long since been mechanized in our country areas. This spring, rice seedlings were planted by machines over a vast acreage of paddy fields, and preparations are now under way for harvesting by machine. In our country areas at present there are four tractors to every 100 hectares of cultivated land in the plains and three in intermediary zones and mountainous areas.

With the satisfactory progress of the rural technical revolution in our country, farming is successful every year. This year the grain harvest is expected to be much more than last year. Our country is self-sufficient in food and part of the grain is allocated to stockbreeding in order to improve the people’s living standards.

The task of the technical revolution for relieving women of the heavy burden of household chores is also being triumphantly fulfilled. It cannot be said that women’s emancipation is fully solved merely by granting them equal political rights with men. Women who constitute one half of the population should not only be granted equal rights with men but also be provided with every opportunity to participate in socialist construction. Only by doing this, can women be truly emancipated and working-classized.

Today, in our country, great efforts are being made to relieve women of the heavy burden of household chores so that they can take an active part in socialist construction and socio-political life. The state
has built many creches and kindergartens everywhere in towns and villages, at which 3,500,000 children are brought up at state and public expense. In this way, the burden of women in bringing up their children is being lessened. At the same time, the work of introducing water supplies in the villages is making brisk headway. When this is completed, our women will be relieved for good of the practice of having to carry water jars on their heads.

The task of the cultural revolution is also being successfully implemented.

A compulsory eleven-year education consisting of compulsory one-year preschool education and compulsory ten-year school education is now in force in our country. With the introduction of the compulsory eleven-year education, all members of our rising generation receive complete secondary general education at the expense of the state.

We are trying to raise the general knowledge of all the working people above the level of the middle school graduate. We are making sure that everyone over 40, who had no opportunity of learning in the past, studies at a working people’s middle school and acquires the knowledge of a middle school graduate. We also encourage all the working people to learn more than one skill. Thus we are going to raise the technical and cultural level of our working people who were left behind the civilization of technology in former days quickly.

By devoting great efforts to preparing our own cadres, we have trained more than 600,000 technicians and specialists, and are planning to increase their number to 1,000,000 in the near future. This goal will be attained before long, I think, because our country has over 140 universities and colleges of all specialities at present. We are now striving to working-classize all the working people. We plan to intellectualize them in the future. In other words, we intend to make all the working people builders of socialism and communism possessing high standards of culture and technical knowledge.

Encouraging all the people to study is the basic line of the cultural revolution in our country, we should say. In fact, all our people are
studying now. We are forging ahead under the slogan “The Party, the people and the army must all study!” and the cadres are taking the lead in this. The officials of the Party, state and economic organs and management workers of factories and enterprises study more than two hours every day after work, attend a lecture every Wednesday and study collectively for half a day on Saturdays. Moreover, all cadres are obliged to attend school and study for a whole month every year, while on the job, in order to raise their ideological, technical and cultural level rapidly. In this way we have thoroughly established a system under which all the people study.

This successful progress in our socialist construction is to be ascribed, above all, to the correctness of our Party’s line and policies.

It is very important for a party and a government to set a correct revolutionary line and enable the people to see clearly what their future prospects are. All our people clearly see their way in the line and policies laid down by our Party. All the people of our country—the workers, peasants, working intellectuals, young people and students, and women—know the prospects of the revolution as well as their specific tasks and are dedicating themselves to the struggle to carry out the Party’s line and policies, fully convinced of their bright future and victory.

Another important factor contributing to our brilliant successes in the revolution and construction is that we have dynamically accelerated the revolution and construction by relying fully on the working masses and stimulating them to action.

We are putting the main emphasis on mixing with the people and uniting with them at all times. If one goes among the people, one learns many good things from them and gains courage. We not only mix with the people and learn from them, but also teach them. Through this, we unite with the people and organize and mobilize them for the revolution and construction.

At present, the imperialists are openly perpetrating subversive schemes to overthrow the progressive governments of the third world countries. In this situation, it is very important for the parties and the
governments to strengthen their unity with the masses. To frustrate the subversive schemes of the imperialists it is necessary to rally the people firmly, while raising vigilance against the enemy. If a state only tries to rule the people, it cannot solve this problem. The word rule itself does not suit a people’s government, I should say. The state must not rule the people but unite with them.

The basis of our Juche idea is that the working masses are masters of everything and they decide everything. All problems are decided not by “God” or a hero, but by the working masses. Only when one depends on the masses and goes among them and rouses them to action can one frustrate the machinations of the imperialists and reactionaries and firmly defend national independence and sovereignty and accelerate the revolution and construction, overcoming all obstacles and difficulties.

This is what I have to say on your questions.

I hope that you will continue to work to strengthen friendship between Korea and Dahomey still more.

You are our old friend now, because you have visited our country twice. I am delighted to have such a good friend as you in Dahomey.

You have become an information worker for Korea. From now onwards I shall be an information worker for Dahomey. Let us battle for the common cause, supporting each other and cooperating with each other.

I should like to meet the Head of State of Dahomey here in Pyongyang, so as to strengthen and develop friendly relations between our two countries. If your Head of State visits Korea, our people will give him a warm and cordial welcome.

Some time ago, the Togolese President paid a visit to our country and our people accorded him a very warm welcome.

I was only in the company of the Togolese President for a short time, but we deepened our mutual understanding and became close friends. I have many African Heads of State among my friends.

I hope that the Dahomeyan Head of State will also be my friend.

I should like you to convey our wish to him.
ON THE SITUATION IN OUR COUNTRY
AND TASKS OF THE LEAGUE
OF KOREAN YOUTH IN JAPAN

Speech to the Group of Art and Sports Delegates of Korean
Youth in Japan, the Second Group of Korean Educational
Workers in Japan and the Group of Korean High School
Students in Japan Visiting Home
September 24, 1974

I am very happy today to meet you representatives of Korean youth, representatives of students and representatives of educationalists in Japan who are valiantly fighting for the motherland, for the defence of democratic, national rights and for the reunification of the country. Thanks to the powerful campaign you comrades have waged to defend democratic, national rights, we are meeting like this today in Pyongyang, the capital of the revolution.

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Republic and educational workers, young people and students and the rest of the people in the homeland, I warmly welcome you comrades and offer you my heartfelt greetings.

In Pyongyang, we often meet foreign delegations; and we always meet people from different spheres in our country. But we are most pleased to meet our fellow countrymen who have come from Japan to visit the homeland. I was pleased to meet the football team of the Tokyo Korean Middle and High School and the song and dance circle of the Yokohama Korean Primary School who visited the homeland.
And I was touched on meeting the students of the music and sports circle of Korea University. This is still fresh in my memory.

Affection between kinsfolk is very deep. Each time we hear that fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters who are having a hard time in an alien land are to visit the homeland and particularly, when we meet fellow countrymen who are visiting the homeland, we are thrilled and our hearts are filled with deep emotion.

Today I am immensely pleased to meet you Korean young people and students and educationalists who have come to the homeland from Japan. This is not my feeling alone; it is shared by you and by all the people of our country, I think.

When the country is reunified and we meet the young people, students and people of south Korea like this some day, we shall be even more delighted and thrilled.

This meeting of ours today, I think, will be imprinted forever on your memories and on my mind too as an important occasion.

You are so greatly delighted at this meeting today that you are shedding tears of emotion. You are so excited that I feel a lump in my throat and can hardly speak.

Comrades, calm yourselves.

We shall meet again in the future in the course of our mutual revolutionary struggle. Let us all carry on the struggle bravely to the end, meeting and parting, parting and meeting again on the one road of revolution, and thus accomplish the cause of national reunification, our people’s greatest aspiration, come what may.

Today I should like to tell you comrades about the situation facing our country and about certain tasks facing the League of Korean Youth in Japan.

1. ON THE SITUATION IN OUR COUNTRY

I consider that it is essential for you on this visit to the homeland to
acquaint yourselves fully with the situation facing our country before your return. The present situation in our country is very good. Despite the fact that the south Korean reactionaries and the US and Japanese and other reactionaries of the world are maliciously trying to defame our Republic, the general situation is developing more and more in favour of our revolution.

The prime target of our Party’s struggle today is to achieve the country’s reunification, the most cherished desire and aspiration of our nation.

Our Party has proposed three tasks to accomplish the historic cause of national reunification.

The first task is to make big strides in socialist construction in the northern half of Korea. Only when socialist construction is accelerated dynamically in the north, will it be possible to develop a sound revolutionary base and only when this base is strengthened, will it be possible to achieve the cause of national reunification with success. The revolutionary base in the northern half of Korea is the main means of assuring the victory of our revolution.

The second task is to strengthen the revolutionary forces of south Korea by supporting the democratic movement of the south Korean people. The reunification of the country will not be achieved only by successful socialist construction in the north. When the democratic movement of the south Korean people develops, the democratic forces of south Korea and the socialist forces of the north will unite their efforts and accomplish national reunification successfully.

The third task is to strengthen our unity with the international revolutionary forces. The enemies who confront us are the south Korean reactionaries as well as the reactionaries of the United States and Japan. These two latter are the leading chieftains of world reaction. In order to defeat the ringleaders of world reaction, our people should cement their unity with all the revolutionary forces of the world. We must unite with the peoples of the socialist countries, unite with the peoples of the third world countries, unite with the peoples fighting for
national independence, unite with the working class of the capitalist countries fighting against oppression and exploitation by capital and unite with all the peace-loving people of the world.

As you see, only by successfully carrying out socialist construction in the northern half of Korea to build up a sound base for the revolution, supporting the democratic movement of the south Korean people to strengthen the revolutionary forces of south Korea and cementing our unity with the international revolutionary forces, can we win the fight against the ringleaders of world reaction, reunify the motherland and achieve the nationwide victory of the revolution.

I think you will get a clear understanding of the situation in our country if I explain how our Party’s three tasks for national reunification are now being carried out in the homeland.

Let me first tell you about the situation with regard to socialist construction in the northern half of Korea.

Building socialism in the north is the line maintained all along by our Party ever since our country was liberated from the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism.

In order to build socialism and communism, it is imperative to carry out three revolutions, namely, the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

As we have said on many occasions, socialism and communism will never be built merely by building many factories and getting their chimneys to belch volumes of smoke. Historic experience shows that in order to build socialism and communism successfully, the two fortresses for the building of communism, the material and ideological fortresses, must both be captured. To do this, the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions must be carried out thoroughly.

Our Party has now set forth these three revolutions as the most important tasks in socialist construction and is making every effort to fulfil them.

First and foremost, our Party is mounting a powerful drive to carry out the ideological revolution.

It is fundamental in the ideological revolution to arm all Party
members, working people and young people with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea.

The Korean revolution must be accomplished by the Korean people themselves under the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea. Therefore, all Party members and working people should be firmly armed with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea. If a Korean is not armed with our Party’s idea but with the idea of some foreign party, he cannot be regarded as a man who lives for the Korean revolution, and he cannot carry out the Korean revolution with any success. Party members and working people can only succeed in accomplishing the Korean revolution when all of them are thoroughly equipped with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, and have the unswerving stand and viewpoint that they recognize no other idea but our Party’s idea.

In order to arm the Party members and working people with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, a powerful struggle must be waged against capitalist, feudal-Confucian, revisionist and flunkeyist ideas and all other obsolete ideas.

The fight against obsolete ideas is not directed against those who possess them but is an ideological struggle to root out the old ideas remaining in the minds of people. The ideological struggle must never be carried out by coercion.

The basic means of liquidating the old ideas is to intensify study and organizational life. We are working hard to uproot the old ideas which still survive in the minds of Party members and working people and arm them with our Party’s revolutionary idea, the Juche idea, through education and through intensified organizational life. At present, strict discipline for all people studying has been established in the homeland, and members of the League of Socialist Working Youth take an active part in the organizational life of the LSWY, trade union members in the organizational life of the trade unions, the members of the Union of Agricultural Working People in the organizational life of the UAWP, the Women’s Union members in the organizational life of the WU and Party members in Party organizational life.
When all Party members and working people are firmly armed with the Juche idea and breathe with the Juche idea anywhere, anytime, and act as required by the Juche idea, socialist construction will forge ahead still more triumphantly. When people are fully pervaded with the Juche idea, all Party members, working people, soldiers, young people and students will be firmly united with one idea and one will; and when all the people are united with one mind and one will, socialist construction will surge ahead irresistibly and difficulties will be overcome successfully in the revolutionary struggle.

Next in importance for the ideological revolution is to educate all people to love work.

Work is the most noble and honourable thing in a socialist society. Those who hate to work and like to eat the bread of idleness are not welcome anywhere in our society.

There is mental and physical labour; everybody must do a job of work, either mental or physical. Everyone must work in a communist society, too.

Our Party put forward the line of revolutionization and working-classization of all members of society by intensifying the ideological revolution. To revolutionize and working-classize all the members of society is the basic aim of the ideological revolution.

The ideological revolution is progressing well in the homeland at present. With the successful progress of the ideological revolution, the technical revolution is also going ahead well and all the revolutionary tasks proposed by the Party are being successfully carried out. Particular mention should be made of the fact that recently the Party Central Committee sent three-revolution teams to the factories, enterprises and cooperative farms so as to help the workers at lower echelons. The result is that the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions are being accelerated successfully.

In order to build socialism and communism successfully, the technical revolution must be energetically advanced in combination with the ideological revolution. Our revolutionary forces can only grow stronger when the people’s political and ideological
preparedness is fortified by material forces through the technical revolution.

The technical revolution is an important revolutionary task to consolidate the nation’s economic foundation and free the working people from arduous labour. The technical revolution must not be regarded merely as a task to consolidate the material foundations; it must always be regarded as a political task.

Some people imagine that the technical revolution is simply aimed at developing technology and the productive forces and producing greater material wealth to enable people to eat well, dress well and lead a material life of plenty. The aim of the technical revolution, however, is not confined to this. It is even more important to free the working people from arduous, labour-consuming work.

Even though great quantities of goods are produced through the development of technology, on the one hand, it is of no use, if, on the other, the working people are engaged in burdensome and harmful work and their health is affected. For instance, Japan is said to be technologically developed, but the people are suffering from serious pollution. It cannot be said that this sort of technological development conforms to the aim of the technical revolution.

The technical revolution is primarily a campaign to free all the working people from difficult and backbreaking toil. We simply say technical revolution to be brief, but to be more exact, we should call it the revolution to free the working people from labour-consuming work.

Freeing the working people from arduous and backbreaking work is the most important revolutionary task facing communists. Needless to say, it is very important to emancipate the working people from exploitation and oppression. But this is not enough. Only by relieving them of arduous labour once they have been freed from exploitation and oppression after the overthrow of the old exploiting system, can communists say that they have fully discharged their duty. It is the most important revolutionary task to free the working people from hard work after liberating them from oppression by imperialism and the exploiting classes.
As you see, the technical revolution is not merely a technical task, that of producing consumer goods and equipment in greater quantities, but a task of a political character.

When consumer goods and equipment are produced not only in large quantities but also easily, the consumers will feel at ease. When rice is produced easily, the people who eat it will feel a sense of relief. If it is produced with difficulty, the people will feel uncomfortable and the food would stick in their throats. Those who do not care about the peasants’ hardships when producing rice but just think of eating it in large amounts lack a conscience; this is the way the exploiting classes such as landlords and capitalists think.

We have not yet completely freed the working people from arduous labour nor have we eliminated the distinctions between heavy and light labour, between agricultural and industrial labour, between physical and mental labour. We intend to do away with the distinctions between heavy and light labour and between agricultural and industrial labour, to free women from the heavy burden of household chores and, furthermore, to get rid of the distinction between physical and mental labour. By encouraging the working people to produce large quantities of goods under easy conditions we aim at enabling all members of society to work according to their ability and to receive according to their needs. This is the precise goal of communism.

Of course, these tasks cannot be carried out in a short time. Therefore, the report to the Fifth Congress of our Party points out that the distinctions between heavy and light labour and between agricultural and industrial work will be narrowed considerably during the Six-Year Plan period.

The tasks of the technical revolution are now being successfully fulfilled in our country.

The most labour-consuming work in our country is in the extractive industries such as felling trees, mining coal and ore and conducting geological prospecting. So we are making great efforts, first of all, in the technical revolution in the extractive industries.

The fight to eliminate the difference between agricultural and
industrial work is also progressing smoothly.

At present, agricultural work is more difficult than industrial work. We intend to eliminate the distinction between them in a short time. Of course, there is much to be done yet in the rural technical revolution. However, considerable success has been achieved in this sphere too. Irrigation was carried out a long time ago and electrification has also been introduced in our country. The goal of the fullest possible use of chemicals, as set forth in the theses on the rural question, will probably be attained next year.

Mechanization has not yet been accomplished in our rural areas. As far as the complete mechanization of agriculture is concerned, it can be said that there is no limit. However, we are making every effort to mechanize agriculture basically by next year.

The theses on the rural question provide for the supply of 70,000 to 80,000 tractors to the country areas. About as many tractors as that have already found their way to the rural districts. But, if we are to complete the mechanization of agriculture, six to eight tractors are needed for each 100 hectares of arable land. Some areas have already been supplied with many tractors, but others have few of them. We are planning to supply more tractors on an equal basis to all the areas in the future. Then greater progress will be made in our agriculture.

This year is a memorable year in which we celebrated the 10th anniversary of the publication of the theses on the rural question. In response to the Party’s call to bring about a great increase in agricultural production, with this anniversary as the driving force, the farmers have worked with a great deal of enthusiasm and the whole country has assisted the rural areas. As a result, conspicuous success has been achieved in agricultural production this year.

A recent analysis of this year’s farming forecasts extraordinary success. This year 10 counties are producing 150,000 tons of grain each, 24 counties 100,000 tons and 31 counties 80,000 tons, that is, as many as 65 counties will produce more than 80,000 tons each. Many counties are expected to double their grain output this year compared with last year. Our country is reaping bounteous crops this year as the
song says: bumper harvests of apples, rice and all other crops. Some
time ago the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee took
steps to channel all the lorries now being produced to the rural areas so
as to harvest the plentiful crops in good time. From olden times it has
been said that you can be called rich only when your rice-chest is full
and your rice jar filled to overflowing. Now the rice-chest will be filled
to overflowing everywhere in our country. This means that our country
has become rich and the people more prosperous.

Grain production has more than doubled in many counties this year.
This is not because the counties have been enlarged but because the
agricultural productive forces have developed radically. In other
words, all these successes are the product of the rural technical
revolution.

In this way, the struggle to industrialize agriculture and the struggle
to eliminate the distinction between agricultural and industrial work
are progressing very well in our country.

The task of the technical revolution to free women from the heavy
burden of household chores is also being carried out successfully.

Women must be brought into public life, if they are to be
working-classized. They cannot be working-classized if they remain at
home, taking no part in public life.

Only when women undertake work in society, can their social
emancipation be achieved in practice. The promulgation of the Law of
Sex Equality alone does not completely solve the problem of
emancipating women. To bring about the true social emancipation of
women, they must be encouraged to participate in public life and take
on work suited to their ability, either mental or physical. In our society
there are many types of work suited to women. They can work as
doctors and teachers; they can work in light industry factories; they can
work as saleswomen in stores and in the service industry.

In order to draw as many women as possible into public life, the
problem of freeing them from the heavy burden of household chores
must be solved.

At present, when women participate in public life they have to bear
a double burden. In other words, they have to do the same work as men in society and do household chores at home, such as cooking meals, taking care of the children, and attending to the family’s clothing. Assuming a double burden is very hard for women, who are physically weaker than men. Therefore, the Fifth Congress of our Party defined it as an important task to free women from heavy household burdens.

Of prime importance in freeing women from the burden of household chores is to press forward with bringing up the children at state and public expense. The Party and state have built nurseries and kindergartens everywhere, making great efforts to rear the children at state and public expense. In our country today, 3,500,000 children are growing up at nurseries and kindergartens at state and public expense.

Engels said that it was an important communist policy to rear all children who had left their mother’s breast at public expense. We consider that our country is the first to put this communist policy into practice.

We are also doing a great deal to develop light industry. We manufacture garments in factories and supply large quantities of processed foods, washing machines, electric rice-cookers and other household appliances to save women time when working in the kitchen and doing household chores. At the same time, we are ensuring that the service networks are expanded so as to offer greater conveniences to the population.

Another important matter involved in freeing women from household duties is to introduce water services in rural villages so that women will not have to carry water jars on their heads.

When we go out to the villages, we often see women carrying water jars on their heads. This chore has been a heavy burden for our women for thousands of years. Carrying water was a particularly heavy burden for the village women who lived a long way from wells. Therefore, our Party is making a supreme effort to complete water-supply projects in the country areas quickly so that women will not have to carry water jars on their heads.

Not long ago, while visiting a village, we met an old woman. She
said her back had been bent carrying water all her life, but that now in
the age of the Workers’ Party, women do not carry water jars on their
heads. It is indeed a wonderful society. She added that she felt her back
would straighten again in this society.

The cultural revolution is also progressing successfully in our
country.

I shall not discuss the details of the cultural revolution, because you
have attended lectures and visited many schools in the homeland on
this occasion.

One of the important goals we set for the cultural revolution is to
enable all the working people to acquire knowledge of secondary
school standard, or even higher.

Most of the people who grew up after liberation have finished
secondary school, not to speak of the younger generation growing up
under the compulsory 11-year education system now in force in our
country. So it is a foregone conclusion that they possess knowledge
which they have obtained through secondary schooling. The important
thing now is to raise the level of general knowledge of people in their
forties and older people who had no opportunity of learning before
liberation. We conducted a campaign against illiteracy among them
immediately after liberation, which was followed by a movement to
raise their level to at least that of a primary school graduate. Now a
movement is under way to raise it to the standard of a secondary school
graduate or higher. However, this movement is rather slow in getting
under way. The reason is that the people who could not study before
are not enthusiastic enough, considering it unnecessary to study
because they are old now; another reason is that effective
organizational steps have not been taken to make them study hard.

If our Party works well and raises the level of knowledge of all the
working people to that of a secondary school graduate or higher, our
country will become one of the most cultured countries in the world.
The first task of the cultural revolution is to bring the level of
knowledge of all the working people up to, or above, that of secondary
schooling.
The second task of the cultural revolution is to equip all the working people with at least one technical skill. We are insisting that all students learn at least one technical skill, in addition to their knowledge of the natural and social sciences. Our Party’s call for everyone to possess at least one technical skill is being successfully put into practice.

We are achieving considerable success in training our own cadres. Immediately after liberation, our country had only a few score technicians and specialists who deserved to be called intellectuals. Today, however, we have 600,000 technicians and specialists and their number will increase to more than 1,000,000 in the near future.

We shall not stop at raising this large army of 1,000,000 intellectuals. We intend to intellectualize all members of society in the future, after their working-classization.

When the working-classization of the whole of society has yet to be achieved, the slogan of intellectualization is somewhat misleading. However, after the working-classization of the whole of society, there is nothing wrong with this slogan, because it is designed to make all members of society working-class intellectuals. Some might interpret intellectualization as converting people into petty bourgeoisie. But this is wrong. In the previous capitalist society the intellectuals were commonly regarded as a petty-bourgeois sector, as a vacillating sector, because they served the capitalists or other classes as a social stratum. But the intellectuals of a socialist society are different. In a socialist society the intellectuals are the working class engaged in mental work. It is true, of course, that mental work is somewhat easier than physical work, but it is by no means easy.

In training our own cadres, our Party is developing, in addition to the regular schooling system, an educational programme taking various forms such as the factory college and factory higher technical school where people study while working. In addition, a system has been set up in our country under which all cadres study two hours every day, for half a day on Saturdays, and for a whole month each year at regular schools. In this way, our country has become a “land of
learning”, a “land of education”, where virtually everybody studies under the slogan: The Party, the people and the army must all study! People in many countries envy us for this.

As the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions are driven powerfully ahead under our Party’s correct leadership and, particularly, as a determined campaign is carried on to permeate the whole of society with the Juche idea, a communist quality is being revealed amongst the masses–working and living under the slogan of “One for all and all for one”. This means that solid unity is being developed in our socialist society and that the revolutionization and working-classization of our people, the decisive force in national reunification and socialist construction, are being vigorously promoted. It also means that the most important problem arising in building a communist society, the ideal of mankind, is being solved. It can be said that the outstanding revolutionary feature of our country today is that all the people are advancing rapidly, united in one harmonious, political and revolutionary community under the slogan of “One for all and all for one”.

Our nation’s defences have been made as firm as solid rock.

We are now achieving splendid results in the unique military line of turning the whole army into a cadre army, modernizing the whole army, placing all the people under arms and fortifying the whole country. We are proud of this line which is without equal in the world. All our people are now fully prepared to destroy the enemy at one blow, whenever he attacks us, with a resolve to share life or death together. Therefore, the imperialists dare not rashly provoke our country.

As you know, the US imperialists committed so many military provocations, among them the incidents of the armed spy ship Pueblo and the spy plane EC-121, only to meet with powerful counterblows from our people each time. However, they dared not openly attack our country.

With the successful implementation of the line of independence in politics, self-sufficiency in the economy and self-defence in protecting
the nation—the embodiment of the Juche idea—our socialist motherland has now become a rich and mighty country sweeping forward towards the high pinnacle of socialism and hailed by people all over the world as the “model socialist country”. I hope that on your return to Japan, you will inform our fellow countrymen of this proud situation in the socialist homeland.

Next, I wish to speak about the struggle for democratization which the south Korean people are waging to bring the country’s reunification nearer.

At this time a fierce struggle is being waged in south Korea by people of all backgrounds for the democratization of society and against the fascist rule of the south Korean authorities. It is claimed by the authorities there that the south Korean people’s revolutionary struggle is gaining momentum because we export revolution. This, however, is pure nonsense.

As we always say, revolution is never exported.
We do not export revolution; it cannot be exported.

The south Korean people are rising up in revolutionary struggle because they themselves are aware of the truth and have acquired revolutionary awareness.

The south Korean authorities harshly suppress the people today, even depriving them of elementary freedoms and rights. This is hastening the awakening of the south Korean people and is rousing them to put up a powerful resistance. Where there is suppression, there will always be resistance. Where there is suppression, there is bound to be resistance, and where there is resistance, revolution will inevitably break out.

Since perpetrating the so-called “October Revitalization”, the south Korean authorities have further intensified their suppression of the south Korean people. They have repressed people at random, continually taking countless suppressive measures under the name of “emergency martial law”, “emergency measures”, “alert order ‘A’” and so forth.

In April this year, when the south Korean young people and
students rose in a massive struggle against fascism and for democracy, the south Korean authorities began an unbridled campaign of suppression. They imprisoned thousands of students and other people. They imprisoned the poet Kim Ji Ha, other intellectuals and various personalities and even a former “President”, and Catholic bishop Ji Hak Sun and other religious men.

After imprisoning their opponents at random, the south Korean authorities persecute them under the preposterous pretext that they are in contact with us. Each time an “incident” takes place against them in south Korea, the south Korean authorities attempt to lay the blame at our door, concocting a lie that it has some connection with us. This is their customary practice.

The south Korean authorities are also trying to shift the blame for the “shooting incident” which occurred on August 15 this year onto us and Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan). This trick is extremely foolish. This “incident” has nothing to do with us or Chongryon.

This “incident” is a scheme framed by the south Korean reactionaries themselves or by their masters. There is no doubt about that.

The “incident” was planned to divert the attention of the south Korean people and people all over the world, because if the south Korean authorities continued with their present oppressive rule the resistance of the south Korean people will increase and world opinion will turn against them.

Communists are fundamentally opposed to terrorism against individuals, because they do not aim at removing a reactionary ruler, but at opposing the fascist system itself and building a new society free from exploitation and oppression. What good is it to replace “Pak” with “Choe”, and “Choe” with “Jang” or “Ri” through terrorism, while leaving the fascist system intact? That trouble does not lie in any individual ruler but in the fascist system itself.

It is foolish of the enemy to try to blame us for the recent “incident”. No one who can distinguish right from wrong will believe it. The south
Korean reactionaries hatched a clumsy plot and are raising a commotion. But it will prove of no avail. No trick of the south Korean reactionaries can cover up the truth or hold in check the revolutionary struggle of the people. This is clearly borne out by the present state of affairs in south Korea.

The “shooting incident” seemed to have attracted the south Korean people’s attention in the last few days. But it was only a passing event. At present the anti-“government” struggle of the young people and students is flaring up again in south Korea.

A few days ago students of Seoul University and Koryo University rose in revolt under the slogan of “Free the detained students!” Yesterday students of the Rihwa Women’s University joined the campaign, demanding that the detained students be released immediately and that campus freedom and freedom of speech be guaranteed.

Not only the young people and students but also the workers of south Korea are fighting gallantly. Several days ago the workers of the Ulsan Shipyard rose in revolt. This scared the puppet police, who savagely repressed the resisting workers and arrested some 860 of them.

All this proves once again beyond any shadow of a doubt the truth of revolution that where there is oppression and suppression there will always be resistance.

The south Korean people hate the present south Korean authorities as one man and actively fight against them, especially since the south Korean authorities are obstructing the reunification of the motherland and committing the treacherous act of selling off the country.

It must be said that when the south Korean authorities first agreed to negotiate with us two years ago about the question of national reunification, some south Koreans wishfully trusted to their national conscience. However, the south Korean authorities employed delaying tactics in the negotiations and hindered the progress of the dialogue. Furthermore, they openly insisted on the admission of “two Koreas” to the UN and sought to perpetuate the partition of the nation, thus
revealing their true colours to the south Korean people and people the world over.

We knew from the outset that the south Korean authorities are the lackeys of the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists. However, because they promised that they would no longer act as the cat’s-paw of the imperialists, we entered into negotiations with them out of a desire to reunify the country without delving into their past. They broke their promise, however, and later, took action to perpetuate the division of the nation, while clinging more tightly to the sleeves of outside forces.

In the final analysis, the south Korean authorities want to keep our country divided for ever so as to prolong their days and leave south Korea permanently as a military base of US imperialism and a commodity market for the Japanese militarists. These treacherous acts of theirs will only arouse hatred and indignation amongst the south Korean people.

The south Korean people also hate the present south Korean authorities and are actively resisting them because of their rampant irregularities and corruption.

These crimes of the south Korean authorities are appalling. They have unlawfully amassed fortunes by exploiting the south Korean people and bartering away the country and the nation and have used the proceeds to run companies and hotels in order to achieve personal pleasure and become prosperous.

According to south Korean public opinion, the south Korean authorities are misappropriating large sums of money from the so-called US and Japanese “aid”. They say that every year the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists give “aid” to south Korea amounting to hundreds of millions of dollars. But those who give the “aid” pocket a sizable part of it, those in high positions in south Korea do the same and then their underlings embezzle their share. Therefore, only a few paltry dollars remain in the end. The south Korean authorities, the US imperialists and the Japanese militarists are hand-in-glove because of such common interests.
All the facts clearly show that the present south Korean authorities are ferocious fascists who harshly suppress the people, traitors who obstruct national reunification and sell the country to outside forces and are extremely corrupt. If the south Korean authorities keep to the road of reaction, the road of treachery to the nation as they do now, it will, in fact, be impossible to solve the question of national reunification through negotiations.

In the present situation which has been treated in our country, if we are to accomplish the independent, peaceful reunification of the motherland, it is imperative to democratize south Korean society by putting up a powerful fight against fascism and for democracy in south Korea. The workers, peasants, young people and students, intellectuals, conscientious religious men and people of all other walks of life and patriotic, democratic personages in south Korea must fight more valiantly for the democratization of south Korean society.

Our Party and all the people in the northern half of Korea support and encourage the patriotic struggle of the south Korean people for the democratization of south Korean society. This is not interference in south Korea’s internal affairs nor is it intended to incite revolution in south Korea. To bring about the reunification of the motherland, we regard it as our noble national duty to support the just struggle of the south Korean people.

Because of ruthless fascist repression by the south Korean reactionaries, the south Korean people’s fight against fascism and for democracy is now taking a tortuous path. But it will grow stronger and will unfailingly be crowned with victory.

Now let me pass on to the question of unity with the international revolutionary forces.

Strengthening our unity with the international revolutionary forces is an important guarantee for driving the US imperialists out of south Korea, achieving the independent, peaceful reunification of the motherland and winning the final victory of our revolution. Therefore, we are paying particular attention to cementing our unity with the international revolutionary forces, while strengthening our own
revolutionary forces in every way.

Our Party regards it as an immutable principle of its external activities to unite with the peoples of the socialist countries, with the peoples of the third world countries and with all the peace-loving people of the world. We are endeavouring to strengthen our friendship and unity with the third world countries, in particular, in every way.

Most of the third world countries became independent after the Second World War. All of them had been oppressed and exploited by imperialists in the past. Today the third world countries are waging a gallant struggle against imperialism and colonialism and playing an important role in the international arena. The third world is a powerful anti-imperialist revolutionary force at the present time. Therefore, it is very important today to strengthen our unity with the third world countries.

Thanks to our Party’s correct foreign policy the work of strengthening our unity with the international revolutionary forces is now proceeding with great success. Solidarity between our country and other socialist countries is being further cemented; our unity and cooperation with the third world countries, in particular, are increasing. The peoples of the third world are giving firm backing to and encouraging our people’s revolutionary cause.

The Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries held in Algeria last year unanimously adopted a resolution which was in full agreement with our five-point policy of national reunification and expressed firm solidarity with the struggle of our people for the independent, peaceful reunification of the motherland. When the Korean question was discussed at the UN General Assembly last year, President Houari Boumedienne sent a telegram to the Heads of State of non-aligned countries calling on them to continue to fight for a just solution of the Korean question in accordance with the resolution of the Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned Countries. Again this year, in connection with the discussion of the Korean question at the UN General Assembly, he sent a telegram to the Heads of State of non-aligned countries urging them to make every effort for the
withdrawal of foreign troops from South Korea.

The Third-World Youth Conference held in Algeria last July sent us a letter supporting the stand of our Party and the just struggle of our people for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. All this implies that our country is enjoying the full support and sympathy of many countries and the peoples of the third world.

Apart from a few reactionary countries including the US and Japan, all countries have now established or want to establish good relations with our country. As you know, Sweden, Denmark and many other capitalist countries have already established diplomatic relations with our country and are developing state relations on good terms.

Even Australia which participated in the Korean war against us during the period of the Fatherland Liberation War has established diplomatic relations with our country. Recently, Ethiopia has also said that it wished to establish good relations with our country.

Ethiopia is the only African country which took part in the late Korean war on the side of the US imperialists. And it was the Emperor of Ethiopia who visited South Korea in his official capacity. I think that the Ethiopian people regard it as a great shame and have put up with disgrace until now. Recently the young Ethiopians have overthrown the imperial system. I was told that an Ethiopian official came to meet our people to express their regret for the crime which was committed by their former Emperor. He said that his country would like to develop relations with Korea in order to remove the stain of its wrongful participation in the US imperialist aggressive war against Korea in 1950.

As you see, many countries which were unfriendly towards our country in the past have changed their attitude and now have or want to have good relations with us.

Some Southeast Asian countries which have kept aloof from our country, because of their misunderstanding of the socialist countries, are also developing good relations with our country now.

All these facts indicate that friendly and cooperative relations
between our country and other countries are developing excellently in an unprecedented way. Today we have many revolutionary comrades and friends throughout the world and international solidarity with our revolution is growing stronger with each passing day.

Why are the third world countries and progressive people of the world supporting us? It is because we put forward the Juche idea and are marching forward, holding high the banner of independence.

The present era is an era of independence. Today all progressive people in the world demand independence and want to live an independent life. No one wants to live in subjection to others.

Today even the capitalist countries, to say nothing of the socialist countries and the third world countries, want to follow the road of independence. This is also true of Japan where you are living. The overwhelming majority of the people and progressive personages in Japan are stressing independence because they want to free themselves from foreign subjugation. In a word, following the road of independence has now become a worldwide trend.

Many peoples of the third world make a great point of unity with our country and are supporting and cooperating with us because our country stands firm in the fight against imperialism and colonialism and is taking the road of independence and self-sufficiency.

We consider it of the utmost importance for the whole Party and all the people to work to strengthen our unity with the international revolutionary forces.

I hear that the League of Korean Youth in Japan invited youth delegates of many African countries to its congress. This was very good.

If we continue to march forward vigorously, holding aloft the banner of the Juche idea, the banner of independence, we shall win over more countries and more people. We should win over more people and further strengthen our revolutionary unity with people all over the world so as to isolate the US imperialists, the Japanese militarists and the south Korean reactionaries completely and bring nearer the final victory of our revolution.
2. ON THE TASKS FACING THE LEAGUE OF KOREAN YOUTH IN JAPAN

The basic line maintained by our Party in the fight for the independent, peaceful reunification of the motherland and complete national independence is to expedite socialist construction in the northern half of Korea, support and encourage the democratic movement of the south Korean people and strengthen our unity with the international revolutionary forces.

This basic line of our Party puts the following tasks before Chongryon: first, to lead all fellow countrymen in Japan to have a warm love for and actively defend the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, our socialist motherland; second, to defend the democratic, national rights of Korean citizens in Japan; third, to support the democratic movement of the south Korean people; fourth, to strengthen its unity with the democratic forces of Japan and the Japanese people and other revolutionary peoples of the world.

At present Chongryon is carrying out the four main tasks based on the principal line of our Party in the struggle for the country’s independent, peaceful reunification and complete national independence, with credit.

The League of Korean Youth in Japan and the Korean educational workers in Japan who are conducting their activities under the leadership of Chongryon must organize and conduct their work in accordance with the main tasks of Chongryon.

The LKYJ must first work hard to develop its organizations into revolutionary ones and revolutionize the young people.

Young Koreans in Japan are living in a different environment from the young people in the homeland. Figuratively speaking, young people in the homeland are swimming in a placid river, whereas the
young Koreans in Japan are swimming in a rough sea. Those in the homeland are working under easy conditions, whereas those in Japan are having to struggle in very complicated and difficult circumstances.

The young Koreans in Japan are, so to speak, now in the midst of the enemy. This is because the Japanese government is pursuing a hostile policy towards our country. We do not follow a hostile policy towards Japan. However, as the Japanese government has set out to antagonize us, we cannot set our mind at ease for even a moment. What is more, the young Koreans in Japan are living in a capitalist society where monopoly capital rules, where money and power are everything and life is extremely degenerate and corrupt.

Under these complicated circumstances, in order to ensure success in the work of safeguarding the socialist motherland, defending democratic, national rights and supporting the movement for democratization in south Korea and strengthening unity with the democratic forces of Japan and the revolutionary people of the world, the LKYJ must revolutionize the youth organizations and thus revolutionize the young people.

Since the LKYJ is functioning where corruption and degeneration prevail, where money and power rule and reactionary rule is enforced, it must make its organizations more revolutionary than those of the League of Socialist Working Youth in the homeland and see that the young people have a stronger revolutionary spirit even than LSWY members in the homeland. Only then can the LKYJ brave any raging storm and carry out the responsible revolutionary tasks assigned to it successfully.

I imagine that there are many obstacles and hardships in your work. I also worked with young people at one time in the area ruled by the enemy when I was young. When our country was a colony of Japanese imperialism, I worked among the young Koreans in the Jilin area. There were very many difficulties and I came up against obstacles at every step. I imagine your situation at present is much the same. Needless to say, there is a difference between the conditions when we conducted work with young people and your conditions at present. In
the past we were a people deprived of our country, but you have your socialist motherland now. This offers you most favourable conditions in your battle. But, because you function in a capitalist country, your road may be rugged and there may be many obstacles and hardships.

The way to overcome difficulties on the arduous road of revolution is to revolutionize people, in other words, to arm them firmly with a revolutionary world outlook. Therefore, the LKYJ must make it its first and foremost task to revolutionize the young people.

Unless the young Koreans in Japan are firmly equipped with a revolutionary world outlook, they cannot uphold the revolutionary principle and emerge from the trials they encounter in a capitalist society.

The society in which you now live teems with the insects of capitalism, feudalism, revisionism, flunkeyism and all other kinds of noxious insects. If you are not prepared sufficiently to repel them, you may be bitten by them. If this happens, germs will invade your bodies and you will fall ill. If you are bitten by capitalist insects, capitalist germs will infiltrate; if you are bitten by revisionist insects, revisionist germs will infiltrate; and if you are bitten by flunkeyist insects, flunkeyist germs will infiltrate.

The preventive against all kinds of insects harmful to the revolution and against noxious germs which may invade your bodies and cause disease, is a revolutionary world outlook with which you should firmly arm yourselves.

With regard to what should be done to establish a revolutionary world outlook, I have mentioned this on many occasions. So I shall only touch upon this matter briefly today.

In establishing a revolutionary world outlook it is most important to arm yourselves firmly with our Party’s Juche idea. The Juche idea is the basic weapon of our revolution. You can only prevent all kinds of germs from invading your bodies when you arm yourselves firmly with this idea. The LKYJ is an organization of young people fighting for the reunification of the motherland and the Korean revolution. Therefore, it should strive to arm the league members firmly with the Juche idea of our Party.
To equip young people with a firm revolutionary world outlook, it is necessary to teach them not to forget the past, while educating them in the Juche idea.

Bringing up young Koreans in Japan not to forget the past means making them remember the insults the Korean people were subjected to and the bitter lives they led in the past, deprived of their country by the Japanese imperialists; making them remember the hard and miserable lives their parents led, scavenging in refuse heaps and roaming the streets of Japan after leaving their beloved homeland and dear homes and their harsh lives in the past when they underwent all kinds of national humiliation and discrimination.

You must never forget your class position. In the past your fathers and mothers crossed the Korea Strait carrying a bundle on their backs. At that time none of our compatriots crossed to Japan, carrying a lump of gold with him. Now they are called traders and manufacturers. But all of them had lived hard lives before. This is why we call our traders and manufacturers in Japan patriotic traders and manufacturers who have a national revolutionary spirit.

It is very important to make the young Koreans in Japan remember the past. It is only when they do not forget the bitter past that they can hate imperialism and colonialism, and only then will the idea and conviction become confirmed and deepened in their minds that they must build a socialist and communist society where everyone lives equally well. Furthermore, they can only harden their determination to drive the US imperialists out of south Korea and regain half of the homeland when they do not forget the past.

Therefore, you must never forget the sorrows of a stateless people and the hard plight our people experienced in the past. You must never forget the saying that people without their own country are more miserable than a dog in the house of mourning.

In establishing a revolutionary world outlook it is also important to strengthen education in socialist patriotism.

The young Koreans in Japan must ardently love the socialist motherland where there is no capitalist, no exploitation or oppression
and where everyone is equally prosperous, studying as much as they wish and enjoying free medical care. A major task facing the LKYJ is to educate the young Koreans in Japan to love the socialist motherland. Our motherland is the socialist motherland and our patriotism is the socialist patriotism of loving the socialist motherland. South Korea today is not the motherland of the Korean nationals in Japan but a colony of the US and Japanese imperialists. The only motherland of the Korean people is the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea. Therefore, the young Koreans in Japan must love the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, their motherland, and unconditionally defend the socialist system established in the northern half of Korea. Without the socialist motherland our compatriots in Japan cannot have legitimate national rights as overseas citizens of an independent and sovereign state nor can they enjoy the dignified and worthwhile life they do now.

The LKYJ must educate the young Koreans in Japan to love the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, their only socialist motherland, ardently. And Chongryon’s educational work must be completely devoted to arming the rising generation with the spirit of love for the socialist motherland. In this way, all the young people will grow up to be staunch revolutionaries fully prepared to dedicate themselves body and soul to the struggle for the socialist motherland.

Next, the LKYJ must work hard to defend the democratic, national rights of the Korean citizens in Japan. An important element in this struggle is to start a strong movement to recover Koreans and to prevent them from becoming assimilated with the Japanese.

According to Chongryon comrades who have visited the homeland, there are some compatriots under the influence of “Mindan” (the Federation of South Korean Residents in Japan) who do not know the Korean language. This is a very serious matter, indeed.

As we always say, a language is one of the most important criteria among the common features that characterize a nation. If our compatriots in Japan do not know Korean, they can scarcely be called
Koreans and they may become Japanese. The young Koreans in Japan must not fall a prey to the sinister plots of the Japanese reactionaries to exterminate Koreans in Japan one by one by a policy of national assimilation. You must oppose their national assimilation policy resolutely and make every effort to seek out all the Koreans so that none will be assimilated with the Japanese. You can only defend your national rights fully by doing this.

Even if Koreans are assimilated, the Japanese reactionaries do not give them the equal rights with the Japanese, for the Japanese reactionaries have not discarded their imperialist nature by which they discriminate against and insult other races. If a man discards his national identity, what is the use of living? He can only find life truly worthwhile and happy when he leads an independent and creative life, enjoying political rights as master of his country and nation.

An important task facing the LKYJ in the struggle to defend democratic, national rights is that of leading the young Koreans in Japan to study the Korean language hard, fully understand our people’s revolutionary traditions, know Korean history well, warmly love their glorious socialist motherland and struggle resolutely in defence of the honour of the Korean nation.

The class struggle against the capitalists is not a serious problem for the young Koreans in Japan.

There is no monopoly capitalist among our compatriots in Japan.

Therefore, the LKYJ has no need to carry on the class struggle against the monopoly capitalists. You only have to fight in defence of the democratic, national rights of the Korean nation in Japan.

Your revolutionary struggle is to defend democratic, national rights and protect the socialist motherland. And your class struggle is the struggle against the Japanese reactionaries’ insult and humiliation of the Korean nation. If you fight resolutely for the accomplishment of the Korean revolution with firm determination to carry it through to the end, you will be waging your class struggle well.

Next, the young Koreans in Japan must be trained to be useful
workers capable of contributing effectively to socialist construction in the homeland.

In order to raise the young Koreans in Japan to be workers who are useful to socialist construction in the homeland, they must first be encouraged to make a thorough study of advanced science and technology.

The homeland needs large numbers of scientists and technicians. The young Koreans in Japan must study science and technology so as to take an active part in economic and cultural development and state administration in the future when they return home. They can only produce many inventions of their own even in Japan, thereby adding lustre to the honour of the motherland and contributing to its prosperity and progress, when they acquire wide scientific and technical knowledge.

At present, all the young people and students in the homeland are participating in a movement to acquire at least one technical skill. It would be good if the young Koreans in Japan were also to start a determined movement to master one technical skill or more. There may be difficulties since the Japanese reactionaries, who practise racial discrimination, do not teach technology to Koreans. Just the same, you must learn technology at any cost. An extensive movement to learn technology must be conducted amongst young Koreans in Japan to train many technicians in different spheres.

Next, the work of combining with young people from different backgrounds must be done skilfully.

If the LKYJ only wants to admit young people of working-class origin to its organizations, it cannot rally a large number of youngsters. Many of the sons and daughters of compatriots in Japan come from families of medium and small traders and manufacturers. They should all be rallied close in the ranks of your youth league.

Large Japanese factories are now reluctant to employ Koreans. Therefore, to support themselves, the Koreans in Japan have no choice but to engage in medium and small trade and manufacture. Their medium and small trade is no more than running small restaurants and
selling food and drink. And the business is run using their own labour. These people cannot be regarded as capitalists. Therefore, you must not oppose our compatriots engaging in medium and small trade and manufacture in Japan but rally all their sons and daughters in the ranks of the youth league so that they will work hard for the motherland and the revolution, socialism and communism.

The LKYJ must unite all the young Koreans on the principle of great national unity.

You must not forget even for a moment that reunifying the divided motherland is the greatest desire and supreme national task of our people. The Korean nation is a homogeneous nation of the same stock and our country was a single state for a long time. Our country and our people can never be divided. We must be reunified into one Korea, into one nation.

In order to bring about the country’s reunification as soon as possible, all the new generation of Korea, including the young south Koreans and those under the influence of “Mindan” in Japan, must fight in unity.

The young Koreans in Japan must strengthen their unity with the young people of south Korea and the “Mindan”-lined young people to make them fight for the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity set forth in the July 4 North-South Joint Statement and the five-point policy for national reunification which we laid down last year.

Today the young people of south Korea are waging a daring battle for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. The masters of the south Korean revolution are the south Korean people themselves. In the south Korean revolution the young south Koreans should become its pillars. You must support and encourage them and the students more actively in their struggle.

Next, the work of uniting with Japanese young people must be strengthened.

It is of particular importance for the young Koreans in Japan to unite with Japanese working-class youngsters. There are not many
young Koreans in Japan who live a working-class life, because of the racial discrimination policy of the Japanese reactionaries. In this situation, it is necessary to increase your unity with young working-class Japanese. You must also strengthen your unity with the progressive young people of various sections in Japan and successfully form a united front with them.

Since the south Korean reactionaries, Japanese reactionaries and US imperialists are now plotting to repress Chongryon, it is necessary to win over broad sections of the young Japanese and urge them to carry out a strong campaign to support and inspire the Korean nationals in Japan and smash the enemies’ subversive plans and sabotage against Chongryon. In other words, you must win more sympathy and support from the young Japanese and Japanese people for our just cause by strengthening your unity with them.

While strengthening your unity with the young Japanese, it is also necessary to strengthen your solidarity with the young people of various countries.

In the past year the LKYJ worked very well with foreign youth. Drawing on its experience, it must be more active in its efforts to strengthen international solidarity.

You must explain and propagate our Party’s Juche idea amongst young foreigners on a wide scale. Tokyo is one of the big international cities visited by many people from different countries. If you make good use of this fact, you will greatly help our revolutionary cause. Therefore, you must work hard there to cement your solidarity with the young people of various countries.

In company with workers of the League of Socialist Working Youth in the homeland, you must also launch into the international arena and engage in activities as delegates of Korean youth. This will enable you to win over many more supporters and sympathizers internationally, thoroughly frustrate the repressive and subversive activities and sabotage of the Japanese reactionaries and the south Korean reactionaries against the Chongryon organizations and prevent our enemies from laying hands on Chongryon.
Finally, the young Koreans in Japan must keep up their vigorous struggle to win freedom of travel to and from the homeland.

You have seen and learned a great deal in the homeland during this month, living with young people in the homeland. How good this is! In establishing a firmer revolutionary world outlook it is essential for you to come to the homeland and see, hear and learn. In the future, too, young Koreans in Japan must visit the homeland frequently to have closer ties with the young people here, get well acquainted with the youth movement and the development of youngsters in the homeland and improve their work accordingly.

With regard to other problems, I have already spoken a great deal about them, so I shall say no more today.

I firmly believe that you will make a great contribution to the independent, peaceful reunification of the country, maintaining our Party’s policy.

I am very pleased that despite the difficult conditions the Korean nationals in Japan, firmly united around the Central Standing Committee of Chongryon, are making a worthy contribution to the work of uniting with the Japanese people and to the cause of national reunification, frustrating all the intrigues and stratagems of the US and Japanese reactionaries and the south Korean puppet clique.

I hope you will convey my warm greetings to all our 600,000 compatriots in Japan.
THE US IMPERIALIST ARMY OF AGGRESSION MUST WITHDRAW UNCONDITIONALLY FROM SOUTH KOREA

Speech at a Mass Rally in Pyongyang to Welcome the Party and Government Delegation of the Syrian Arab Republic

October 1, 1974

Your Excellency esteemed Mr. President Hafez Al Assad,
Esteemed guests from Syria,
Dear comrades and friends,

People of all walks of life in Pyongyang are gathered here today, greatly delighted to meet you, the envoys of goodwill from the Syrian people, who have brought with you warm friendly feelings towards the Korean people.

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and all the Korean people, I should like once again to warmly welcome the Party and Government delegation of the Syrian Arab Republic led by Your Excellency Mr. Hafez Al Assad, General Secretary of the Arab Baath Socialist Party and President of the Syrian Arab Republic.

Allow me also to extend, through you, the Korean people’s warm and friendly greetings to the fraternal Syrian people.

Korea and Syria are both situated on the Asian continent; our two peoples are linked by a bond of firm militant friendship because of their common past when they were oppressed and maltreated under
imperialist colonial rule and because of the common struggle they are waging at present to build a new life.

In the course of our meeting with you here on this occasion, we have felt keenly how close our two peoples are to each other as comrades-in-arms fighting against the common enemy and as brothers, although geographically they are far apart.

This bond of friendship linking the two peoples has been formed precisely through the common struggle against imperialism and colonialism.

We greatly admire the successes achieved by the Syrian people in building a new society and, in particular, the heroism and patriotic devotion displayed by them in the October liberation war last year.

Under the correct leadership of Your Excellency Mr. President Hafez Al Assad, their outstanding leader, the Syrian people struck heavy blows at the Israeli aggressors in the October war last year and in continued fierce fighting on the Golan Heights. This humbled the pride of the Israeli aggressors and called a halt to their ambitious plan of aggression to occupy and dominate Arab territory for all time.

This also inspired the Arab peoples with the conviction that if a people rise up in a just cause in complete unity they can defeat any enemy, and marked a new turning point in the solution of the Middle East question.

We rejoice over the historic victory won by the Syrian people as our own and greet it warmly.

Everything clearly shows that in spite of temporary difficulties in their struggle against imperialism and Zionism, for the independent development of their country and territorial integrity, the Syrian people are confidently winning victory and advancing.

During the October war last year, the Arab countries conducted joint military operations and took concerted economic action in imposing an oil embargo on the imperialists, thereby delivering unprecedentedly heavy blows against the imperialists and Zionists. This showed that if they fight in complete unity, the Arab countries can seize the imperialists by the scruff of the neck.
The Zionists are still continuing to perpetrate acts of aggression and military provocation against the Arab peoples with the active support of the imperialists and are seriously threatening peace and security in the Middle East.

But no matter what distracted efforts the imperialists and Zionists may make, they are merely the deathbed struggle of those destined to be ruined.

It is entirely because of the aggressive acts of the US imperialists and Zionists that the Middle East problem still remains unsolved and that war breaks out repeatedly in this part of the world.

If the Middle East problem is to be settled correctly, it is necessary, above all, to put an end to the aggressive moves of the imperialists and Zionists in this area, force the Israeli aggressors to withdraw from all the occupied Arab territories and completely restore the legitimate rights of the Palestinian people.

The Government and people of the Syrian Arab Republic maintain the firm revolutionary stand of resorting to every available means to liberate their lost land, and they are making every effort to achieve a fair solution of the Middle East problem.

The Syrian people are making great progress in their endeavours to heal the war wounds, to develop industry and agriculture and strengthen the armed forces.

As in the past, so in the future, our people will stand firm by the fraternal Syrian people fighting against imperialism and Zionism and for the building of a new society and strongly support their just stand.

The Korean people also express full support and firm solidarity for the Palestinian people’s just struggle for the complete liberation of their homeland and the restoration of their legitimate rights and for the fight of all the Arab peoples to regain the occupied Arab territories and safeguard their national dignity.

Today the struggle of the Arab peoples against imperialism and Zionism is developing within the joint struggle of peoples the world over for peace and democracy, national independence and social progress.
The Israeli aggressors are boasting arrogantly, but they will be defeated for certain because they are entrusting their destiny to the moribund force of imperialism.

The Arab peoples will definitively win victory because they possess vast territories, huge material and manpower resources and belong to the third world which is advancing from victory to victory as newly-emerging forces.

The victory won by the Arab peoples in the struggle against the Israeli aggressors backed by US imperialism is precisely our people’s victory, and our people’s victory is the Arab people’s victory.

At the instigation of US imperialism the present rulers of south Korea have continued to perpetrate hostile acts against the Arab peoples, in collusion with Israel; they have threatened to attack our Republic by using so-called “Israeli tactics”. But since these “tactics” have been smashed to smithereens by the heroic struggle of the Syrian people, the designs of the south Korean authorities have also come to nothing.

The struggles of the Korean people and the Syrian people support and complement each other and this relationship is being further consolidated and developed with the passing of time.

Dear comrades and friends,

The greatest national task confronting our people at present is that of reunifying the divided country at the earliest possible date.

In order to accomplish the historic cause of national reunification, we have put forward three major tasks.

They are: first, to give a powerful impetus to socialist construction in the northern half of Korea; second, to strengthen the revolutionary forces of south Korea by actively supporting and encouraging the democratic movement of the south Korean people; and third, to increase solidarity with the international revolutionary forces.

Under the Party’s leadership our people are now successfully carrying out socialist construction in the northern half of Korea, applying the Juche idea.

Upholding the banner of the three revolutions–ideological, technical and cultural–our people are all mobilized at present in grand
socialist construction to fulfil the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and reach the gigantic construction targets for the next long-term plan, and are bringing about a great revolutionary advance on all fronts by waging a vigorous “speed campaign”.

Our country has splendid prospects in socialist construction. We feel sure that in the near future the higher goals of socialist construction we have set ourselves will be attained.

Encouraged by the successes achieved in socialist construction in the northern half of Korea, the south Korean people’s movement against fascism and for democracy is growing steadily.

In south Korea, recently, despite the harsh fascist repression, the anti-“government” struggle of the workers and student youth, intellectuals and religious believers and people of all other social sections has flared up again. They are calling for the democratization of society and the country’s peaceful reunification and demanding the abolition of the present military fascist ruling system.

This graphically illustrates that no amount of fascist suppression can break the people’s resistance.

The south Korean people’s courageous struggle against the present south Korean rulers is a just struggle for the right to existence and democracy, and is a patriotic struggle for the country and the nation.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic will always do all they can to give active assistance to the south Korean people’s just struggle and join with them in hastening the independent, peaceful reunification of the motherland.

The most urgent problem in solving the question of our country’s reunification is to remove the “UN forces” helmet from US occupation troops in south Korea and force them to withdraw completely.

It has become the unyielding demand of the times that foreign troops hiding under the cloak of “UN forces” should be withdrawn from south Korea.

On the joint proposal of 35 UN member states including Syria, the current 29th Session of the UN General Assembly is due to discuss the question of the withdrawal of all foreign troops stationed in south
Korea under the UN flag.

Since the situation has taken an unfavourable turn for them, the US imperialists are now scheming to fool world public opinion and avoid troop withdrawals by using preposterous arguments. They are claiming that US troops in south Korea are not “UN forces” but troops staying in south Korea under the so-called “South Korea-US Mutual Defence Pact” and that if the “UN forces” are withdrawn, there will be a danger of war breaking out again.

When they find it advantageous to use the name of the UN to justify the occupation of south Korea by US imperialist aggression troops, they call those troops “UN forces”, and when they find it disadvantageous to don the helmet of “UN forces”, they maintain that the troops are not “UN forces”. This is strictly in keeping with the criminal logic to which the US imperialists invariably resort.

It is an absolute historical fact that before the fabrication of the “South Korea-US Mutual Defence Pact” US troops had already come into south Korea under the guise of “UN forces”. Nothing can conceal this fact.

When the stationing of US troops in south Korea cannot be justified even with the name of “UN forces”, it is all the more foolish to try to justify it with what they call a “pact” connived at between the US imperialists and the traitorous clique in south Korea.

The US imperialists also argue that if the “UN forces” withdraw from south Korea without any guarantee for the implementation of the Armistice Agreement, the danger of war will increase. This does not stand the test of reason at all.

The maintenance of the armistice in Korea is not guaranteed by US troops, but by the consistent, peaceable efforts of the Government of our Republic.

If the foreign troops, which have obstructed the peaceful reunification of Korea and caused a constant danger of war in Korea under the cloak of “UN forces”, withdraw in accordance with the resolution of the UN General Assembly, this very fact will provide a firm guarantee for the preservation of peace in Korea and the question
of any other guarantee will not arise.

If any question does arise after the withdrawal of foreign troops, it will not be a problem for any third party to meddle in, but will be the internal affair of the Koreans themselves—a matter of such a nature that it should be settled through negotiations between the parties concerned in north and south. The firm basis for such negotiations is provided by the North-South Joint Statement.

If any question arises during the withdrawal of foreign troops, it can be dealt with through negotiations between the DPRK and the US, the parties directly concerned.

Since we have already proposed to the US authorities that a peace agreement be concluded, there will be no problem here.

Nonetheless, the US authorities, while giving no reply to our proposal on a peace agreement, are only clamouring for some sort of guarantee with regard to the withdrawal of US troops from south Korea. This is designed to prevent the withdrawal of US troops from south Korea at any cost and to keep Korea permanently divided and retain hold of south Korea at least.

In fact, if US troops remain in south Korea, this will constitute a constant danger of war, and once war breaks out, it could easily develop into a total war.

If the US does not want to suffer a heavier defeat in Korea and Asia, it must change its policy towards Korea and stop trying to bolster the present south Korean rulers who are in difficulties because of the people’s fierce resistance and distrust.

Since the south Korean authorities are following the path of selling out the country and betraying the nation, while persisting in the policy of dependence on foreign forces and in the attempts to perpetuate the national division and intensifying their fascist repression of the south Korean people, it is impossible to solve the question of the country’s reunification through negotiations with the present south Korean authorities alone.

Therefore, it is necessary to convene a Great National Congress broadly representing people of all levels and different political parties
and social organizations in the north and south and hold negotiations in
the spirit of great national unity irrespective of different ideologies and
religious beliefs so as to remove division and confrontation in Korea
and discuss the question of reunification seriously on the principles of
unity and collaboration.

Korea is one and ours is a homogeneous nation; therefore, it cannot
be split into two or divided into two countries for ever.

The three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and
great national unity must be maintained in the spirit of the North-South
Joint Statement.

First of all, foreign troops bearing the emblem of “UN forces” must
quit south Korea as soon as possible in order to ease tension in Korea.

Once foreign troops pull out of south Korea, a wide avenue will be
opened for the independent, peaceful reunification of Korea.

As time passes, the general situation is turning in favour of our
people’s struggle to reunify the country independently and peacefully.

US imperialism and its lackeys are being isolated and rejected more
and more by the people of the world and international support and
solidarity for our revolutionary cause are being strengthened as never
before.

Taking advantage of this opportunity today, I should like to extend
my warm thanks to Your Excellency Mr. President and the
Government and people of the Syrian Arab Republic for the active
support and encouragement given by the Syrian Government and
people to our people’s just struggle for the independent, peaceful
reunification of the country, and express deep thanks to all the
peace-loving countries and peoples of the world for their support and
encouragement for our cause of national reunification.

Dear comrades and friends,

Today imperialism is being hit harder and driven out everywhere in
the world and the people of the third world, who were oppressed and
maltreated in the past, have emerged in the arena of history and are
marching ahead along the road to independence.

The international balance of forces has fundamentally changed.
Now the final say in the world arena belongs to the peoples who were once exploited and oppressed.

In Asia today there are many revolutionary and fighting countries and the vast area of Asia from Korea to China, Indochina and the Middle East has become the theatre of the anti-imperialist, revolutionary struggle.

The Cambodian people continue to wage a courageous struggle against US imperialism and its lackeys and for the complete liberation of their country; the South Vietnamese people, in company with the North Vietnamese people, are fighting strongly to ensure the strict implementation of the Paris Agreement and defend the gains of the revolution; and the Laotian people are fighting to build a reunified and prosperous, new Laos.

We actively support the struggle being waged by the peoples of Indochina, the struggle of the Chinese people to liberate Taiwan, an inseparable part of the territory of the People’s Republic of China, and the struggle of all Asian peoples against US imperialism and Japanese militarism.

The battle of the peoples against imperialist aggression and intervention to defend their national independence and sovereignty, to protect the resources of their countries and to achieve economic independence, is gaining momentum with every passing day in Africa and Latin America, as well as in Asia.

We strongly support the efforts of all the African peoples to sweep away imperialism, colonialism and racism and achieve the complete liberation and unity of Africa and express firm solidarity with the fight of the Latin-American peoples against US domination and control, and in defence of national sovereignty, natural resources and the territorial waters limit.

Imperialism is toppling and peoples are winning their liberation struggle. This is the irresistible basic trend of our era.

The Fourth Summit Conference of Non-Aligned States held last year and many other subsequent international meetings, including the Sixth Special Session of the UN General Assembly on the Problem of Raw
Materials and Development and the Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea, vividly demonstrated the great influence exerted by the third world countries on present international relations and their united might.

Everything shows that if the third world people unite more firmly and fight with concerted action, they can smash any aggressive moves of imperialism and precipitate its final destruction and rapidly build an independent and prosperous new Asia, Africa and Latin America.

The Korean people will, as in the past, continue to fight resolutely for the victory of the common cause against imperialism, in solid unity with the peoples of the socialist countries, the peoples of the third world and all progressive peoples of the world and will strongly back and inspire the struggle of all peoples against imperialism and colonialism.

Bound by revolutionary solidarity and friendly ties, the Korean and Syrian peoples are fighting together and advancing together on the same Asian continent.

The present visit to our country by Your Excellency Mr. President and the Syrian Party and Government delegation forcefully demonstrates that the friendship and solidarity between our two Parties, two countries and two peoples have reached the firmest and highest stage.

We are immensely satisfied with this; and we shall exert every effort for the further expansion and development of friendly relations between our two countries in various spheres.

The Korean people will fight on, always firmly joining hands with the fraternal Syrian people, for the triumph of our common cause under the noble revolutionary banner of the anti-imperialist struggle.

Long live the unbreakable, militant friendship and solidarity between the Korean and Syrian peoples!

Long live the solidarity of the progressive peoples of Asia, Africa, Latin America and the rest of the world!

I wish Your Excellency Mr. President Hafez Al Assad and the Syrian people great victories in the struggle against imperialism and Zionism and for territorial integrity and the independent progress of your country.
Thank you for coming thousands of kilometres across the ocean to visit our country.

In Latin America, through many publications, you have given active support and encouragement to our people in their righteous cause of national reunification. For this I express my gratitude to you.

I am very glad to meet you today; you have been an active supporter of our people’s just cause. Although this is our first meeting, I feel as though I am meeting an old friend.

I am deeply moved by your kind complimentary words about this country and me and by your remark that you will regard this country as your second homeland. What moved us above all is the fact that you have brought with you a valuable souvenir weighing as much as 15 kilogrammes all the way from your home. Accept my heartfelt thanks for your fine gift. We will place this token of your good wishes in our History Museum to show our people. The Korean people will always remember your good will.

We are deeply moved by your kindness. That is why I chose to spend a few hours with you today in this guesthouse rather than in my office.

I feel very happy to have such a good friend as you in Latin America.

From the newspapers I am well acquainted with the situation in
your country. Both your country and ours are developing countries, and can be regarded as belonging to the third world.

You said our country has been industrialized and highly developed, but it is a young country. We have only just laid the foundations enabling us to stand on our own feet and to develop the country through our own efforts.

Without economic independence it would be impossible to ensure political independence.

We have built a solid, independent national economy. Therefore, it is not subordinated to anyone; it is completely independent. There is no foreign capital in our country. We are not shackled to any other country.

All the goods on sale in our shops are homemade. Foreign visitors to our country admire the fact that our shops do not sell foreign goods. If one has money to import food and cloth, it is better to use it to purchase machines, factories and the like to develop the national economy.

It is very important to teach the people to live on domestic products. Only when people are taught to use homemade goods will they acquire a feeling of national pride. We are intensifying education in socialist patriotism to induce the people to value and economize in homemade goods.

As is shown by our country’s experience, economic independence is vital to complete national independence.

In order to achieve economic independence one must rely on one’s own resources. Self-reliance, however, does not in any sense preclude economic and technical exchanges with other countries. By self-reliance we do not mean producing for ourselves all the machinery and equipment we need. We import some kinds of sophisticated factory equipment. But we do not go hat in hand for aid which might put us in a subordinate position.

Since World War II many countries have won independence. Many Asian, African and Latin-American countries especially, which were once colonies of Britain, France and other imperialist powers, have
won political independence. Some of them, however, have not attained economic independence as a firm guarantee for their political independence. Taking advantage of this, the imperialists continue their economic plunder of these countries. So, if they are to become completely independent and sovereign nations, the newly independent countries must continue their struggle for economic independence. Many Latin-American countries are now striving to attain economic independence. This is very good.

Recently we have met and talked to journalists from many countries. We met journalists from Panama, Argentina and Peru. Many of the questions which they asked us concerned how to secure national independence. We explained that national independence must be accompanied by economic independence and that economic independence necessitates not only the political unity of the developing countries but also their close economic and technical cooperation.

There are now over 100 developing countries in the world. If each contributed one good technique, that would make more than a hundred. Accordingly, if they learn from each other what they do not know and teach each other what they know, help each other and cooperate closely in the economic sphere, the developing countries can progress rapidly and dispense with the aid of the great powers with strings attached to it. It is more beneficial for the countries of the third world to strengthen mutual friendship and cooperation in this way than to receive aid on various conditions from the big powers.

Peru, for instance, has an advanced fish-processing technique, so she will be able to help other countries in this respect. Our country has valuable experiences in farm irrigation and can help others. If the third world countries support and cooperate with each other in this way, they can develop their economy, culture, science and technology rapidly, and achieve national prosperity without aid with strings attached from the great powers.

You said that the countries dominated by landlords and capitalists fail to unite politically with the developing countries and cooperate
with them economically and technically. There is no reason why they should not unite and cooperate with the third world countries. We do not think that social and political systems offer any big problem to the third world countries in achieving unity and cooperation.

Indeed, big landlords and monopoly capitalists do constitute an obstacle to the building and development of independent and sovereign states. But non-comprador capitalists and small and medium manufacturers can play a positive role in the building of a new society.

In the years of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we pointed to the need for pursuing a policy of protecting non-comprador capitalists and small and medium manufacturers after the defeat of the Japanese imperialists and the country’s liberation. If they are all liquidated in the underdeveloped countries, national progress cannot be expected.

After liberation we only nationalized the enterprises owned by the Japanese imperialists and their stooges; we did not touch the non-comprador capitalists and small and medium manufacturers but, on the contrary, encouraged their business activities. However, the war started by the US imperialists made them bankrupt. In the US imperialists’ bombing raids, they suffered heavy losses and were left with next to nothing. So, they were, in fact, not expropriated by us but by the US imperialists.

During the agrarian reform we only confiscated the land of Japanese imperialists and landlords but not the land of the rich farmers. The rich farmers also went bankrupt because of the US imperialists’ bombing raids.

This bankruptcy and ruin of the non-comprador capitalists and small and medium manufacturers in our towns and of the rich farmers in our country areas created favourable conditions for their socialist transformation.

When we launched the agricultural cooperative movement in the postwar years, some argued that agricultural cooperativization was impossible in the conditions prevailing in our country. But because everything had been reduced to ashes, we could not exist without pooling our efforts. That is why cooperatives were organized in the
country areas. United, the peasants were a strong force and they showed the superiority of cooperative farming.

Just as we brought about cooperativization by uniting the efforts of the poor people, the third world peoples will be able to grow strong quickly by uniting their efforts.

Next, I should like to touch briefly on the question of our national reunification.

In south Korea a handful of comprador capitalists and traitors to the nation are in “power” now. They not only fail to do any good for our nation, but are selling out the country and the people for their own selfish ends. That is why we take a resolute stand against them.

However, we are not hostile to the non-comprador capitalists and small and medium manufacturers in south Korea.

We have the active support of the overwhelming majority of the people, young people, students, non-comprador capitalists and small and medium manufacturers in south Korea with the exception of the small number of comprador capitalists and traitors to the nation.

Are the students in south Korea the sons and daughters of workers and peasants? No, they are not. The sons and daughters of workers and peasants living in south Korea have no money. Consequently, they have no access to colleges and universities; only the children of the rich can enter and study there. Many of the south Korean students are the sons and daughters of small and medium manufacturers. Although the south Korean students come from prosperous families, they support us and sympathize with our patriotic ideas. Since they are educated, they can judge who are the patriots and who are the quislings in Korea. They support us because they are well aware that the Korean communists are true patriots and are working for the interests of the Korean nation.

As for the south Korean authorities, they are either people who have been trained by the “US Central Intelligence Agency” or people who served as officers in the Japanese army when we were fighting against Japanese imperialism. That is why the south Korean young people, students and other sections of the public do not support the puppets of
south Korea but are fighting against them.

The US imperialists occupied south Korea, and have been operating in every way against us communists for nearly thirty years. Never once, however, have they been able to mobilize the students for a demonstration against us.

The south Korean students are not communists. They are young patriots. The patriotic sentiments of the south Korean young people and students are very strong. This is why the US imperialists and south Korean reactionaries have been unable to mobilize the students for a demonstration against us, as much as they would like to do so.

The reactionaries in south Korea are now intensifying their repression of the young people, students and other sections of the south Korean population on an unprecedented scale. In the 1971 “presidential election” the traitor Park Chung Hee secured the “presidency” for himself once more by fraud. Then, he had the “Constitution” altered and further tightened the fascist system with an eye to a “life-time presidency”.

The puppet Park Chung Hee represses everyone who opposes him. This year alone, he has gaoled several thousand patriotic students and people.

Last Sunday I read an article in a Japanese magazine, which said that the south Korean “Army Security Command”, “Metropolitan Garrison Command”, “Central Intelligence Agency”, and the south Korean section of the “USCIA” had taken more than 4,000 south Korean students into custody.

There is an opposition leader in south Korea by the name of Kim Dae Jung. In the last “presidential election” he ran for “President” for the New Democratic Party against Park Chung Hee. His election slogans at the time had considerable merit. He promised that if he won the “presidency”, he would reunify the country peacefully, abolish the police and intelligence government, reduce the armed forces, and protect national capital without inviting foreign capital into the country. Seeing him advocate peaceful reunification, the vast majority of the south Korean population voted for him. When it appeared that he
might be defeated in the “election” by Kim Dae Jung, the puppet Park Chung Hee and his gang, in collusion with the “USCIA”, delayed the counting of the votes for several days, to rig the election. He barely managed to be elected “President”. Kim Dae Jung has now been put under house arrest on various unjustified charges trumped up by the south Korean authorities.

The south Korean reactionaries arrested a poet, Kim Ji Ha, and sentenced him to life imprisonment on a charge of having written the poem *Five Traitors*. Originally, the term “five traitors” meant the five pro-Japanese traitors who had sold out our country to the Japanese imperialists. Kim Ji Ha wrote the poem likening the south Korean rulers to those traitors.

They went so far as to arrest religious men including a Catholic bishop, Ji Hak Sun, and even lawyers who had defended students who had been arrested.

To divert the attention of the students and the people who were rising up in a fierce anti-“government” struggle in south Korea, the reactionaries faked the so-called “shooting incident” on August 15 last. Now they have arrested the “culprit” and are distractedly trying to link the “incident” with us and Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan). The “culprit”, however, is a Korean resident in Japan who has “ROK nationality” and belongs to “Mindan” (the Federation of South Korean Residents in Japan). “Mindan” is an organization of people of south Korean “nationality”.

The south Korean reactionaries now claim that the arrested “culprit” shot Park Chung Hee’s wife, but no one believes it. The Japanese newspaper *Asahi Shimbun* reported a few days ago that there were strong doubts as to whether the bullet that had killed Park Chung Hee’s wife was identical with the one fired by Mun Se Gwang.

Obviously, the “shooting incident” had been plotted by the south Korean authorities in collusion with the “USCIA”. Having concocted the “incident”, the south Korean authorities asserted that Chongryon was involved in it, and requested the Japanese government to crack down on it. The reactionary force within the Japanese government is
complying with the request, but, for all that, the Japanese government will not dare repress Chongryon.

Although the south Korean reactionaries, as you see, are resorting to every conceivable plot and carrying on vile propaganda by inventing lies so as to discredit us, the peoples of the world, to say nothing of the south Korean people, will not be fooled.

All the young people, students and other people of south Korea are resisting the south Korean authorities because they are trying to keep our country divided for ever. No Korean will be happy to see his country and people divided. Who would ever want to see the division of a homogeneous nation which has been living in the same land for 5,000 long years?

Our people lived under Japanese imperialist colonial rule for 36 long years. Since their country’s liberation they have been living for nearly 30 years with one half of their territory stolen by the US imperialists. The earliest possible reunification of the country is our people’s unanimous desire. The US imperialists, however, are constantly manoeuvring to produce “two Koreas” by abetting the south Korean reactionaries.

We are making tireless attempts to frustrate the manoeuvres of the US imperialists and their stooges and reunify the country. A long time ago we proposed instituting a north-south Federation to facilitate national reunification. By the Federation it is envisaged that the north and the south should jointly solve the questions confronting the nation and also take joint action in foreign affairs, leaving intact the socialist system in the northern half of Korea and the present social system in south Korea, and allowing the two governments independent activity. Even the third world countries with differing social systems have economic and cultural interchanges. So I see no reason why one and the same nation should not join together.

When a high-ranking south Korean official came to Pyongyang for north-south high-level talks, we set out the three principles for national reunification.

In the first place, we proposed reunifying the country independently
without depending on foreign forces and free from foreign interference. By independent national reunification we mean that the Koreans themselves should solve the reunification question in conditions where US imperialist aggressive troops are withdrawn from south Korea, the re-entry of the Japanese militarists is prevented and interference by any other outside forces is ruled out.

In the second place, we suggested that the country be reunified peacefully, without recourse to arms against each other. If the principle of reunifying the country peacefully rather than by means of war is observed, the north and the south need not have such large armed forces as they have at present. So we proposed cutting the military strength of both sides. We frankly told him: “Our military burdens are tremendous since we maintain the armed forces at our own expense without foreign aid, whereas the burden for south Korea is not heavy because its armed forces are maintained by aid from the US imperialists; both sides must collaborate and reduce their military strength. Then, our people will be better off and be able to give greater economic aid to south Korea.”

In the third place, we proposed promoting great national unity which would disregard the difference in ideologies, ideals, and systems. We told him: “We won’t care whether the south Koreans believe in Jesus Christ or whatever else; only let north and south collaborate with each other while leaving the state enterprises and cooperative farms in the northern half of our country and the private enterprises in south Korea intact. Then great national unity will be possible; and why shouldn’t we, of the same nation, unite when we unite with other countries which have different social systems?”

The high-ranking official from south Korea said that he agreed to our three principles of national reunification, and pledged to abide by them. However, once back in south Korea, he failed to carry out the pledge and acted contrary to the three principles of national reunification.

Later, when the delegates of the south Korean side came to Pyongyang to attend a meeting of the Co-Chairmen of the North-South
Coordination Commission, we again emphasized that national division should be prevented, and that the north and the south should unite and collaborate, instead of “confronting” each other.

Our country must never be divided into “two Koreas”. The US imperialists are plotting “two Koreas” to make south Korea their permanent military base. If our country enters the UN as “two Koreas”, it means playing into the hands of the crafty US imperialists.

The north and the south must not “confront”, but concede, unite and collaborate with each other. South Korea has large numbers of unemployed and poor people. They can only be relieved through north-south collaboration. Making a great fuss about a “new village movement”, they are now reroofing the thatched houses in south Korea with plastic tiles imported from Japan. Will this solve the question of the peasants’ well-being? If they are to improve the living standards of the peasants, they must carry out irrigation work in the south Korean rural areas. If the south Koreans ask us, we can undertake irrigation projects gratis in the south Korean agricultural areas with our equipment and our technicians. It is said that south Korea has asked Japan for a loan of 2,000 million dollars for “economic development”, but I wonder how they are going to repay it. The foreign debts they have incurred so far alone are said to run into thousands of millions of dollars. When will they be able to clear off these vast debts? Talking to the people from south Korea about this, we suggested they join with us instead of asking other countries for loans, since we would give south Korea everything needed free of charge.

We also told the south Korean authorities that we have rich deposits of iron ore, coal and nonferrous metals in the northern half of Korea, and suggested working them jointly with south Korean manpower and our machines and equipment. As you probably know, they are trading hosts of south Korean men and women to work in West Germany, Brazil and many other capitalist countries as “miners” and “nurses”. The south Koreans who have been sold away overseas are forced to do painful slave labour in alien lands, suffering all manner of national humiliation and maltreatment. North-south economic collaboration
would easily solve the question of unemployment in south Korea. Why should they refuse to collaborate with us while selling off their fellow countrymen, people of the same blood, to other countries as slaves and entertainers?

South Koreans say Japanese fishermen come close to the south Korean waters for their catch, but that south Korean fishermen cannot go out there for fishing because their boats and tackle are old. So, when south Korean top-ranking officials came to Pyongyang, we told them: “The waters off the coasts of the northern half of Korea are teeming with fish; in winter millions of tons of pollack, for instance, come there in shoals, of which we catch only hundreds of thousands of tons; the south Korean fishermen can fish freely in our fishing grounds; if they encounter a storm while fishing there, we will rescue them and give them good treatment.”

Hearing our remarks on north-south collaboration, they admitted that all our proposals were good. Back in south Korea, however, they talked nonsense, proposing to undertake the joint development of Mt. Kumgang. Their motive is to earn money by developing Mt. Kumgang and inviting foreign tourists. This sort of thing will not help to solve our national question.

If they collaborate with us, the south Korean authorities will have to democratize south Korean society, but they say they cannot do this. If north-south collaboration is achieved, south Korean people will come and see the northern half of Korea, and then the south Korean people will support us and turn against them. This is what they fear, so they refuse to collaborate with us. In short, they think that north-south collaboration will turn south Korea “Red”. This is purely an excuse.

In our opinion, although the north and the south of our country have different social systems, they can unite and collaborate as long as neither side imposes its system on the other.

Our Party has now put forward three tasks for achieving the historic cause of national reunification, the uppermost desire of our nation. They are: first, to build socialism better in the northern half of Korea; secondly, to strengthen the revolutionary forces in south Korea by
supporting the democratic movement of the south Korean people; and thirdly, to cement solidarity with the international revolutionary forces, especially with the peoples of the third world.

We believe that successful fulfilment of these three tasks is the only way to drive the US imperialist aggressor army out of south Korea, reunify the country and win the nationwide victory of our revolution. These are the tasks we are fighting hard to carry out.

Once more I express my thanks to you for visiting our country to promote solidarity between the peoples of our two countries. I hope that you will also continue, in the future, to strive for friendship and solidarity between our two peoples.

We have so far been strangers to each other. It is necessary for our two peoples to visit each other more frequently in the future. This will help deepen their mutual understanding and strengthen their solidarity. You have also said that you have gained a better understanding of this country by coming and seeing it than by hearing about it at home, didn’t you? Frequent visits will deepen mutual understanding.

Our country has many visitors from the third world countries. Few come from the imperialist states since we reprimand them without cease. Many people, however, visit this country from the countries that are antagonistic to imperialism and advocate independence. I hope that when you return home, you will encourage more of your people to visit our country.

All that we desire is solidarity with the third world countries. We should like the small countries to unite and get rid of imperialist oppression and live independently.

Independence has now become a worldwide spirit of the times. Many of the capitalist countries, to say nothing of the third world nations, also advocate independence. Canada advocates independence and so do the Japanese people. Some time ago the Chairman of the Japan Socialist Party paid a visit to our country with his delegation, and yesterday a delegation of the General Council of Trade Unions and the Liaison Council of Neutral Trade Unions of Japan came. Progressive people from the Japan Liberal-Democratic Party also visit
our country. They all stand for independence. The other day a Japanese scholars’ delegation came to our country, and they also advocated independence. Such countries as France and Italy, as well as Canada and the Japanese people, all claim independence, and Denmark and Sweden in Northern Europe, too, call for it. We regard the present times as an era of independence.

The united force of the third world peoples is what the imperialists fear more than anything else. That is why they are now resorting to all sorts of tricks to hinder the third world countries from uniting, and are coming out with a strategy to overthrow these countries one by one. Whenever a progressive comes to power in the third world countries, they frame a plot to topple him. Under such circumstances I think it is not bad that progressive military men seize power, as in some African and Latin-American countries, and maintain independence while forestalling the imperialists’ plots to overthrow them.

The third world countries must strengthen their solidarity further by smashing all imperialist attempts to play them off against each other and by combatting their schemes for overthrow of power. Unity is the source of unfailing strength for the third world countries and the guarantee of their victory.

Since they belong to the third world, I think Korea and Ecuador can unite and develop friendly relations on the principles of equality and mutual benefit.

I hope that some day you will visit our country again with your family.
I warmly welcome the visit to our country of a delegation of the General Council of Trade Unions (Sohyo) and the Liaison Council of Neutral Trade Unions (Churitsu Roren) of Japan with the chairman of Sohyo as the head and the chairman of Churitsu Roren as the deputy head.

Your current visit to this country is highly important in strengthening friendship and solidarity between the working classes and the peoples of our two countries. For this reason, I accord a cordial welcome to your visit once again.

Through you, we extend our thanks to the working class and people of Japan for the positive support and encouragement they are giving to the struggle of Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) and the Korean citizens in Japan to defend their democratic, national rights and to the just cause of our Republic.

I am very glad to meet you.

Although I am seeing you today for the first time, I feel as though I am meeting old acquaintances. The working class of Korea and Japan waged a joint struggle in the past against the oppression of the Japanese imperialists and the exploitation of Japanese monopoly
capital and today, too, they are fighting jointly in opposition to the militarization of Japan. In the future they will also carry on a stronger joint struggle, shoulder to shoulder.

I express my gratitude to you, the delegation head, for your high praise of our people’s efforts and our work and for your very kind words for me.

The Korean people know very well that the Japanese people, led by the working class, are carrying out a valiant fight against the monopoly capitalists and for Japan’s neutrality and independence and for peace in Asia.

We are full of admiration for your dynamic struggle to abolish the US imperialist military bases in Japan and to oppose the fascist suppression of the people by the south Korean puppet clique as well as the criminal schemes of the Japanese reactionaries which are aimed at the repression of Chongryon.

It is most important for the working class of Korea and Japan to unite closely and strengthen the joint fight still further. This is because the struggles of the working classes and peoples of our two countries are closely connected and are contributing greatly to preserving peace in Asia.

They both stand face to face with US imperialism, the ringleader of world imperialism. The US imperialists have turned south Korea, half of our country, into their military base of aggression and are maintaining many military bases in Japan, too. Their maintenance of military bases in Korea and Japan means that they possess the means of meddling at any time in the internal affairs of these countries and, furthermore, of other Asian countries. As long as these military bases are kept there, the US imperialists may possibly interfere in the internal affairs of Korea and Japan at any moment. In other words, the existing of the US military bases there presupposes that our two countries could suffer US imperialist intervention.

The overlords of both the south Korean reactionaries and the Japanese militarists are the US imperialists. These reactionaries and militarists who act under instructions from the same overlords are now
intent on suppressing the revolutionary struggles of the Korean and Japanese peoples at the instigation of the US imperialists. In this sense, it can be said that the targets of the Korean and the Japanese revolutions or the object of the struggle of the Korean working class and that of the Japanese working class, are one and the same.

Today the working classes and the peoples of our two countries stand equally firm on the anti-imperialist front. The present anti-imperialist front in Asia is very far-reaching. A solid anti-imperialist front exists in areas of Asia ranging from Japan through Korea, China and Indochina to Iraq and Syria.

US imperialism is the enemy of the Korean and Japanese peoples and the common enemy of revolutionary people throughout the world. Today no place in the world, without exception, is free from the wicked outstretched tentacles of the US imperialists. They are especially directing the spearhead of their aggression to Asia and are continuing to station their huge aggressive armed forces there. Although Okinawa is formally said to have been returned to Japan, a large number of US troops still remain there. There are also US imperialist military bases in Thailand.

The US imperialists are going into decline since they suffered bitter defeats in the Korean war, the Viet Nam war and the war in the Middle East, but they still refuse to discard their aggressive ambitions. The aggressive nature of imperialism can never change.

At present the US imperialists are resorting to all kinds of plots to suppress the revolutionary struggle of the Asian peoples and the world’s revolutionary people and to undermine the people’s solidarity.

Their pretence of “detente” is one of these underhand designs.

This pretence disguises a sinister intention. Resorting to double-dealing tactics, with an olive branch in one hand and a sword in the other, is typical of the methods which the US imperialists use in invading other countries.

As Nixon did in the past, the present US imperialist rulers are also conniving to remove large countries from the anti-imperialist front by striking bargains with them and improving relations with them on the
one hand and, on the other, to destroy small revolutionary countries
one by one, behind the smoke screen of “detente”.

While trying to improve relations with large countries, the US
imperialists are now taking the path of stepping up their aggressive acts
against small countries.

If they earnestly want to ease the tension in Korea, they must
withdraw their troops from south Korea and discontinue their military
“aid” to the south Korean puppets. However, they not only refuse to
withdraw their troops from south Korea but also continue to ship arms
to it and are increasing their aggressive activities against the northern
half of Korea.

If they were to remove the tension from Indochina and want to see
peace restored in this area, they will have to abstain from giving
military aid to the Thieu puppet clique of South Viet Nam and to the
Lon Nol puppet clique of Cambodia. But they are further increasing
their military aid to the puppets.

Not long after Nixon spoke about detente during his visit to the
Soviet Union, the Israeli aggressors started another war in the Middle
East against the Arab people. They sparked a new war there at the
instigation of the US imperialists and during the war the latter backed
them with positive assistance. This is a fact which is known to the
world.

According to information given us by President Asaad of Syria and
the special envoy from Egypt who visited our country some time ago,
at the time of the Middle East war in October last year the US
imperialists provided Israel with large planes and up-to-date military
equipment on an extensive scale and went to the length of sending their
pilots to take a direct part in the aggressive war. So the Arab people are
little short of battling the US imperialists in effect, although they
fought the Israeli army. By fighting the valiant battle against the
aggressors they struck a severe blow at the US imperialists and Israeli
invaders, securing a great victory.

The “reduction of armaments” about which the US imperialists are
talking is a scheme to deceive the world.
The US imperialists talk about armament reduction to ease international tension but do not remove their military bases from other countries. The relaxation of international tension presupposes, first of all, the removal of military bases which the US imperialists maintain in other countries. Talking about “armament reduction” without striving to abolish their military bases in other countries is itself a ridiculous thing.

Recently the US imperialists have withdrawn some of their military bases from South Viet Nam and Thailand to the Philippines and Guam Island. This is also nothing but a deception. If they are to relieve tension in Asia, they should not transfer their armed forces of aggression to the Philippines and Guam Island but to their own country. Moreover, they keep their military bases in south Korea and Japan, alleging that they are their “advance bases”. These facts clearly show that they have not discarded their aggressive ambitions against Asia and that they do not want the easing of tension in this part of the world.

The US imperialists’ suggestion on the prohibition of nuclear tests is another wicked attempt to allow themselves alone to have nuclear weapons but to prevent other countries from possessing them. The mere prohibition of nuclear tests is not enough to make the people of the world free from the threat of nuclear weapons. In order to eliminate the danger of nuclear war fully, it is imperative to destroy the existing nuclear arms once and for all, and ban their manufacture completely.

Not long ago a certain person in the US Department of Defence said that Asian affairs should be settled by relying on their “allied states”. These states in Asia are satellite countries and puppets such as Japan, south Korea and the Philippines. When they say that they will rely on their “allied states” for the settlement of Asian affairs, the US imperialists intend to get out of the place of death by letting these satellite countries and puppets fight and to make profits out of war while giving commands in the background and providing them with arms. This shows that they keep resorting to the tricky “Nixon doctrine” to make the Asians fight against each other in Asia, the
Africans in Africa and the Latin Americans in Latin America.

The normalization of diplomatic relations between Korea and Japan and other matters of improving relations between them have remained unsettled mainly because the US imperialists manipulate the Japanese reactionaries behind the scenes, although its immediate cause lies in the hostile policy of these reactionaries towards our Republic.

The working class must not be deceived by the crafty slogan of the “easing of tension” put up by the US imperialists. We must clearly understand that this slogan is a plot to numb the revolutionary consciousness of the people of the world and undermine the solidarity of the working class.

We are all fighting against imperialism and for the freedom and well-being of the people. This is why we must always guard against the imperialist schemes and stratagems and must not weaken the struggle against the imperialists in the least.

The valiant struggle waged by the working class and people of Japan gives great encouragement to their counterparts throughout the world and to the Korean people in particular. We value this struggle highly.

The head of the delegation has stated that in future, too, the working class of Japan will have to strengthen the struggle to oppose the reactionary forces there and defend its own interests. I consider this statement to be highly justifiable.

The working classes and peoples of our two countries must unite and fight strenuously to put an end to the US imperialists’ military bases in south Korea and Japan. Only when they drive the US imperialists out of their countries can the Korean and Japanese peoples create conditions for settling their affairs by themselves. In addition, the working classes and peoples of our two countries must strive resolutely to completely eliminate the military bases of the US imperialists in all areas on the globe where they have established footholds, in unity with the working class and people all over the world.

Although they are working craftily to deceive the revolutionary
people of the world and undermine their solidarity, the US imperialists can neither dupe them nor disrupt the revolutionary forces which are firmly rallied on the anti-imperialist front.

Today the anti-imperialist front is growing in strength contrary to the hopes of the US imperialists, and an increasing number of people across the world are awakening to take part in the revolutionary struggle. The intense struggle of the revolutionary people of the world will surely frustrate the US imperialists’ cunning tricks.

Now I shall speak on the south Korean question.

Last Sunday I read an article written by a person affiliated to “Mindan” (the Federation of South Korean Residents in Japan), which appeared in a Japanese magazine, Sekai. It was very logical. The writer is well informed about the state of things in south Korea and about the situation in Asia. It gives the reader an even clearer impression in understanding the state of affairs in south Korean society because it is written by a person who belongs to “Mindan”, not by an activist of the Japan Socialist or Communist Party nor by a worker of the General Council of Trade Unions or of the Liaison Council of Neutral Trade Unions of Japan.

We can understand from the article that south Korea is now in a very serious condition. It is completely under US imperialist domination and control, and its “government” is a puppet regime of the US imperialists to the core. Using as an excuse the “threat from the north”, the south Korean rulers are suppressing the people harshly and hampering the independent and peaceful reunification of the country.

National reunification is the greatest national desire of our people. Our Party and the Government of the Republic are making every sincere effort to reunify the country by peaceful means.

At a session of the UN General Assembly last year a resolution was adopted on solving the Korean question through dialogue between the Koreans themselves, which is analogous to our requests.

We advanced three principles for national reunification when we met the south Korean delegate who came to Pyongyang for high-ranking north-south political talks.
At that time I told him: “In order to reunify the country we must, first of all, oppose outside forces; the destiny of each nation must be decided by the nation itself; we do not interfere in the internal affairs of other countries nor do we allow them to do so in ours; we solve every problem arising in the revolution and construction by our own determination from the Juche-based stand; as for Korea’s reunification question, the Koreans must feel concerned about it, whereas no foreigner grieves about it; therefore, the Korean question must be solved independently by the Koreans themselves, and under no circumstances must we permit the Americans or any other outside forces to meddle in this matter.” Adhering to independence is our consistent principle.

The south Korean delegate agreed to our claim on the independent reunification of the country by the Koreans themselves.

Then I put forward the principle of reunifying the country in a peaceful way. I told him: “It is quite possible to reunify the country peacefully without fighting between the north and the south; we have a large army at present because of the US threat, but we need not have it if no US troops are stationed in south Korea and we are free from the US threat: we do not want war between the north and the south; a war will destroy everything we have constructed; for what reason do we, a homogeneous nation, fight amongst ourselves, shedding blood?; let us reunify the country peacefully.”

He also agreed to our principle of peaceful reunification.

We went on to present the principle of great national unity.

I told him: “The Koreans have lived together for thousands of years and are a homogeneous nation with the same written and spoken language, so why should we be divided into ‘two nations’ and ‘two Koreas’?; how can one and the same nation not be united, even though they achieve unity with other peoples?; we have no intentions to ‘communize’ south Korea and to force socialism and communism upon you; we are communists but do not oppose your following other ideologies; an important task now is to prevent the US imperialists from dividing our country into ‘two Koreas’ and from reducing south
Korea to becoming their permanent military base; you ought not to be tricked into joining the underhand designs of the imperialists; it is important now to bring about great national unity transcending social systems, ideologies and ideals; we are not opposed to the present social system in south Korea and non-comprador capitalists there and shall be able to acquit people of the crimes committed against the country and the people in the past.”

As you know, we must oppose the feudal forces because they hamper the democratic development of society. Japan was able to develop along capitalist lines because it had carried out the capitalist revolution against the feudal forces. Our country did not carry out this revolution in the past. That was why after liberation we liquidated, before others, the feudal forces which were obstructing the democratic development of our society.

In addition to the feudal forces, we oppose the comprador forces in south Korea. The comprador capitalists are traitors to the nation who act as errand boys for foreign monopoly capitalists with their backing, and exploit the people. We cannot leave these capitalists as they are. We can unite with all other forces, except for a handful of the landlords, comprador capitalists and reactionary bureaucrats.

The south Korean delegate agreed to our principle of great national unity as well.

Some time after his return home, a delegate from our side went to Seoul at their invitation and met Park Chung Hee, who said then that he also agreed to our three principles for national reunification. Our delegate took with him, when he went to Seoul, a draft north-south joint statement and suggested the publication of this joint statement to Park Chung Hee. But because the south Korean side rejected it, our delegate came back without its publication. After that, Park Chung Hee was probably instructed by the US imperialist overlords to accept our proposal to publish the joint statement because south Korea would be put on the defensive if they rejected it in the prevailing situation. I am not sure this was the reason, but some time later Park Chung Hee acceded to our request for publishing it. As a result, the historic July 4
North-South Joint Statement was issued.

However, the south Korean authorities have not put into practice the principles of the joint statement sincerely, but have acted against it ever since the day after its publication.

When people of the opposition parties and journalists in south Korea asked them if the withdrawal of the “UN troops” was necessary in order to reunify the country without any interference by outside forces, the south Korean authorities replied that the “UN troops” were not outside forces. How can this be true? In our country the outside forces obstructing national reunification are none other than the “UN troops” stationed in south Korea.

When members of the opposition parties asked questions about the need for an army reduction for peaceful national reunification and whether there was any need to keep a large army in disregard of north Korea’s suggestion of army reduction, the south Korean authorities replied that they could not do so because communists could not be trusted. And when asked by them if the “Anti-Communist Law” ought to be repealed in order to achieve great national unity, they said that it was impossible for the law to be abrogated because anti-communism was their “first national policy”.

As seen above, the south Korean authorities acted to upset all the principles of the joint statement agreed upon between the north and the south.

We showed tolerance to their treacherous acts and thereafter met the south Korean delegates again in an endeavour to carry out the principles of the joint statement. At that time, the south Korean authorities also showed no sincerity in implementing what had been agreed upon between the north and the south, claiming that the reunification question should be solved gradually. So, proceeding from the desire to reunify the country as soon as possible, we offered a new proposal for contact and exchange between the two parts of the country.

We pointed out to them that the “confrontation accompanied by dialogue”, “competition accompanied by dialogue” and “coexistence
accompanied by dialogue” which were advocated by the south Korean authorities were an unjustifiable claim designed to prolong the state of national division, and continued that we should bring about unity accompanied by dialogue instead of “confrontation accompanied by dialogue”, achieve cooperation accompanied by dialogue instead of “competition accompanied by dialogue” and accomplish reunification accompanied by dialogue instead of “coexistence accompanied by dialogue”. Our suggestion is intended to accomplish reunification on the principles of the July 4 North-South Joint Statement, leaving the present social systems in the two parts of our country as they are.

We said that while urging us to create an atmosphere of trust between the people in north and south Korea, the south Korean authorities were producing one of confrontation, which would make it impossible to attain the purpose, and that for the creation of this atmosphere we should begin with putting an end to military confrontation and, to do this, each side should reduce its army and the US troops should be made to withdraw from south Korea.

We also told them: “You call upon us to make competition but there is no need to do so between north and south and you cannot expect to win in the event of competition; while you are carrying on construction we are not sleeping; although you try to construct by bringing in foreign capital, we can build faster because we rely on ourselves; let the north and the south promote cooperation, not competition; you are reported to have asked Japan for an enormous loan on the excuse that you are conducting a ‘new village movement’ and how will you discharge such a large debt?; your building of high-speed roads and replacing roofing with the plastic dies imported from Japan will not solve the problem of the south Korean peasants’ living conditions; the point is to free them from exploitation and oppression and create conditions for raising bumper crops every year so that they can eat their fill and live well; you should not ask Japan for a loan but cooperate with us; proceeding from the national duty we can undertake irrigation projects, for example, in order to help the south Korean peasants who are in dire need; we have installed all necessary irrigation
facilities, have rich experience in irrigation construction and produce the necessary equipment on our own, so we are able to send you technicians and equipment; if irrigation projects and river improvements are undertaken in rural areas in south Korea, a good harvest will be reaped every year and the peasants will be able to build tile-roofed houses and live prosperously.”

They said nothing in reply to our proposal except that upon their return home they would report it to their “President”.

In addition, we explained to them that although the northern half of Korea was rich in underground resources including iron, nonferrous metals and coal, we were not in a position to exploit them sufficiently because of the shortage of manpower, and we proposed that they should be exploited jointly by our equipment and by labour contributed by south Korea. We asked them if they did not feel the pangs of conscience at the fact that they were selling thousands of their fellow countrymen to West Germany as coal miners and to Brazil as serfs, and women to foreign countries, and suggested that they should not sell members of their nation to other countries but cooperate with us.

According to the article by a “Mindan” member which was printed in the Japanese magazine *Sekai*, countless numbers of people in south Korea are sold every year to other countries as ore and coal miners and as nurses. Worse still, it is reported that Park Chung Hee sells children at 12,000 dollars each. What a detestable act!

We also suggested the matter of making joint use of fishing grounds in the northern half of the country. At the time we advised the delegates that south Korean fishermen should be allowed to enter our fishing grounds and catch fish at will as we would keep these open to them, for they had been reported to be living in difficult conditions. On this matter, too, they only said they would report it to the “President”.

Afterwards, however, Park Chung Hee rejected cooperation between the north and the south, proposing the joint exploitation of Mt. Kumgang for the tourist industry.

Another proposal we made to the south Korean delegates was that, for great national unity, visits should be paid not only by the south
Korean authorities and officials of the Central Intelligence Agency but
by delegates of the New Democratic Party and the United Democratic
Party as well as by workers, peasants, young people and students, and
scientists, and that a Great National Congress should be held with the
participation of people from all strata in north and south Korea.

But the south Korean authorities did not accept this proposal either,
and went to the length, in the end, of openly revealing their ulterior
motive to enter the United Nations as “two Koreas”. This fully shows
that they do not want national reunification wholeheartedly.

Under no circumstances can we enter the UN as “two Koreas”, and,
if we are to become members before the country is reunified, we
should do so under a single national name after the institution of a
Federation. I do not speak any further about this stand of ours because I
think you are well aware of it.

With regard to the problem of north-south dialogue, the south
Korean authorities are now dealing with it in accordance with the plans
of the US imperialists. The US imperialists are obstructing Korea’s
reunification in every way with the intention of turning south Korea
into their permanent military base.

Even after the publication of the North-South Joint Statement, the
south Korean authorities intensified their fascist suppression of the
people in the south. While arresting and imprisoning at random the
young people, students and patriots demanding reunification, they
claimed that the struggle of the people had occurred at our instigation.
So we told the south Korean delegates: “You think we instigated the
people in the south to come out to the struggle, but that is a false
opinion; when you oppress the people, young men and women and
students, they cannot but resist, and where there is resistance,
revolution is bound to break out; we do not export revolution and no
revolution is exported; the revolutionary struggles of the working class
have arisen one after another until today, starting with the Paris
Commune which broke out more than 100 years ago, but these have
not burst forth as a result of anyone else’s propaganda or on someone
else’s instructions; since revolutions are carried out by the people
themselves, the people’s struggles in south Korea will continue as long as there is oppression there.”

The south Korean authorities also ascribed the happening of the “case of the National Federation of Youth and Students for Democracy” and the “shooting incident” to us. This is complete nonsense. As far as the “shooting incident” is concerned, we have nothing to do with it. By nature, we communists are opposed to individual terrorism. If in south Korea Park Chung Hee gets out of “government”, “Choe Chung Hee” will take it, and when he resigns it, another will come into it. In Japan Sato was replaced by Tanaka but nothing has changed in its policy, has it? The point is to put an end to the social system itself under which reactionaries remain in power.

No matter how great a fuss the south Korean authorities make connecting the “shooting incident” with us, the people of the world do not believe it at present. Nobody who has a little common sense will accept it as true. There is no doubt that the recent “shooting incident” was a plot hatched by the south Korean authorities themselves or by their overlords, the US imperialists. A few days ago, Asahi Shimbun reported the results of an analysis of the TV film recording the scenes, pointing out that the incident raised serious doubts, suggesting some kind of plot.

The US imperialists and their stooges are continually producing tensions in our country and resorting to moves to produce “two Koreas”. This is why we have many difficulties in achieving the peaceful reunification of our country.

Those opposed to national reunification at present are only a handful of traitors to the nation and reactionaries who are involved in treacherous acts with the backing of the US imperialists; but the overwhelming majority of the people in south Korea unanimously desire reunification.

The people and patriotic young people and students in south Korea are still continuing their valiant struggle for democracy in its society and for national reunification. Yesterday, too, the students of Seoul University and Koryo University held demonstrations. Nowadays, the
south Korean university students are making effective demonstrations. It is reported that the day before yesterday they beat ten policemen to a pulp by throwing stones. Many newspapers in Japan reported their struggles in large letters and so did newspapers in the United States and in a number of European countries.

The young people and students are not halting, but are continuing their struggles, no matter how cruelly Park Chung Hee oppresses the people. The vigorous struggles by the people in north and south Korea will unfailingly bring about the reunification of our country.

Because I am meeting you for the first time I have spoken about the south Korean question at length in order to help you to understand our situation, so please recognize this.

You staunchly support our proposals for national reunification and hold that Korea must not be divided in two. Moreover, you insist on the removal of the US military bases from south Korea.

We are grateful to you, our strong supporters, and affirm that your support will not come to nothing.

I express my thanks once again to you for your support to us and hope that you will continue to support our people’s effort in future, too.

Now, I should like to speak briefly about the world situation.

The present world situation is extremely favourable.

Today is the age when the people demand independence. Many countries of the world are now following the road of independence. The anti-imperialist and independent position of the third world countries, in particular, is very resolute.

Today these countries are fighting vigorously to defend their political sovereignty and to achieve economic independence.

Latin-American countries are fighting under the very nose of the United States to defend their national sovereignty, natural resources and territorial waters limit. In many of them the progressive soldiers have seized power and adopted just measures to oppose US imperialist domination and control and to protect independence, and are working bravely to defend the 200-mile territorial waters limit.

The Special Session of the UN General Assembly on the Problem
of Raw Materials and Development which was held some time ago clearly showed the firm resolve of the third world nations who justly sought to solve international matters related to economic affairs, including the problem of fuel and raw materials, on the principles of complete equality and independence.

Needless to say, the battles of the third world countries are not free of problems and difficulties. In Chile, the progressive government was overthrown and a fascist military regime has been established at the instigation of the US imperialists. Although the revolution failed in Chile, its people learned a bitter lesson from this. The General Secretary of the Socialist Party of Chile visited our country some time ago. He said that although they had seized power they had neglected to cultivate sufficient strength to defend it and could not get a good hold on the working class in particular and that this was a mistake.

Not only the third world countries, but also capitalist countries are now striving to free themselves from the influence of the US imperialists.

France is trying to throw off this influence and so is Canada. In Australia, too, the progressive forces demanding independence have come into power. Of course, it is not the government of the workers and peasantry, but it is a fact that the rulers come out to demand independence and this is a good thing. The capitalist countries in Northern Europe are also claiming independence. When the US imperialists bombed North Viet Nam, Sweden broke off diplomatic relations with the United States and sent it a letter of protest. The increase in the number of countries demanding independence in this way is very welcome.

It can be said that the change of government in Portugal some time ago also reflects the trend of the present time demanding independence. The working class of that country gained the right to make demonstration and participate in elections freely for the first time after an interval of scores of years.

In Japan, too, the voice demanding independence is growing stronger as time passes. The Japanese reactionary forces now persist in
a policy of following the US imperialists, which means going against the trend of the times. We believe that, sooner or later, an independent government will also be established in Japan, thanks to the struggle of its people, in keeping with the trend of history.

In south Korea, too, a vigorous struggle is going on amongst the patriotic young people and students and other people to bring about a democratic society and independent national reunification.

The decline of the outdated imperialist forces and the growth of the newly-emerging forces are the historical trend of today. The imperialists are resorting to every kind of wicked plot to check this trend, but they will not succeed; the newly-emerging forces will grow in scope and strength with time.

If the working class of Korea and Japan fight on dynamically in step with this historical trend, the Japanese revolution will triumph, south Korean society will be democratized and our country will be reunified without fail.

Now, let me turn to socialist construction in our country.

I will not refer to it at length because you must have heard about it from the Chairman of the Central Committee of the General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea while talking to him and because the head of the delegation said you had been told a great deal by the chairman of Chongryon.

Our socialist construction is now in a very good state. For all that, it cannot be said that we have no difficulty at all.

There must be difficulties in the course of revolutionary struggle. Any revolutionary struggle inevitably involves difficulties.

Our difficulties arise because of the division of the country. Because our country remains divided and the US imperialists are creating tension in Korea, we have to concentrate great effort on national defence to deal with this, which gives rise to difficulties. The south Korean puppet clique is provided with weapons by the US imperialists, whereas we must secure everything necessary for the defence of the country ourselves, and so we have many difficulties. If the US troops withdraw from south Korea and a democrat comes into
power, thereby creating conditions for peaceful national reunification, we shall not need to concentrate a great deal of our strength on defence construction, and the living standards of our people will be raised several times higher than now.

With a high degree of political resolve to carry out economic construction faster and better in order to defend the achievements of socialism, the working class and other people of our country, united closely around the Workers’ Party of Korea, are now working hard braving every difficulty they encounter. Our working class in the production sector is striving to do their duty not only for their own benefit but also for the benefit of the people in the southern half of the country.

In socialist construction we are now carrying on the three revolutions, that is, the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

The ideological revolution we are making is not aimed at dismissing people; it is a revolution to root up the outdated ideas in people’s minds and revolutionize and working-classize all the members of society, so as to lead them to a communist society.

The main feature of this revolution is to arm all the working people with our Party’s revolutionary ideology, the Juche idea. All our Party members and working people are now increasing their studying to equip themselves with the Juche idea.

In addition, we concentrate on strengthening organizational life amongst the working people. Today, in our country, everyone takes part in this life. The workers lead their lives, affiliated to the trade unions, the farmers to the Union of Agricultural Working People, the young people to the League of Socialist Working Youth, the women to the Democratic Women’s Union, the children to the Children’s Union and the Party members to the Party organizations. Our working people are further trained politically and ideologically through organizational life.

In the ideological revolution we also make a great effort to instruct all working people to like work.

Teaching them to take care of state and public property is also an important matter in the ideological revolution because all the material
wealth in a socialist society is produced by the working people themselves and made use of for their own benefit. If they are only involved in the production of goods, but neglect loving care of them, it is useless to manufacture anything, no matter what the quantity.

We educate the working people not to forget the past and south Korea and to love the socialist system and the future. To love the future means working devotedly to build a communist society in which the principle of “One for all and all for one” is embodied. Our people are closely united with the common purpose to construct a communist society.

We also develop socialist national culture and arts and teach all the working people to show an attachment for them.

At present the ideological revolution is proceeding well in our country. Because we press forward with this revolution our society is extremely healthy. Amongst our young people there is no one who is dissipated and no drunkard staggering about the street.

Next, I shall talk about the technical revolution.

This revolution is not simply aimed at laying the solid material foundations of the country and improving the people’s standard of living alone. It is very important to free the working people from arduous labour after they are liberated from exploitation and oppression by the imperialists, landlords and capitalists. The main object of our technical revolution lies precisely in freeing the working people who were relieved of exploitation and suppression from hard work.

We are now making great efforts to mechanize backbreaking work in the sector of the extractive industries such as coal and ore mining, fishing and forestry.

Our farmers are still to be freed from painstaking work. Their material living conditions are fairly good but they are still doing much tedious work. That is why we are striving to free them from laborious work. In our country areas irrigation and electrification have already been effected and the application of chemicals and mechanization are now being pressed forward. The task of applying chemicals, which we
set in the rural theses, will probably be fulfilled next year. However, it will take us some time to make the farmers raise crops fully by means of machines through the mechanization of farming.

Our tractor production is not small, even now. We intend to produce 50,000 tractors annually in the future and to provide eight to ten of them to every 100 hectares of cultivated ground. This will enable us to introduce an eight-hour workday for the peasantry as is done for the workers.

In our country there are farms which are at a highly mechanized level. But from the national point of view, we still have a great deal of farmwork which has to be mechanized. We succeeded in making rice-transplanting machines after trying for a long time and, as a result, we transplanted rice seedlings by means of these machines on extensive areas of paddy fields this year. We are planning to mechanize this farmwork fully within the next year or two. We have not yet perfected rice harvesters. This year we tested rice harvesters made by our technicians and they are fairly good. But they still have the defect of often getting bogged down in paddy ditches. We have imported and tried those manufactured in other countries including Japan, which also have defects. Although it is not an easy task to make rice harvesters which suit the conditions of our country, we are determined to tackle this, too. This year rice harvesters were put into use first in some parts of North and South Phyongan Provinces and North and South Hwanghae Provinces which are visited by hail comparatively early. We intend to finish the mechanization of rice harvesting within the next few years. This will free our farmers from hard work.

One of the important tasks we set in the technical revolution is to relieve women of laborious house work. This is a very difficult task but we are determined to solve this problem at all costs.

In this regard it is important, first, to develop on a wide scale the work of bringing up children under public and state care, thereby encouraging women to take part in socialist construction without worry.

Because a large number of nursery schools and kindergartens have
been built in accordance with the policy set forth by our Party at its Fifth Congress, they are to be found everywhere in our country today. Every factory and enterprise accepts the importance of developing well-furnished nursery schools and kindergartens. If you have an opportunity of inspecting a factory on this occasion, you must see the kindergarten and creche attached to it.

Engels considered it to be an important communist measure to rear all children at state establishments from the time when they no longer need their mothers’ care. We are making great efforts to raising children under state and public care.

In our country as many as 3,500,000 children are now being brought up at creches and kindergartens. Almost all the children are growing there, except those who are not sent there by their grandmothers because they feel lonely at home alone. Their studying at primary schools shows that those brought up at home are worse than those taught at creches and kindergartens. It is very good for children to get into the habit of leading a collective life from their early years. Attending creches and kindergartens is better than being raised at home by grandmothers in every aspect—in hygienic conditions and in food and because they are put under the care of nursery school and kindergarten teachers and physicians. In our country the question of bringing up children at state and public expense was solved, so that women have been able to go into the world, free from anxiety.

Installing a water supply system in the villages is one of the important factors in relieving women from heavy burdens of housekeeping duties.

Some of our rural women still have to carry jars on their heads to obtain water from a long way away. This is a heavy burden for them. That is why we are, at present, expediting the installation of water services in farming villages.

In addition, we are striving to provide conditions for women to cook food easily by developing the food industry.

The cultural revolution is an important part of the three revolutions. Through the cultural revolution, we intend, first of all, to bring the
working people’s standard of general knowledge up to the level of a middle school graduate and beyond. In our country all the people now under the age of 40 have the general knowledge of a middle school graduate and above. Amongst those over 40, however, there are many who have not yet reached this level because they were denied education before liberation.

Our country has not just started the work of raising the working people’s level of general knowledge; it has been doing this ever since immediately after liberation. At that time we conducted a campaign to eliminate illiteracy and, after that, inaugurated a drive to bring the working people’s general intellectual level to that of a primary school graduate. At the moment we are endeavouring to enable all members of society to obtain the general knowledge of a middle school graduate and more. Those who had hardly any access to learning in the past, now attend the working people’s middle schools. Eight hours work, eight hours rest and eight hours study is a slogan which the working class set when it began the labour movement. This slogan has been put into practice admirably in our country.

In this country a successful attempt is now being made to introduce universal compulsory ten-year education.

In Korea at present 4.6 million pupils and students attend educational establishments at all levels from primary school to university. If the children in creches and kindergartens are added to this, as many as eight million students, pupils and children are studying and growing up at state expense. Because the children and students, who make up half of our population, are growing up and studying under state care, the burden on the state is heavy. Appropriation for this purpose occupies a large share of our state budget. However, it is essential for the future of our country.

An important factor in the cultural revolution is to intellectualize all members of society.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic have always concentrated on the training of national cadres, and we have attained remarkable success in this area. Now our country has more than
600,000 technicians and experts who have graduated from universities or higher technical schools. We intend to increase their ranks to a million in the near future and to intellectualize all members of society provided that they are all working-classized. We can say this is the ultimate aim of the cultural revolution.

We are also working hard to encourage each of the working people to acquire more than one kind of technique and turn them into people who are developed comprehensively.

What I have said is the state of affairs in our socialist construction. When we have carried out the three revolutions successfully, the socialist system in our country will be consolidated still further.

In conclusion, I hope that you will convey the greetings of the Korean working class and people to their counterparts in Japan.

I am grateful to you for listening attentively to my talk.
LET US DEVELOP AGRICULTURE IN THE MOUNTAIN AREAS STILL FURTHER

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Agricultural Scientists in Jagang Province
November 2, 1974

On this occasion I have toured some counties including Hwaphyong County in Jagang Province, summing up the agricultural situation this year and having serious discussions with farmers, and today I have listened to your report on the real situation in agriculture in this province.

Through this personal guidance I have once again become completely convinced that our Party’s policy on developing agriculture in mountain regions is absolutely correct.

There are a great many reserves for agricultural production in mountain areas as well as in the intermediate regions. I have not inspected Ryanggang Province closely, but here in Jagang Province I feel that there are a great many reserves for agricultural production in mountain areas.

I have found that in this province the agricultural scientists have also achieved a great success in the “green revolution”. I am delighted with the success of your research.

I should like to offer my warm thanks today to all the agricultural scientists in Jagang Province for your great success in developing new strains suitable to the conditions in these highlands.

On the basis of the success which has already been achieved, you
must make a great change in agricultural production by continuing to work hard to carry out the Party’s policy on developing agriculture in mountain areas.

Although Jagang Province has received a production quota of 340,000 tons of cereals next year, it should set a target of 400,000 tons and work hard to achieve it.

You must first improve the strains of crops through the “green revolution”.

Improving the strains and cultivating good ones are two important factors in improving agriculture in mountain areas. It is absolutely impossible to increase the per-hectare grain yield by cultivating native strains. Improving strains through the “green revolution” is the way to increase agricultural production.

In this revolution, the most important thing is the introduction of hybridization and polyembryony. You must introduce the system of the first filial generation in agriculture by carrying on the “green revolution”.

This year Jagang Province was unable to increase grain yields mainly because you did not use seeds of the first filial generation.

The Party organizations in Jagang Province were not efficient in directing farm work this year. More often than not, some officials of the city and county Party committees in the province hesitated to implement the Party’s instructions on planting the seeds of the first filial generation. So they did not carry them out.

The farmers were reluctant to adopt new varieties this year because Party officials neglected organizational and political work to encourage them to accept the Party’s policy unconditionally and implement it thoroughly.

Schoolchildren in Huichon City were told to uproot the original parent maize plants from a one-hectare field. In Hwaphyong County an experimental plot was destroyed in order to build a chicken plant, and I was told that a hatching house is now going to be built on the small part of the plot which remains. Officials of the Huichon City Party Committee and the Hwaphyong County Party Committee are so
ignorant that they do not even know what an original parent plant means. As the Party officials themselves are not willing to implement Party instructions, farmers also hesitate to adopt the first filial generation seeds.

Some counties in Jagang Province did not plant the maize seeds of the first filial generation this year, although they had a large amount of them which could have been used.

The agricultural scientists also neglected organizational and political work for the introduction of new strains.

It is the revolutionary work method of the communists to give priority to political work in everything so as to encourage the masses to carry out their revolutionary tasks willingly.

If you agricultural scientists are going to encourage all the cooperative farms to plant new varieties, you have to explain to the masses about original parents and F1 hybrid seeds through lectures and talks, and thus equip the officials and farmers with a knowledge of agricultural science. But, instead of doing this, you simply told the cooperative farms to plant the F1 hybrid seeds. As a result, not only farmers but also some officials went to the length of uprooting the parent maize plants. People can root them up if they do not have a clear understanding because these plants are short in stature and have small cobs and grains.

Because it did not plant many F1 hybrid seeds, Jagang Province was unable to increase the production of grain this year.

Even in Jagang Province the farms which planted these seeds increased the per-hectare maize yield this year three times compared with the year 1972 and the figure was more than twice that of last year.

Next year you must ensure that all the cooperative farms produce at least twice as much grain, vegetables and other crops as this year by planting F1 hybrid seeds through an efficient use of the “green revolution”.

In order to change over to the F1 hybrid system through the “green revolution” you must improve seed selection.

The agriculturists are the people’s scientists serving in the field of
agricultural production. The agriculturists in Jagang Province must not in the least rest content with their success. They must redouble their efforts in scientific research and develop good seeds which are suitable for the climatic and soil conditions of Jagang Province. In this way you will establish the $F_1$ hybrid seeds of maize, rice, potatoes, wheat and vegetables, which suit Jagang Province.

In order to obtain good strains you must carry out accurate experiments with seeds.

To achieve this, the experiments have to be made on single crops. This year in Huichon imported maize seeds were planted with potatoes. This is not the way to carry out proper experiments on seeds. If you are going to experiment on seeds, you must cultivate a single crop and plant the designated number of plants per unit area. Only then can you obtain accurate results.

The experimental plots must be chosen so that they meet the requirements. You must not choose only fertile or flatland fields as experimental plots. Ninety per cent of the cultivated land in Jagang Province is on sloping ground. Seed experiments should be made not only on fertile and flatland but also on infertile and sloping fields. Only then can you obtain accurate data on the seeds and produce good strains which suit the climate and soil conditions of Jagang Province.

In the past, however, you carried out experiments with seeds on fertile lands, instead of following the topographical features and climate. On the basis of the result, you said that your seeds yielded nine or ten tons per hectare and ordered them to be grown. This was why the seeds, no matter how good on some fields, were not very productive under different conditions.

In this province you must select the plots to be used for seed experiments carefully in accordance with the topographical features of the area with many sloping fields on highlands. The experimental plots should be located on both plains and slopes. Fields on slopes at different altitudes, for instance, at 500, 700 and 1,000 metres above sea level should be chosen.
Seed experiments should be carried out using adequate amounts of fertilizer and humus. This will give you a clear understanding of the increase in grain production which will result from the additional amount of fertilizer applied in Jagang Province.

I made sure of the supply of fertilizer to Changsong County for experimental purposes for ten years and in the course of this I have come to a conclusion that there are reserves for grain production in mountain areas.

This year even in Nyongbyon County, where farming had not been successful for many years in succession, 7.5 tons of grain were produced per hectare as a result of experiments using 700 kg of nitrogenous fertilizer and 600 kg of phosphatic and potassic fertilizers per hectare. If you use fertilizer liberally, you can increase per-hectare yields both in mountain and intermediate areas.

Fertilizer was not used liberally in Jagang Province this year, so it is difficult to reach any definite conclusion about its agricultural problems, but I can identify some of them.

Although fertilizer and humus were not used in the non-paddy fields in this province this year to the same extent as last year, the province was able to produce twice as much grain as it did last year and three times more than in 1972 because it improved the seeds and used micronutrients. This shows that improving seeds and applying micronutrients to the fields are important in increasing the per-hectare yield of grain.

From next year onwards Jagang Province must supply sufficient fertilizer to some of its counties and test farming in the highlands.

If you produce four tons of grain per hectare by applying 700 kg of nitrogenous fertilizer, and as much phosphatic and potassic fertilizers per hectare in the highland fields which are at least 700 metres above sea level, the per-hectare grain yield will be higher than those in European countries. I was told that European countries produce no more than four tons of grain per hectare although they use tremendous amounts of fertilizer for highland fields.

It will be good if Jagang Province produces four tons of grain per
hectare in this way. A yield of 16 tons of potatoes per hectare will suffice.

If it produces four tons of grain per hectare in the fields which are 700 metres above sea level, it can harvest at least five tons per hectare on the provincial average. This province harvested 3.5 tons of grain per hectare this year. So it will be reasonable if it produces 5 tons next year.

This year we decided that counties should be classified according to their grain productivity, namely, as capable of producing 150,000 tons, 100,000 tons, and 80,000 to 90,000 tons and as ordinary and that they should be supplied with farm machinery and fertilizer in proportion to these grades. Next year we are going to supply every 150,000-ton county with 800 kg of nitrogenous and as much phosphatic and potassic fertilizers per hectare, every 100,000-ton county with 750 kg of these fertilizers, the 80,000 to 90,000-ton county with 700 kg of these fertilizers and every ordinary county with 600 or 500 kg of the fertilizers, the proportions remaining the same throughout.

Next year some counties in Jagang Province will be supplied with 700 kg of nitrogenous and as much phosphatic and potassic fertilizers per hectare and the other counties with 600 kg or 500 kg of the same fertilizers so that they can experiment with maize, wheat, potatoes and all other crops. This is the way to determine accurate amounts of fertilizers needed per hectare to increase grain production to a certain extent in the highland districts like Jagang Province. You can increase grain yields in this province to a considerable extent if you use 600 or 700 kg of these fertilizers per hectare.

Jagang Province can do as well in grain production as other provinces if it is supplied with a greater amount of fertilizer. This year Janggang County raised the per-hectare yield of maize far above last year’s figure. This county harvested 7.3 tons per hectare by planting Kaengsin-4 in the zone which is 300 to 500 metres above sea level, 6.1 tons by cultivating Soksong-1 in the area, 350 metres above sea level, 6.2 tons by planting Kanggye-101 in the zone of 630 metres above sea level, and 5.8 tons by planting Yangdok-151 in the zone of 800 metres above sea level.
Next year Jagang Province will be able to harvest at least five tons of grain per hectare if it uses more fertilizer than this year.

Breeding stations and experimental fields must be provided for the institutes of agricultural science, so that they can carry out experiments on highland farming in Jagang Province. Breeding stations are needed for the production of seeds which are suitable to this province’s climatic and soil conditions. Fields for the breeding stations should be provided for the Jagang Provincial Branch of the Academy of Agricultural Sciences without any reservations.

In addition, you should designate one cooperative farm in each county as a seed farm so that the institute of agricultural science can use it for experimental purposes.

If the institute of agricultural science receives a cooperative farm from each county, gives the farm members demonstration lessons on the management of experimental fields and seed plots and trains them in technical matters, the farm members will be perfectly able to undertake seed experiments and selection as required by technical regulations.

If farming is not successful because of seed selection and experiments, the state will supply the farmers with provisions. Farming will succeed on all the cooperative farms which engage in seed selection. If each county chooses a cooperative farm as a seed farm and carries out seed selection and experiments there, it can obtain good varieties which are suitable for the highlands.

In many respects, it is inconvenient to establish separate state-run seed experimental farms. If they are organized separately, they will need a large number of managers, deputies and other managerial staff and field workers. But, if we designate cooperative farms as seed experimental or seed selection farms there will be no need to have additional managerial staff and field workers.

Each county must choose one of its cooperative farms as a seed farm and use its fields for experimental purposes.

The vegetable experimental fields and the vegetable seed farms will have to be established as state-run farms. These should be turned over to the institute of agricultural science.
Jagang Province must distribute seeds rationally and increase agricultural production in the highlands considerably.

Meanwhile, this province must increase the area of maize fields and cultivate maize over a wide area.

It must launch a campaign to grow maize even in areas at 700 metres or more above sea level. If it is impossible to grow maize there, you will have to plant other crops. But it is desirable to plant maize there if it is possible to do so. Now that you have developed the variety called Kanggye-701 which can be grown in fields which are located at or above 700 metres above sea level, it seems that maize can be grown without difficulty in areas at 800 metres above sea level.

Next year Jagang Province must plant one hundred per cent of F₁ hybrid maize. If the imported maize strain is suitable for the highlands, this strain must be grown until the development of a new variety suitable for areas at or above 700 metres above sea level is completed.

You must introduce the practice of growing maize seedlings in humus-cakes extensively.

If maize seedlings are grown in humus-cakes in plastic tunnels and transplanted when the frosty season is over, the plants will have 15 to 20 more days in which to grow. If you introduce this method you will be able to grow maize on land at 700 to 800 metres above sea level.

This year the humus-cake method was widely introduced in maize farming in Sinyang and Yangdok Counties, South Phyongan Province, where climatic and soil conditions are similar to those of Jagang Province, and a rich crop was harvested. In Janggang County in this province, the humus-cake system was used for fields 800 metres above sea level this year and the ripening of the crop was good.

Jagang Province which is a highland province must use this system more widely than other regions. If you are to do this, you must take good care of the maize seedlings.

This province must prepare seed-beds in both high and low areas. The seedlings grown near the villages should be transplanted in their vicinity, and those grown in the high areas should be bedded out in fields in that area.
The Agricultural Commission must not simply give orders that maize seedlings must be grown in humus-cakes, but must provide the local farmers with plastic sheets and the necessary conditions to produce humus as well. This will enable Jagang Province to grow maize successfully.

Potatoes, wheat and vegetables will have to be grown in the areas which are located at or above 800 metres above sea level, which are not suitable for growing maize. In Jagang Province there are nearly 10,000 hectares of these fields, and this area is as large as the arable land of three counties.

There are also approximately 20,000 to 30,000 hectares of highland fields unsuitable for maize cultivation in North Hamgyong Province and about 40,000 hectares in Ryanggang Province. We cannot abandon these arable lands simply because they are situated in the highlands. It is very important to make good use of highland fields in our country where the area of cultivated land is limited. Jagang Province must cultivate all the 10,000 hectares of highland fields in every way it can.

Potatoes will have to be grown in the fields which are at or above 800 metres above sea level. I was told that this year Jagang Province produced 5.5 tons of potatoes from each of 1,000 hectares of these fields. This does not even pay for the cost of labour. Put aside 1.7 tons of seeds out of 5.5 tons and count the rest in terms of grain, and the result will be no more than 950 kg of grain per hectare.

You say that you have produced 15 tons of potatoes per hectare from the experimental field this year. This is not a high yield, either. Integrated State Farm No. 5 is now producing 30 tons of potatoes per hectare. Thirty tons per hectare is the minimum that can stand comparison with the per-hectare yield of maize.

You must make every effort to improve potato cultivation in Jagang Province so as to increase the per-hectare yield to at least four tons in terms of grain output. It seems necessary to take some measures to improve potato seeds or else cultivate other crops.

It is important to improve potato seeds. Potatoes will have to be cultivated widely in highland districts like Jagang, Ryanggang and
North Hamgyong Provinces. But the seeds have not been improved satisfactorily.

It seems advisable for Jagang Province to bring wheat or potato seeds from Integrated State Farm No. 5 and test them in the fields 800 metres above sea level and in higher areas.

In Rangnim County, for example, potato seeds from Ryanggang Province may grow well. Integrated State Farm No. 5 is situated at a higher altitude than Jagang Province. But potato cultivation on this state farm is successful and the farm’s per-hectare yield of wheat is three to four tons. As the state farm is situated high above sea level and as it is cold there, experiments have been carried out on the cultivation of a hardy potato strain from the Soviet Union.

Jagang Province must cultivate the potato strain from Ryanggang Province which is the same height above sea level.

When establishing the branches of the Academy of Agricultural Sciences in the provinces we gave the Ryanggang Provincial Branch the task of studying the varieties suitable to the climate and other natural features of highland districts such as Jagang Province and North and South Hamgyong Provinces as well as Ryanggang Province. At present, this branch is carrying out research on the varieties which can be cultivated in highlands between 700 and 1,200 metres above sea level.

Jagang Province should develop seed-selection centres, where they should plant the seeds produced in Ryanggang Province and select a great deal of them for all its cooperative farms.

Meanwhile, the Jagang Provincial Branch of the Academy of Agricultural Sciences must also develop seeds of spring wheat and potatoes which are suitable to the climate and other natural features of the highland.

In Jagang Province wheat should also be cultivated in the highland areas. Even though they live in the mountains, the farmers there can scarcely live on potatoes alone. In the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle we ate nothing but potatoes throughout one winter, and in the end we became tired of them.
In order to improve the diet of the mountain peasants, it is necessary to grow a certain amount of wheat.

It is advisable for Jagang Province to make an attempt to grow spring wheat in the highlands where maize cannot be grown. It would be a good idea to cultivate potatoes and wheat on an equal basis in these highlands. It will be a great success if you produce just three tons of wheat per hectare there. Wheat may thrive in Jagang Province, too. Irkutsk, in the Soviet Union, is one of the coldest and highest farming region in the world, but three tons of wheat are produced per hectare, and even five tons from some fields.

Once, on my way back home from Moscow, I visited Novosibirsk and saw that winter wheat had been planted in a place where the temperature drops as low as 50°C below zero. I was told that the wheat could survive the severe cold because of the heavy snowfall there. If wheat can be cultivated in places like Novosibirsk, there is no reason why it is impossible for Jagang Province to grow it. Next year Jagang Province should try to grow wheat on its highland fields where maize does not thrive.

Rice cultivation must also be improved.

There is no need to reclaim any more rice fields in this province. If you are going to increase the area of rice fields, you will have to reclaim only terraced fields which do not produce a lot. If things go well in future you will be able to produce seven to eight tons of maize per hectare in this province, but hardly eight tons of rice. No matter how much you may increase the yield of rice, the per-hectare yield will not rise substantially because there are so many ridges between terraced fields. Even if your sample indicates ten tons of rice yield per hectare, the real output will be no more than 7.5 tons because in Jagang Province the ridges between rice fields account for 25 per cent of the area of those fields.

You will not be able to increase grain production in Jagang Province by cultivating rice widely because the weather is cold and damp and there are very many terraced fields. It is desirable for this province not to reclaim any further rice fields. But this does not mean
that the province should do away with the existing rice fields. If you do this the peasants will not like it. Maize may grow well in one place and rice in another, according to the quality of the soil. Therefore, rice should continue to be grown in the existing rice fields.

As I said during my visit to Hwaphyong County, you must raise all rice seedlings in cold-beds if you are to increase the per-hectare rice yield.

Even if you have to increase the area of cold-beds for rice seedlings next year, you must raise the seedlings a little earlier and transplant them to all the rice fields. In order to bed out the seedlings early, it is necessary to spread humus on the seed beds and sow the seeds a little earlier than usual. Humus produces heat. So, if the cold-bed is spread with humus and covered with plastic sheets, there will be no harm in sowing seeds a little earlier. In Jagang Province every effort should be made to raise rice seedlings in cold-beds as early as possible.

In addition to sowing seeds early, you must raise healthy seedlings and complete the rice-transplanting over a short time. Since the weather is cold in Jagang Province, there is no time to bed out rice seedlings stage by stage. You must ensure that all the seeds are sown in cold-beds all at the same time, and that seedlings are bedded out quickly as soon as the frost is over. As you have the last frost around May 10 in your province, all the people must be mobilized in rice-transplanting for some ten days after the last frost so as to complete it during this period. During the rice-transplanting season office workers, students and all the other people who can transplant rice seedlings must be mobilized.

Provincial agricultural scientists must give the farmers scientific and technological assistance so as to complete rice-transplanting in good time. In Jagang Province rice-transplanting has to be finished by May 30 without fail.

If rice strains are distributed properly in accordance with natural conditions, if all the rice fields are planted with seedlings raised in cold-beds, and if the seedlings are bedded out in good time, 5.5 to 6 tons can be produced per hectare even in Jagang Province. If your
sample indicates a yield of six tons per hectare, the actual yield will be nearly five tons per hectare even if we estimate that the ridges between the fields account for 20 per cent of the area of the fields. Probably nowhere in Jagang Province have five tons of rice been produced per hectare including the ridges.

If four tons of rice per hectare are produced in Jagang Province it should be equated with five tons which are produced in lowland fields which have fewer ridges between them. This seems a proper way to estimate the yield of rice from the fields with many ridges between them in mountain areas. Next year Jagang Province must work hard with a target of producing five to six tons of rice per hectare.

Vegetable farming must be improved.

It is very important to increase the production of vegetables in Jagang Province. If you are short of cereals you can obtain them from other districts, but it is difficult to obtain vegetables. If you do this, a large amount of them will freeze and rot in transit and little will remain unspoiled. Once vegetables were shipped from Kilju to Ryanggang Province where vegetables were in short supply but 80 per cent of them froze, rotted and perished, and only 20 per cent reached to the people, I was told.

Jagang Province must make every effort to produce vegetables and meet its own needs. On this occasion I found that vegetables in Jagang Province are not good. They do not look as appetizing as those cultivated in Pyongyang, probably because of the cold weather here. This year vegetable farming has been successful everywhere except Jagang Province.

The failure in Jagang Province is mainly due to the lack of scientific cultivation.

*Radish-1213* for kimchi, which was tested by Jagang Provincial Branch of the Academy of Agricultural Sciences, has grown well.

Learning from this year’s experience you should experiment with vegetables at different heights above sea level next year.

In highland districts like Rangnim County where even potatoes do not thrive, you should experiment with vegetables in such a way as to
plant them early and harvest them before the frost sets in. Experience in vegetable cultivation in Ryanggang Province shows that it can be as successful in Jagang Province.

It was not until I helped them solve the problem of vegetable production during my visit to Ryanggang Province in 1958 that the people there were able to get adequate vegetable supplies. At that time the people in Ryanggang Province were growing turnips and cabbages on a small scale and had to make up for the shortfall of vegetables by obtaining some from Kilju, North Hamgyong Province. So I advised them to grow one crop of the Pyongyang variety of spring cabbage, the variety which develops large heads, for a year. They did as I instructed and so solved the problem of vegetables. They say that this year vegetable cultivation was so successful that the province will not be able to consume the whole of its output.

How good it is for the people even at the foot of Mt. Paektu in Ryanggang Province who used to produce only five to six tons of turnips per hectare and had to eat tasteless, salted turnips in the past to be now producing armful-sized cabbages, by cultivating them as an annual crop!

Although Ryanggang Province is the highest part of our country above sea level, vegetable cultivation has been very successful since they adopted the Pyongyang variety of spring cabbage as an annual crop.

I should like to quote another example, which happened immediately after liberation. People in Phyonggang County, Kangwon Province, had grown radishes on a large scale before liberation. For some reason, however, they did not plant them immediately after liberation. At the time Comrade Kim Chaek visited the place and on his return suggested that radishes should be grown there because other crops did not thrive. So radish cultivation was encouraged and the result was very good. Radish thrived there; there had even been a radish-processing mill in that county.

Later, the Agricultural Commission undertook various projects there, in an attempt to develop the county into what they called a stock
farming centre or something like that. The result was that none of these undertakings was successful. So in 1972 I criticized the officials concerned and urged them to resume radish cultivation in that county.

Now I am told that Phyonggang County has had a rich radish harvest this year. It still has a large surplus even after supplying them to the units of the People’s Army stationed there.

The chief secretary of the Kangwon Provincial Party Committee asked me what they should do with the surplus, and I told him to supply more to the People’s Army and also dry them by slicing and store them in brine. And I added that, if they still have a surplus, they should supply them to other districts.

Probably, no one will ask for more radishes because there has been a rich vegetable harvest everywhere this year.

Other crops may not grow well in the highlands but there is no doubt that vegetables will thrive if you cultivate one crop a year.

You can even solve the vegetable problem in Jagang Province if you discard the outdated method of vegetable farming and cultivate them as one crop in the highlands. It is better to do this than to produce a few tons of potatoes per hectare in highland areas.

It is advisable for Jagang Province to cultivate one crop of radishes and cabbages in the highland fields on an experimental basis next year. The people in Rangnim and Hwaphyong Counties and other districts, which are so high above sea level that even potatoes do not grow well, should cultivate one crop of vegetables a year and supply them to the lumbermen.

If you plant one crop of vegetables, you can harvest them a little earlier than usual.

You should harvest cabbages for kimchi a little later, but as far as radishes are concerned, it does not matter if you harvest them a little earlier. It is advisable for you to study this matter while growing vegetables in highland fields.

The experience of vegetable cultivation even in Paegam County, Ryanggang Province, shows that if one crop of vegetables is cultivated in Jagang Province a year, they will grow quite well.
In future you must study and develop a quick-growing variety of radishes.

If you want to cultivate radishes as an aftercrop just as cabbages are, you must shorten the growing period. Only then can you increase the production of grain by expanding the area of maize fields in our country which has a limited area of arable land, and grow radishes as an aftercrop.

At present, however, radishes are sown in midsummer. For this reason there is no other way but to plant barley, potatoes or spring cabbages which can be harvested before midsummer and then cultivate radishes as an aftercrop.

Radishes root deeper than cabbages so that no method of raising seedlings in humus-cakes has yet been developed. This is also true of potato seedlings.

You must study the method of shortening the period of radish growing in every possible way.

Efforts should be made to increase the per-hectare yield of vegetables. This is the way to solve the vegetable problem and reduce the area of vegetable fields so as to increase the production of cereals.

In order to increase the per-hectare yield of vegetables you should plant the F₁ hybrid seeds. You can increase their per-hectare yield considerably by doing so.

As was reported in the newspapers, the Oryu Cooperative Farm in Sadong District, Pyongyang, produced 400 tons of vegetable per hectare this year. The cabbages and radishes produced on this farm are so large that each of the cabbages weighs an average of 8 kg and the largest one weighs 12 kg. Therefore, the people there say that ten cabbages and ten radishes are enough for each family to prepare winter pickles.

You must produce F₁ hybrid vegetable seeds suitable for the climatic and soil conditions of Jagang Province as soon as possible. The F₁ hybrid seeds can be obtained easily if you know the hybridization theory. The F₁ hybrid vegetable seeds planted on the Oryu Cooperative Farm this year had been produced by the young researchers of the Vegetable Institute of the Academy of Agricultural
Sciences working on the farm.

It is advisable to cultivate F₁ hybrid vegetables in Jagang Province next year.

I was told that at present the vegetable institute has prepared enough seeds of the F₁ hybrid to meet 75 per cent of next year’s requirements. From now onwards a system has to be introduced whereby the Academy of Agricultural Sciences produces the seeds of parental vegetables and by which provinces select F₁ hybrid vegetable seeds.

Jagang Province must create 10,000 hectares of mulberry fields and the Osudok Cooperative Farm must plant 2,500 hectares to peppermint so as to earn more foreign currency.

Furthermore, land should be managed well.

You must first start a widespread campaign to remove stones from the fields. Fields in Jagang Province are stony. If the stones are removed, the fields will be improved.

During my visit to the Jongbang Cooperative Farm in Pongsan County, North Hwanghae Province, I set it the task of launching a campaign to remove stones from the fields. The cooperative farm worked hard to implement this task and improved all its fields.

Pyongyang is also engaged in a drive to eliminate stones from fields. The fields of Workteam No. 3 of the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm in Samsok District, Pyongyang, were very stony. However, the farmers cleared them in the ploughing and harvesting seasons every year and now almost all the fields have become good ones.

Jagang Province must also start a widespread drive to get rid of stones and improve all the fields.

Steps must be taken to improve damp lands and prevent damage caused by drought. You must study how to introduce tractor-sprinkler irrigation.

You should obtain a great deal of new land by improving the layout of fields. Tractors and other machines needed for this work will be provided after the matter has been discussed at the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Party.
Obtaining new land is not a project which can be finished next year, so it will be a good idea to supply 50 per cent of the necessary machines in the first stage.

Dwelling houses which are in the middle of fields should gradually be moved to other places. From now onwards not only dwelling houses but also the buildings of institutions and enterprises must not on any account be built in crop fields. If a building has to be built in a crop field, the project must obtain the approval of the chairman of the provincial rural economy committee concerned. This must be established as a rule. If a house is built in a field without the approval of the chairman the people concerned should be called to account.

The farmlands which are cultivated by state bodies and enterprises as sidelines must be transferred to cooperative farms. I was told that, at present, fields of this kind amount to 1,218 hectares in Jagang Province. All these fields must be returned to cooperative farms. The yield from these fields is very low because state bodies and enterprises do not make good use of them.

There is no need for the cadre-training centres to have their own farms since vegetable production is adequate.

The land within military posts should be used sensibly. At present efficient use is not made of this land. So it is necessary to look into the matter and take appropriate measures. If fields are not cultivated simply because they are located within military posts, it is impossible to manage the national economy properly.

The fields within those military posts which must be kept secret at all costs, will have to be left uncultivated, but the fields in the posts which are not strictly confidential must all be ploughed. We must trust our cooperative farmers. What can we do if we do not trust our own people? Work should be organized so as to permit cooperative farmers to work on the fields inside military posts.

In the future we shall ensure that even the fields next to the airfields are cultivated.

A detailed investigation must be made and a report prepared on the crop fields which are situated inside military posts and are not
cultivated. I shall discuss the matter with the officials concerned and take the necessary measures.

It is desirable to cut away the bushes growing on the edges of fields after consultation with the provincial security bureau. If you make it a rule to cut away all the trees which are within 10 to 20 metres of the edges of fields, there may be a tendency to cut trees at random. If the provincial security bureau receives a request for permission to cut trees on the edge of a field, its officials must inspect the situation on the spot and give permission only when it is imperative to cut them.

It is advisable not to plant big trees on the roadside and on the edges of fields from now onwards. If there are big trees on the edges of fields, crops do not grow well in the shade. It is not pleasant to have a lot of big trees on the roadside. I intend to have low roadside trees such as cherries and apricots planted, rather than tall ones not only in the rural areas but also in Pyongyang. Low roadside trees will look fine and will not shade the fields.

Crops should be fertilized properly.

In order to increase the per-hectare yield of grain you must use fertilizer liberally. At present, a greater amount of fertilizer is supplied to the cooperative farms which produce larger amounts of cereals than to those which produce smaller amounts. In the future we are going to ensure that more fertilizer is used for the fields which are less fertile and less productive. From the theoretical point of view, less fertile land needs more fertilizer if it is to be more productive.

But we are not yet producing sufficient fertilizer for all the cooperative farms.

Jagang Province is not likely to get a great deal of fertilizer even next year. It will have to be supplied with 500 kg of nitrogenous fertilizer and 500 kg of phosphatic and potassic fertilizers per hectare. Some micronutrients will be supplied as required.

If we build many fertilizer factories by 1976, we shall be able to supply adequate amounts of fertilizer to every district. I will ensure that in the future Jagang Province is provided with as much fertilizer as the lowland provinces are.
It would be a good idea for Jagang Province to be supplied with phosphatic fertilizer not by different provinces but by the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex.

In the future a large phosphatic fertilizer factory will be built in Jagang Province.

If the Manpho Smeltery is built and an apatite mine is developed next year, it will be desirable to construct a phosphatic fertilizer factory with a capacity of 200,000 to 300,000 tons in this province. If such a factory is built, it will be helpful in a war situation also, because it can produce phosphatic fertilizer for other provinces as well.

The officials in the agricultural sector in Jagang Province must establish a scientific fertilizing system so as to ensure that paddy and non-paddy fields are fertilized properly.

A large amount of humus must be produced. Next year most of the counties in Jagang Province will be supplied with 500 kg of nitrogenous fertilizer and a similar amount of phosphatic and potassic fertilizers per hectare; it will be necessary to produce a large amount of humus for use in their non-paddy fields.

There are many sloping fields and the land is infertile in this province, so crops do not grow well with the use of chemical fertilizer alone. Fertilizer spread on the sloping fields is washed down whenever it rains. Therefore, you must fertilize them by producing plenty of humus rather than try to use chemical fertilizer only.

The method of growing maize seedlings in humus-cakes also requires a great quantity of humus. Without humus you cannot introduce this method. If Jagang Province is to introduce the method on all farms next year, a large amount of humus will have to be prepared.

Humus is not only good for wheat and barley fields, but also rice fields. If you use a large amount of humus, you will be able to increase the per-hectare yield of grain considerably.

At the forthcoming national agricultural conference I am going to stress the importance of the production of humus. North Hamgyong, Ryanggang, Jagang and North Phyongan Provinces will be given the
task of producing a particularly large amount.

From now onwards your province must organize the work of producing humus well by composting bushes and leaves of trees. Since there are many mountains in Jagang Province you have favourable conditions and possibilities to produce a great deal of humus.

Humus should be produced from sawdust, bark and scrap timber by building many humus factories in lumber mills.

The people in Changsong continue to raise rich crops and this is why they do so. They cut shrubs such as hazel trees and bush clover into pieces, mix them with slaked lime and cattle dung and thus produce a great deal of humus and use it on non-paddy fields.

The people in Changsong produce compost on the edges of fields because it is hard work to carry it to the fields on steep slopes.

I went up to the field to see how they were producing compost. They built cowsheds on the edges of fields and were producing compost by raising two or three cows in a shed there during the whole summer.

The Changsong people produce compost from grass and shrubs in this way even in autumn. In winter they take it to their fields by sledge. As they produce and use large amounts of compost, their farming is always successful. Changsong County used to produce 2.7 to 3 tons of maize per hectare in the past. But this year I am told that the Yaksu Cooperative Farm in this county has produced seven tons of maize per hectare.

I think the land in Jagang Province is better than that in Changsong County; it cannot be worse.

The chairman of the Jagang Provincial Rural Economy Committee was once the chairman of a cooperative farm management board in Pyoktong County, North Phyongan Province. So he knows that the land in Jagang Province is not worse than that in Pyoktong County. During my tour of Hwaphyong and Sijung Counties in Jagang Province I could see that all the land there is better than that in Changsong County.

If the people in Jagang Province work as hard as the people in
Changsong and produce plenty of humus and spread it on their fields, they will be perfectly able to grow rich crops.

The soil in Jagang Province looks light, not as dark as that of Changsong County, because it has not been spread with manure and humus for a long time.

Changsong County produced an average of 5,180 kg of grain per hectare, although it was not given much more fertilizer than Jagang Province this year.

Jagang Province must learn from the experience of farming in Changsong County and produce a large amount of humus and spread it on the fields. If the province produces large quantities of humus it will be able to produce at least five tons of maize on the provincial average next year.

Jagang Province must definitively solve the problem of humus production. In order to do so, it will be necessary either to build a humus factory in each cooperative farm or several in each county for the cooperative farms in the county. It is advisable for each cooperative farm to learn how to produce humus from shrubs and the like and produce it to meet its own needs. It will be a good idea for Jagang Province to set an example in producing humus and then make a scientific film on this subject so that the whole country can follow its example.

In addition, we must speed up the mechanization of the rural economy.

Even in Jagang Province there is a large area of cultivated land where work can be mechanized. Twenty thousand hectares of maize fields are quite suitable for ploughing by tractors. This area accounts for one third of the total area of maize fields in Jagang Province.

In agricultural mechanization, it is important to plough with tractors, but it is more important to mechanize transport. Jagang Province is mountainous and the fields are far from the villages, so that they cannot farm well without mechanizing transport operations. Since most of the fields in Jagang Province are sloping, it may be impossible to plough them all by machine. But the transport of
manure and other loads must be mechanized.

Visiting Jagang Province, I remember the words of a workteam leader of the Chonsu Cooperative Farm in Hyangsan County, North Phyongan Province. I had a discussion with the farmers of this cooperative farm for the purpose of exploring manpower reserves because the Unsan Tool Factory had asked for labour. At that time an official who had been engaged in farming there for a long time was reluctant to introduce agricultural mechanization. He said that, after all, machines were not as good as human hands. When I was visiting a foreign country many years ago, people there said the same thing. It is true that in some respects machines are not as efficient as humans. But machines can work more quickly and more powerfully than humans.

A workteam leader of the Chonsu Cooperative Farm fully supported mechanization. He was a demobilized soldier and was well aware of the advantages of machines. He suggested that if we gave him a lorry and three tractors he would release 20 men in return.

He added that the farthest field from his workteam village was eight kilometres away and, therefore, their carrying of manure once a day by oxcart took the whole day. So it was impossible to carry manure to the field and he had to cultivate it without manuring even though manure was available.

He meant that, even though there were many hands, his workteam was unable to transport manure to the distant fields and that he could farm better than before if he was given a lorry and three tractors which would do the work of the farmers.

On this occasion I received a report on the farming on the Chonsu Cooperative Farm and it stated that the farm had been successful in farming this year. When farm work was not yet mechanized the Chonsu Cooperative Farm produced 1.3 tons of maize per hectare. But it attained 2.6 tons last year and 5.5 tons this year.

The people in Changsong County are working hard to mechanize farm work. Farmers there are asking for Jonjin tractors rather than Chollima tractors. They say that the Jonjin is more efficient in carrying goods on mountain roads.
If farm work is to be efficient in mountain regions, transport must be mechanized. It is necessary to supply some tractors to Jagang Province, with which to mechanize hauling operations.

I think that these tractors should be supplied next year. At present, tractors are being supplied first to the districts where rich crops have been harvested and large loads have to be transported. So we cannot afford to supply them to Jagang Province immediately.

A tractor parts factory will have to be built as soon as possible. This factory is needed to keep tractors working all the time. Even though many tractors will be supplied to Jagang Province in the future, they will not be able to work unless they have spare parts. This also applies to lorries.

Jagang Province must organize the work of building the tractor parts factory well. It is desirable for the Administration Council to help in its construction in a responsible way.

Until the factory has been built, the machine factories in this province should be assigned the task of manufacturing the necessary spare parts.

In order to make effective use of the existing tractors and lorries, all the machine factories in the province must be given the task of making at least one kind of spare part.

Since many tractors have not been supplied to Jagang Province this year, a large number of oxcarts have to be made and used. In winter sledges will have to be used for carrying humus and manure to the fields just as the people in Changsong County do.

In conclusion, I should like to touch on the questions which have been raised.

Jagang Province need not accelerate rural housing construction. It is not a pressing task to build dwelling houses in the country areas and remove the houses which have been built in fields. As far as Jagang Province is concerned, it is more important to increase grain production than to build houses.

If farmers have to build houses, they will not be able to do farm work as they should. The building of houses must wait until they have
improved farming and their diet.

Jagang Province should not try to build all the houses within one or two years but do so gradually.

The provincial authorities must not insist too much on rural housing construction.

This year’s farming should be reviewed well. It is advisable to sum it up now when the director of the Agricultural Department of the Party Central Committee and the chairman of the Agricultural Commission are visiting this province. The meeting should be attended by the chairmen of the county cooperative farm management committees and chief agriculturists.

At the meeting you should ascertain the shortcomings in this year’s farming and discuss the tasks for successful farming next year. In this way good preparations for farming must be made from now onwards.

Threshing must be organized well. Before the national conference of agricultural workers is held, all threshing should be finished and plans for next year’s farming drawn up.

I will ensure that five *Kaengsaeng* cars are provided for the chairmen of the county cooperative farm management committees in Jagang Province, one for the direction of vegetable production and seven small lorries for transporting sperm. Containers for its transport will all be provided.

As the chief agriculturists of the county cooperative farm management committees have to direct different cooperative farms by visiting them, I shall ensure that cars are available to them when the production of the *Kaengsaeng* is increased next year.
I warmly welcome your visit to our country.

I express my thanks for your visit to this country and for your support and encouragement to our people in their efforts to build socialism and to achieve the independent, peaceful reunification of their country.

I have looked through your list of questions. There are many, so for convenience’s sake I would like to group them under several headings.

First you have asked what is the philosophical basis of the Juche idea. I shall answer this briefly.

The idea of Juche is that the masses of the people are the masters of the revolution and construction, that they are the power propelling them. In other words, a person is responsible for, and has the capacity to carve out, his own destiny.

The Juche idea is based on the philosophical principle that man is the master of everything and decides everything.

Man is a social being who has independence. His activity is always determined by his thought. Because he has independent thought, he transforms the world purposefully as he wishes, instead of blindly adapting himself to his environment. Man is the most advanced and powerful of all beings in the world. It is man who transforms nature and society; it is also man who develops science and technology. Therefore, man is the master of the world and is the factor that decides everything.
In evolving all our revolutionary theories the working masses are taken as the focal point in accordance with the philosophical principle of the Juche idea.

The masters of the revolution and construction are the masses. The revolution and construction are undertakings for the good of the masses and must be carried out by the masses themselves as the masters. Only through their own efforts can the working masses overthrow the old society, build a new one, and create a new, prosperous and cultured life.

The working masses are also the driving force behind the revolution and construction. Their strength and wisdom know no limit. They can show unlimited energy and wisdom and advance the revolution and construction at a tremendous speed when they are aware that they are masters of the revolution and construction.

The Juche idea calls for an independent and a creative stand in the revolution and construction. Establishing Juche means having the attitude of a master towards the revolution and construction; this means, in the final analysis, that the working masses maintain an independent and a creative stand in the revolution and construction. Juche must be firmly embedded in the revolution and construction if they are to be successful.

Our Party and people, making the Juche idea their immutable guiding principle, have endeavoured steadfastly to implement it in all fields of the revolution and construction. By establishing Juche in ideology and adhering strictly to the principles of independence in politics, self-sufficiency in the economy, and self-reliance in national defence, we have been able to eliminate the aftereffects of colonial rule and age-old backwardness and to build a rich, strong and prosperous new society in a historically very short period of time.

The validity and great strength of the Juche idea have been fully proved by our people in their revolutionary practice. In the future too, our people will make the Juche idea their immutable guiding principle in pressing ahead with the revolution and construction.

As time passes, the Juche idea is arousing an ever-increasing
response among people everywhere in the world. This, I think, is because the Juche idea conforms to the aspirations and desires of all peoples who seek independence.

This is the era of independence when the people of the world want to live independently. No one cares to live in bondage and have his national dignity trampled upon. In particular, the third world people who suffered imperialist oppression and exploitation for long years are forging ahead under the unfurled banner of independence.

The people’s advance along the path of independence is an irresistible trend of the present times.

You have asked how the developing countries can apply the Juche idea. The idea to be adopted as one’s guiding principle and how it should be applied in practice, is entirely a matter for the people of each country to decide as they see fit. The Juche idea is the guiding idea of the Korean revolution which we have worked out in keeping with the requirements of the Korean revolution and on the basis of its historical experience. So we do not think that the Juche idea fits the developing countries exactly as it stands.

Essentially, the Juche idea requires that the people of each country take the attitude of masters in solving all problems of their revolution and construction independently and creatively. The Juche idea requires that even when adopting foreign experience and revolutionary theories, they should be assimilated to suit the interests of one’s own people and the actual conditions of one’s own country. I think, therefore, that if the developing countries are to adopt the Juche idea, they must under all circumstances apply it creatively, in keeping with their actual conditions. Only then can they bring the strength of this idea into full play.

Further, I would like to touch briefly on the objectives of the Six-Year Plan now being carried out by our people.

As has been made clear in the report to the Fifth Congress of our Party, the basic objective of the Six-Year Plan is to strengthen the material and technical foundations of socialism and free the working people from arduous toil in all fields of the national economy by
consolidating and developing the successes in industrialization and by advancing the technical revolution to a new, higher stage.

The most important goal set by the Six-Year Plan is to carry out the three major tasks of the technical revolution and free all our working people from arduous labour.

With the fulfilment of the historic task of socialist industrialization under the Seven-Year Plan, technical equipment has been radically improved throughout the national economy, and much has been done to ease the difficult and burdensome labour of the working people. Much has yet to be done, however, to free the working people from difficult, labour-consuming work.

In the industrial field there is still a difference between heavy and light work; there are still jobs undertaken in intense heat and some which are injurious to health; farm work is much more difficult than industrial work; and the women, who account for half the population, are not completely free from the heavy burden of household chores. For this reason, our Party has proposed three major tasks of the technical revolution: first, to carry out the technical revolution to eliminate labour in intense heat and harmful conditions and substantially reduce the difference between heavy and light labour in industry; secondly, to press ahead with the technical revolution in the rural areas to narrow the gap between agricultural and industrial labour to a considerable extent; and thirdly, to carry out the technical revolution to free women from the heavy burden of household chores.

These three major tasks of the technical revolution are very difficult and complex. Nevertheless, they are being implemented successfully through the creative endeavours of our workers, farmers, scientists and technicians.

When these tasks are fulfilled, our working people who have been emancipated from exploitation and oppression once and for all, will be free from backbreaking work and will be able to enjoy more abundant and cultured lives.

Now I shall pass on to the question of abolishing taxation in our country.
As you know well, originally taxation was an exploiting system which came into being with the rise of the state. It has existed for thousands of years down through the class societies as a means of maintaining the ruling machine of the governing classes and plundering the working people.

After liberation our Party and the people’s government abolished the plunderous, anti-popular, colonial system of taxation passed down from the time of Japanese imperialist rule and set up a popular and democratic taxation system. Our popular taxation system has been used as an auxiliary source of income for the nation’s economic and cultural construction and as a supplementary means for adjusting the difference in living standards of the people of different levels.

One of the principles followed consistently by our Party and the Government of the Republic in their taxation policy was to lighten the tax burden systematically and eventually abolish taxation altogether, a leftover of the old society.

As the socialist revolution and the building of socialism advanced and the revenue from the socialist state sector of the economy increased, the working people’s taxes were gradually reduced. Between 1964 and 1966 measures were taken to abolish the agricultural tax in kind completely.

With the abolition of the agricultural tax in kind, there remained only income tax and local-government taxes. These taxes accounted for a negligible portion of the state budget revenue. Last year 98.1 per cent of the state budget revenue came from the socialist economic sector, and only 1.9 per cent from taxation of the population.

Thanks to our Party’s correct policy for improving the people’s living standards equally and systematically and, particularly, to the substantial annual increase in additional state benefits, all our working people’s living conditions were guaranteed by the state and their material and cultural standards rose steadily and equally. It became unnecessary, therefore, to use taxes as a lever to adjust the discrepancies in the living standards of various levels of the people.

The socialist system in this country was further consolidated and
developed and the strength of the independent national economy increased incomparably, with the result that the socialist state finances were stabilized still further. This made it possible to abolish taxes once and for all.

The social, economic and material conditions for the abolition of taxation having matured, the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPRK enacted a law last March abolishing taxation completely.

Thus, our people’s age-old desire to live in a tax-free society has been realized, and this country has become the first in the world to have no taxation.

The abolition of taxation demonstrates the superiority of our socialist system where everything in the state and society serves the working people; it demonstrates the might of the socialist, independent national economy.

Now, I should like to touch on the question of the reunification of this country.

You have asked about the DPRK’s programme for Korea’s reunification. The basic stand maintained all along by our Republic for the solution of the national reunification question is that the country should be reunified by the Korean people themselves, independently, peacefully, and on democratic principles, free from outside interference. Proceeding from this basic stand, we have put forward many correct and quite reasonable proposals in the past for the reunification of the country. The North-South Joint Statement published in July 1972 clearly set forth the three principles of national reunification—indepence, peaceful reunification and great national unity. This reflected exactly the stand taken by the Government of our Republic.

Following the publication of the North-South Joint Statement, the separatists at home and abroad stepped up their actions to prolong the division. Under the circumstances we set forth a new five-point policy in June last year to promote the cause of the independent and peaceful reunification of the homeland. The essence of this policy is to eliminate the military confrontation between north and south and ease
the tension, to establish multilateral cooperation and exchange between both sides, hold a Great National Congress comprising representatives of people of all levels, political parties, and public organizations in both parts of the country, institute a north-south Federation under the name of the Federal Republic of Koryo, and to enter the UN under this name.

The basic stand of our Republic for national reunification and its five-point policy which is a concrete expression of this stand, are strongly supported and welcomed by all the people of north and south Korea and by progressive people the world over.

Thanks to the tireless, sincere efforts made by the Government of our Republic and to the active support and encouragement of progressive people throughout the world, a certain degree of progress has been made in recent years towards the solution of the reunification question. But great difficulties still lie ahead.

The chief obstacle to Korea’s reunification is the US imperialists’ occupation of south Korea and their divisive tactics. After World War II they not only illegally occupied south Korea in place of Japanese imperialism but turned it into their colony and military base. In recent years they devised the “two Koreas” policy and are making desperate efforts to put it into effect. On the one hand, the US imperialists actively egg the south Korean reactionaries on to partition the nation, and on the other, they are hatching a plot for “two Koreas” on the international scene, in the UN for one.

Another major stumbling block in the way of independent and peaceful reunification is the south Korean reactionaries’ moves to perpetuate national division and their fascist repression of the south Korean people, carried out under the active patronage of US imperialism.

Betraying the principles and agreements of the North-South Joint Statement for independent and peaceful reunification, the south Korean authorities continued their moves to bring about a division and in June last year openly proclaimed their “policy” of making national division permanent and immutable. While increasing their armed
forces and stepping up war preparations in south Korea, they also
devised what they called the “October Revitalization” to tighten their
fascist dictatorial system, and launched large-scale acts of repression.
As a consequence, our people’s struggle for peaceful reunification ran
up against a major obstacle and the dialogue between north and south
also reached deadlock.

Our nation’s reunification problem can only be solved successfully
by making the US imperialist aggressor forces withdraw from south
Korea and by thoroughly thwarting the plot of the US imperialists and
their stooges to divide our nation.

Recently, despite fearful fascist repression by the reactionaries in
south Korea, the young people, students and other sections of the
people have been waging a fierce struggle for social democracy and
national reunification. The south Korean young people and students
are holding protest meetings and demonstrations almost every day
under the slogans: “Park Chung Hee, step down!” “Abolish the
Revitalized Constitution!” “Release the arrested students!” and
“Guarantee campus freedom!” Recently south Korean newspaper and
radio reporters came out together in protest against the authorities’
suppression of the press. Religious men and public figures from
various other circles are also in the ranks of the south Korean people
fighting against fascism for democracy.

The courageous fight being waged today by the south Korean
people, among them public figures from various circles, against the
south Korean authorities is a just fight for democratic social progress,
and a patriotic struggle to save the country and the people. We shall
always make every effort to give active support and encouragement to
the just struggle of the south Korean people. The people in the northern
half of Korea consider it their sacred national duty to support and
encourage the south Korean people, their fellow countrymen, in their
patriotic struggle.

Fearing the south Korean people’s indomitable struggle, the south
Korean authorities are committed to fascist suppression. In the
so-called “case of the National Federation of Youth and Students for
Democracy” alone, thousands of young people, students and people of various other levels were arrested in the spring of this year; they were court-martialled and more than 200 of them received severe sentences including life imprisonment and the death penalty. Amongst those whom the south Korean authorities have indicted for murderous trials and are torturing now are a famous poet, a Catholic bishop, university professors, and even a former “presidential candidate” and an ex-“President”. This clearly shows how completely isolated the south Korean authorities have become, and how terrified they are.

The whipping up of frenzied fascist repressions by the south Korean authorities is nothing but the death struggle of a doomed man. No repressions can halt the just struggle of the south Korean people or bolster up the present crumbling ruling system for long. Where there is repression, there will always be a revolutionary struggle. The more the south Korean reactionaries intensify their fascist repression against the people, the fiercer will the people’s resistance become.

We are confident that despite the many ordeals their struggle is now undergoing because of reactionaries’ fascist repression, the south Korean people will crush the fascist rule and bring democracy to south Korean society.

You have asked about the position of the DPRK with regard to the “UN forces” stationed in south Korea. We maintain that the US army wearing the cap of “UN forces” must take it off and quit south Korea without delay.

The so-called “UN forces” in south Korea are “United Nations forces” in name only; in fact they are the US imperialist aggressor army which has nothing to do with the UN. The US imperialists have improperly usurped the name of the UN in order to justify their south Korean occupation. All that the US imperialist aggressor troops have done in Korea in the guise of “UN forces” is to murder countless innocent people, prop up successive south Korean puppet governments, obstruct the independent and peaceful reunification of our country, and bring the disaster and pain of national division on the Korean people.
Meanwhile, the US imperialists claim that the US army must remain in south Korea to preserve peace on the Korean peninsula. But even if it withdraws, war will not break out. It is not because of the presence of US armed forces in the helmet of “UN forces” but solely because of the consistent peace-loving efforts made by the Government of our Republic that peace has been maintained in Korea over the past 20 years.

Only when the US imperialist aggressor troops take off their caps with the “UN forces” sign on them and quit south Korea, can the tension in Korea be eased, genuine peace preserved, and the question of our country’s reunification resolved smoothly.

At the joint initiative of 37 UN member states including Algeria, the current 29th Session of the UN General Assembly is to discuss the withdrawal of all foreign troops occupying south Korea under the UN flag. We consider that at its General Assembly session this year the UN should take a positive step to deprive the US imperialist aggressor troops occupying south Korea of their “UN forces” helmet and make them pull out of south Korea to the last man, so that favourable conditions will be created for settling our country’s reunification question. We are firmly convinced that, this year, too, just as they did at last year’s UN General Assembly session, all the progressive countries will stand firmly by justice and actively support our people’s cause of independent national reunification.

Next, there is the question of relations between our country and Japan.

Relations between our country and Japan have shown little sign of improvement yet.

The absence of friendly relations between Korea and Japan until now is due entirely to the hostile policy of the Japanese government towards our country.

It is true that, in recent years, the attitude of the Japanese government towards our country has changed somewhat compared with the past. But there is nothing that can really be regarded as an improvement.
Some exchanges are now under way between Korea and Japan, but they are merely of a unilateral and conditional nature. Take the visits of delegations for example. Japan’s political delegations can visit our country at will, but our political delegations cannot visit Japan freely. Even when the Japanese government allows our delegations to visit Japan, it makes various reservations.

By this one-way policy, the Japanese government discriminates between the north and the south of the Korean peninsula. It is pitting the south Korean reactionaries against the DPRK, and stepping up its moves for an aggressive return to Korea. Hand in glove with US imperialism on the international scene, the Japanese government continues to take a vicious stand against Korea’s reunification.

It denies due treatment as foreigners to Koreans of DPRK nationality in Japan. This is also an expression of its unfriendly attitude towards our country.

Because of this unfriendly and hostile policy of the Japanese government towards our country, relations between Korea and Japan are not improving at present.

If the Japanese government stops interfering in Korea’s internal affairs and adopts a friendly attitude towards our country, Korea-Japan relations will quickly improve.

Our stand regarding Korea-Japan relations is clear. If the Japanese government renounces its hostile policy and adopts a friendly attitude towards our country, we are ready to improve relations with it on the principles of equality, mutual benefit and noninterference in each other’s internal affairs.

Whether or not good neighbourly relations are established between Korea and Japan depends entirely on the Japanese government’s attitude towards our country.

Lastly, I would like to say a few words on relations between the DPRK and Australia.

Relations between our country and Australia began to develop favourably in 1972 when the new Labour Party government was in office. Despite the obstructive moves of the US and Japanese
imperialists and the south Korean reactionaries, the Australian government established diplomatic relations with our country last July. We welcomed the establishment of diplomatic relations between our country and Australia at ambassadorial level.

By degrees the Australian government is coming to understand the policies of the DPRK Government and expressing its sympathy with them.

We are grateful to the Australian government and people for their support and sympathy for our people in their just struggle for the peaceful reunification of their homeland.

You have asked for my opinion of future relations between Korea and Australia. We think relations between our two countries will expand and develop further in many fields in the future—politics, the economy, and culture. We believe that, although their social systems differ, Australia and our country can favourably develop relations of friendship and cooperation.

We want to be on good terms with those countries and peoples who take a friendly attitude towards our country, regardless of the past.

I believe that the friendship and cooperation between the DPRK and Australia will continue to develop for the better on principles of complete equality, independence, mutual respect and noninterference in each other’s internal affairs.

Taking this opportunity, I wish the Australian people further success in their action against imperialism and racism and for their country’s independent development.
Question: What is the stand of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea on national reunification?

Answer: The DPRK’s stand on national reunification has already been made clear. We maintain that the problem of national reunification should be solved independently without any foreign interference, and by peaceful means on democratic principles. This is the stand we have consistently adhered to since the time when our nation was divided into north and south by outside forces.

Our stand on independent, peaceful reunification is also expressed concisely in the North-South Joint Statement of July 1972. This statement is based mainly on the three principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity which we put forward.

The first principle laid down in the North-South Joint Statement is that the country’s reunification should be achieved independently without relying on outside forces or tolerating their interference. As you have seen for yourself, there are no outside forces in the northern half of Korea and we do not tolerate their interference. The only outside force in our country is the US imperialist army of aggression which is occupying south Korea, and those who are interfering in the internal affairs of our country are the US imperialists and the Japanese
militarists. Therefore, independent national reunification means forcing the US imperialist aggressive army out of south Korea and brooking no foreign interference at all in solving the reunification problem. For peaceful reunification to be carried out by the Korean people themselves, it is essential to expel the US imperialist aggressor army wearing the cap of “UN forces” from south Korea and put an end to all forms of foreign interference in our country.

The second principle set forth in the North-South Joint Statement is that the north and the south should reunify the country by peaceful means without using arms against each other. This literally means achieving national reunification not by war but in a peaceful way. The peaceful reunification of the country now divided by outside forces is the unanimous aspiration and demand of all the people in north and south Korea.

If we are to reunify the country independently and peacefully, the north and the south should not impose their social systems on each other, but achieve national unity without regard to the difference in ideas, political views, religious beliefs and party affiliation. That is why we defined it in the North-South Joint Statement as one of the important principles of national reunification to promote great national unity, transcending the difference in ideologies, ideals and social systems. In essence, the principle of great national unity requires the south Korean authorities to discontinue their “anti-communist” outcries and guarantee freedom of political activity for different parties and groups and public figures of all levels in south Korea. If the south Korean authorities continue their “anti-communist” and fascist policies and stamp out all freedom of political activity as they are doing now, there can neither be great national unity nor peaceful reunification. It is a major prerequisite for the independent and peaceful reunification of the country that the south Korean authorities discard their “anti-communist” and fascist policies and guarantee democratic liberties and rights for people in all walks of life.

The policy of the Government of our Republic for reunifying the divided country independently and in a peaceful way on democratic
principles is a most fair and reasonable policy which is acceptable to anyone who sincerely loves the country and the people and wants reunification. Therefore, not only all the north and south Korean people but also progressive people throughout the world warmly support the policy of the Government of our Republic on independent, peaceful reunification.

However, because of the manipulations of US imperialism, the south Korean authorities doggedly oppose our just policy of independent, peaceful reunification and follow the path of perpetuating national division contrary to the North-South Joint Statement which they solemnly pledged to observe before the whole nation. As a result, there is still a massive obstacle in the way of national reunification.

In an effort to remove that obstacle and hasten the independent, peaceful reunification of the country, we put forward a new five-point policy for national reunification in June last year.

The main contents of our new five-point policy for national reunification are: to remove military confrontation and lessen tension between north and south, to establish multilateral cooperation and exchange between north and south, to convene a Great National Congress comprising representatives of people of all levels, political parties and social organizations from the north and the south, to institute a north-south Federation under the name of the Federal Republic of Koryo, and to enter the United Nations under that name.

The fact that we have put forward the new five-point policy for national reunification is a positive step to check and frustrate the schemes of the US imperialists and south Korean authorities for the perpetuation of national division, and to expedite the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. If this policy is carried into effect, there will be signal progress in our people’s struggle to prevent national division and achieve independent, peaceful reunification.

As in the past, so in the future, too, the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea will continue to adhere strongly to the fundamental stand of solving the problem of national reunification independently and by peaceful means on democratic principles and will tirelessly
endeavour to bring about the new five-point policy for national reunification announced last year.

**Question:** What is the social, economic and political force which will remove the internal and external obstacles to reunification?

**Answer:** Since the first days of the country’s division, we have put forward most fair and reasonable proposals for national reunification and worked sincerely for their implementation, but the country’s reunification, the greatest desire of our people, has not yet been accomplished. This is entirely due to the internal and external obstacles which hamper the reunification of the country.

The chief obstacle which is holding back our national reunification is US imperialism’s occupation of south Korea and its aggressive actions.

The US imperialists not only occupied south Korea illegally after liberation and turned it completely into their colony and military base, but have made ceaseless attempts to conquer the whole of Korea. Having failed to achieve their aggressive design to conquer the whole country, the US imperialists recently put forward the “two Koreas” policy in an attempt to hold south Korea at least as their permanent colony and tried desperately to bring this about. In the meantime, they continue to urge the south Korean reactionaries to work towards national division. US imperialism is both the culprit who divided our nation and the major obstacle to our national reunification.

The Japanese militarists’ plot to reinvade south Korea is another obstacle to our country’s reunification. Watching and biding their time to achieve their old dream of the “Greater East Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere”, the Japanese militarists have launched into their political, economic and cultural penetration into south Korea in earnest and actively subscribing to US imperialism’s “two Koreas” policy, they are encouraging the south Korean reactionaries to scheme for national division.

The main domestic barrier to reunification is the south Korean
reactionaries’ determination to perpetuate national division.

With the support of US imperialism, the south Korean reactionaries have been involved in the north-south confrontation and national division schemes, and went as far as openly announcing the “policy” of freezing and perpetuating national division to the world in June last year. In their attempts to keep the nation divided for ever and achieve their ambition of keeping power in their own hands for a long time, they are further intensifying the fascist suppression of south Korean people and patriots and unhesitatingly continuing their traitorous act of betraying the country and the people.

Their “anti-communist” policy is also a serious impediment to the reunification problem. They have proclaimed “anti-communism” as their “first national policy” and viciously oppose communism. Moreover, they have recently even declared openly that they cannot reunify the country in harmony with communists. Communism has been established as a firm, dominant ideology in the northern half of our country for a long time, and today the Korean communists are the undisputed leading force for the reunification of the country. Under these circumstances, insistence on reunification independent of the communists in our country is, in fact, tantamount to the rejection of reunification.

Although many difficulties and obstacles still stand in the way of our country’s reunification, we have the capacity and strength to remove them and accomplish the cause of national reunification. That strength lies in the three revolutionary forces, namely the revolutionary force of the northern half of Korea, the revolutionary force of south Korea and the international revolutionary force.

Accepting that the decisive guarantee for national reunification is to strengthen the revolutionary force of the northern half of Korea, the revolutionary force of south Korea and the international revolutionary force, we have in the past worked energetically to strengthen these three revolutionary forces, and we are still doing so.

As soon as our country was divided, we put forward the policy of building up the northern half of Korea as the base for the Korean revolution, and have worked persistently to implement this. As a result,
the revolutionary base of the northern half of Korea has now become solid in all respects—political, economic and military. We can safely say that we have built up a firm revolutionary base which enables us to meet the great event of national reunification in a state of full preparedness, whenever it comes.

It is very important to increase the revolutionary force of south Korea in achieving the cause of national reunification. The south Korean people are the immediate victims of exploitation and oppression by the US imperialists and their stooges. It will only be possible to drive out the US imperialists, democratize south Korean society and create favourable conditions for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country when they awake and rise in revolt. In south Korea today the revolutionary force is growing rapidly and the people, holding high the banner of anti-fascism and democracy, are fighting bravely against the colonial enslavement policy of the US and Japanese imperialists and the military fascist dictatorship of their stooges, despite the harsh fascist repression of the enemy.

Our people’s struggle to force US imperialism out of south Korea and reunify the country is one of the important links in the whole chain of the anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle throughout the world. Therefore, it is only by strengthening the international revolutionary force and cementing solidarity with it, that we can drive out the US imperialists from our country and achieve national reunification quickly.

Thanks to the correct foreign policy of our Party and the Government of our Republic, the international solidarity of our revolution has been strengthened immensely. The international position of our Party and the Government of our Republic has been greatly enhanced, and the peoples of the socialist countries, the peace-loving people of the world, and the peoples of the third world in particular, are explicitly supporting and encouraging our people’s just struggle for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country. This is giving a great stimulus to the revolutionary struggle of our people.

With the united efforts of all the people of north and south Korea and the active support and encouragement of the peoples of the world,
we shall sooner or later remove all domestic and foreign obstacles to national reunification and finally accomplish the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

**Question:** What is Mr. President’s stand on the Palestinian question and how do you regard the resistance movement of Palestine?

**Answer:** The Palestinian question is a product of the devious colonial policy of the imperialists who try to ferment antagonism and discord between the peoples and divide and rule other countries. Long ago the US and British imperialists engendered national antagonism and confrontation between the Arabs and Jews and craftily intrigued to invade Palestine and other Arab countries by using the Zionists as their “shock troops”. Actively encouraged and protected by the imperialists, the Israeli aggressors occupied the territory of Palestine like marauders and drove the Palestinian people from their native land. As a consequence, the Palestinians, robbed of their country by the Israeli aggressors, are now living as refugees in foreign countries. The Palestinian question is, in the last analysis, a question of the noble liberation struggle of the Palestinian people to win back their country which has been usurped by the Israeli aggressors and restore their national independence and dignity, and a question of their fate.

Even now the US imperialists are urging the Israeli aggressors to aggravate the antagonism and confrontation between the countries of the Middle East and are actively supporting their anti-Arab actions. Owing to the US imperialists’ intervention and the Israeli aggressors’ acts of invasion, war has broken out several times in the Middle East recently and the situation there remains tense. The Palestinian question is still unsolved to this day entirely because of the aggressive acts of the Israeli invaders against Palestine and the US imperialists’ unwarranted intervention.

If the Palestinian question is to be solved fairly, first of all, the Israeli aggressors must withdraw unconditionally and completely from the occupied territory of Palestine and stop their aggressive acts against the
Palestinian people at once. At the same time, the US imperialists must stop their unjustified intervention in Palestinian affairs, and must cease from encouraging the Israeli aggressors to oppose the Arab peoples and must no longer support their aggressive moves.

Unless the Israeli aggressors withdraw from the territory of Palestine which they occupied unlawfully and the imperialists desist from their moves of aggression and interference against the Arab countries, the Palestinian question cannot be solved nor can peace in the Middle East be guaranteed.

The resistance movement the Palestinian people are now carrying on against the US imperialists and the Israeli aggressors is a just struggle to take back their lost motherland and restore their national independence and dignity. The just struggle of the Palestinian people to accomplish the righteous cause of liberating their country has the full support and encouragement of progressive people the world over.

The Korean people wholeheartedly support the Palestinian people’s just struggle. We consider that the Palestinian question must be solved in accordance with the requirements of the Palestinian people and the common interests of all the Arab peoples, no matter how it is solved.

As in the past, the Korean people will, in the future, too, give positive support and encouragement to the sacred liberation struggle of the Palestinian people and will always stand firmly by them and other Arab peoples in the joint struggle against the imperialist aggressors.

**Question:** How do you view the possibility of future development of economic relations with the Arab countries?

**Answer:** The Government of our Republic is working hard to develop not only political, but also economic relations, with all countries that are friendly towards our country. In particular, we attach great importance to the expansion and development of economic and technological cooperation with the developing countries of the third world.

At present developing countries are supporting and encouraging
each other politically in the struggle to achieve their independent progress in spite of every kind of pressure on the part of the imperialists. This is very good.

It is also important for the countries of the third world to strengthen their economic and technological cooperation, while supporting and encouraging each other politically. They have abundant material resources and possess a considerable amount of good, exchangeable experience and techniques. There are now more than a hundred countries in the third world. If each of them makes available to the others ten kinds of good experience and techniques, all the countries of the third world will be able to acquire more than a thousand. This is quite remarkable.

If the third world countries satisfy one another’s needs and strengthen economic and technological cooperation, they can develop great force and emerge completely from economic backwardness and subjugation and achieve economic independence in a short time without relying on the great powers. This will strike heavy blows at the imperialists, not only politically, but economically as well.

We are greatly concerned about the expansion and promotion of economic relations with developing countries, and the Arab countries in particular.

Our country and the Arab countries are all advancing under the banner of anti-imperialism and independence and are fighting shoulder to shoulder to create a new, prosperous and civilized life. There is Kuwait’s abundant petroleum and other rich resources in Arab countries which we badly need, and they also have many techniques and experiences which we should learn from them. And on our part, we are fully prepared to pass on our experience and techniques, though modest, if the Arab countries ask us to.

Multilateral economic exchange is now under way between our country and the Arab countries. In future we shall also continue to try to expand and develop economic and technological cooperation and interchange with the Arab countries in the interests of our people and the Arab peoples.
**Question:** What are the major aspects of the economic and social progress made in Korea?

**Answer:** It is nearly 30 years since our country was liberated from the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism. In this period our people, under the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, have achieved remarkably notable social and economic changes.

The most significant social and economic change in our country is the establishment of the socialist system under which there is no exploitation and oppression of man by man and the working masses are the genuine masters of their own destinies.

Our country was once a colonial, semi-feudal society. Our people who had defeated the Japanese imperialist aggressors and won freedom, were faced, first of all, with the task of eliminating the vestiges of Japanese imperialist colonial rule and feudal conditions. Immediately after liberation our people, under the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, abolished the colonial ruling machine of Japanese imperialism, set up the people’s government and successfully carried out agrarian reform, the nationalization of major industries and other democratic reforms, thus doing away with imperialistic and feudal exploitation and oppression.

However, the democratic revolution alone is unable to wipe out all forms of exploitation and oppression. To do so, we must continue with the revolution and follow the path of socialism.

Under the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, our people, following up the democratic revolution, carried out the socialist revolution of reorganizing production relations along socialist lines in the towns and the rural areas. The historic task of reorganizing the old production relations along socialist lines in town and country was accomplished with credit in a very short time after the war and, as a result, a most advanced socialist system, free from exploitation and oppression, was established in our country.

Our socialist system is the best social system under which the working masses are the masters of society and everything in society
serves them. In our country the workers, peasants and other working masses have become the masters of state power and the means of production. Our working people enjoy all political liberties and rights in practice and our state takes full responsibility for their material and cultural well-being. Enjoying genuine political rights and liberties and free from all worries about their lives, our working people are now living a dignified and worthwhile life to the full.

The establishment of the socialist system in our country represents the greatest victory in the protracted revolutionary struggle of our people, and it is the sure guarantee of their happiness and brighter future.

A major achievement in our people’s struggle for a new life is the abolition of economic backwardness and the building of an independent national economy.

It was a very backward and dependent economy that our people took over from the old society, and even this was devastated in the three-year war.

Giving full play to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and bravely overcoming immeasurable difficulties and hardships, our people, under the correct leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea, carried out with credit the historic task of socialist industrialization in a very short time—14 years—through vigorous economic construction. As a result, our once backward and poor colonial agrarian country has now been converted into a socialist industrial state with powerful heavy industry, modern light industry and a developed agriculture capable of looking after the people’s lives and the country’s economic affairs through its own resources.

Over the past years our people have also attained great success in wiping out cultural backwardness and developing a socialist national culture.

With the establishment of a most advanced and popular education system in our country, all pupils and students—from primary school children to university students—receive free education, and children below school age are growing up happily in nurseries and kindergartens at state and public expense. In particular, thanks to the
introduction of universal compulsory ten-year education which provides ten years of schooling, plus one year of compulsory preschool training, our rising generation are receiving eleven years of perfect education from the state. Adults who were denied the right to education in the former exploiting society are studying to the best of their ability, according to their desire and aptitude, under the educational system of studying while working. Consequently, our country has now turned into a veritable “land of education”, “land of learning” where all the people study.

Meanwhile, in our country revolutionary and popular literature and art are flourishing brilliantly and Juche-based science and technology are developing rapidly.

It is because the Workers’ Party of Korea adopted the Juche idea as its immutable guide and embodied it thoroughly in the campaigns to build a new society that such far-reaching social and economic changes have been brought about in our country in a historically very short period. Our Party armed all the people firmly with the Juche idea and adhered closely to the revolutionary principle of political independence, economic self-sufficiency and national self-defence. True to the Party’s policy, our people have fully displayed the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and thus overcome all obstacles and difficulties in building a new society through their own efforts.

Our experience shows that if the masses of the people stand firmly on the Juche position that one is the master of one’s own destiny and one must shape one’s own destiny entirely for oneself, and boldly work out the path towards a new life, they are fully capable of building a prosperous and civilized new society in a short time, however backward their country was in the past.

Taking advantage of this opportunity, I should like to express my deep gratitude to the friendly people of Kuwait who are positively supporting and encouraging the Korean people’s struggle for the independent, peaceful reunification of their country and the building of socialism.
SOME PROBLEMS ARISING IN THE COMPLETE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE THESES ON THE RURAL QUESTION

Speech at the Fourth Session of the Fifth Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea

November 29, 1974

Comrades,

Originally, I had no intention of speaking at this session of the Supreme People’s Assembly. But as deputies have proposed in their speeches that the cooperative farms be made public property, I should like to make a brief comment on this matter.

The chairman of the Chongsan Cooperative Farm, Kangso County, who spoke yesterday made this proposal and the chairpersons of other cooperative farms who took the floor today agreed.

Other cooperative farms also have many people who want to turn cooperative property into public property. When we recently visited a number of cooperative farms, many cooperative farmers said that it was of little use to them to receive a large share of grain and cash, and asked us to let them receive wages like workers on condition that they handed over all their earnings to the state.

Today our cooperative farmers are all prosperous. Immediately after the armistice we adopted the major goal of raising the standard of living of peasants to the standard of the former middle farmers. This
goal has already been reached.

In the old days, few of the middle farmers in our country managed to get over the “barley hump”. Young people of today will not understand what is meant by the words “to be unable to get over the barley hump”. They mean that a year’s crop is not enough to last until the following harvest. We can say that today our farmers’ standard of living has overtaken the middle farmers of those times, and the upper middle farmers of those days as well.

According to the university students who went to help in the country areas last year, the wife of a cooperative farmer gave two 100-won notes to her son in middle school as pocket money when he left for Pyongyang for a tour of study. Two hundred won is a large sum—as much as a month’s pay for a worker doing heavy labour. Now the standard of living of our farmers is so high that they can give a schoolboy son several 100-won notes as pocket money.

This year on many cooperative farms they are expecting that each farmer will receive an average of 200 won in cash per month even after the joint accumulation funds and provisions have been set aside. This shows that a cooperative farmer’s cash income is much higher than a worker’s wage.

Judging from the fact that our farmers’ standard of living has improved so much that many farmers are asking for a changeover of cooperative farms to public ownership, we can agree that the time is ripe to think about turning over cooperative farms to public ownership. But it is a problem that should be handled with discretion.

The conversion of cooperative to public property is a very important matter in the country areas. It is as great an event as agrarian reform in our country in the past and as agricultural cooperativization in its time.

Turning cooperative property over to public ownership is the highest goal longed for by all our cooperative farmers. But the matter cannot be resolved by wishing.

There are two important problems which must be settled for the changeover.
First, cooperative farmers must root out selfishness and arm themselves with collectivist ideas. In other words, all farmers should place the interests of the collective and society above their personal interests and, fully realizing that their share is also included in the interests of the collective and society, should prepare to work devotedly for the collective and society.

At the current SPA session many comrades said that now the ideological consciousness of the farmers has been remodelled to such an extent that a change to public ownership is feasible. It is very good that the farmers’ level of ideological consciousness has risen. Our Party is working hard at getting the farming population to become revolutionary and working class and asks all of them to arm themselves with communist ideas as quickly as they are able to do so. The Party Central Committee rejoices that the level of the farmers’ ideological consciousness has been raised.

The high ideological consciousness of our farmers can be seen clearly even by an analysis of the statistical data on the grain production per kilogramme of effective chemical fertilizer in other countries compared with ours. Now grain production per kilogramme of effective chemical fertilizer is only 25 kilogrammes in such European capitalist countries as the Netherlands, France and West Germany. But in our country it is 35–40 kilogrammes. This is solid evidence that the ideological consciousness of our farmers is incomparably higher than that of farmers in capitalist countries and that our farmers participate sincerely in communal labour.

Although our farmers’ level of ideological consciousness is high, we cannot yet say that it is so high as to make it possible to switch over to public ownership. Some farmers are still deficient in their attitude as masters of the joint economy, and their enthusiasm for strenuous effort for society is not high. We should measure the farmers’ level of ideological consciousness by the yardstick of communism and study it carefully from various angles.

They have lived for a long time within the bounds of private ownership, so their individualistic ideas are very deep-rooted.
Originally the working class had nothing to do with private ownership. Workers are proletarians who went empty-handed to the factory. The only private property workers had was their clothing and a few meagre household utensils. The more prosperous might have had a house, but they were few and far between.

But farmers differ from workers. In days gone by, some of our farmers owned their land and even most of the landless peasants owned a house and a few simple implements, and after liberation all of them had land. Later, at the time of socialist cooperativization, a few of the peasants who had received land after liberation hesitated to join agricultural cooperatives. This alone shows clearly how deep-rooted the small proprietor attitudes and selfish ideas of the peasants are. To wipe away this deep-rooted attitude of self-seeking in the farmers is very difficult, and it cannot be done in a short time.

Production in agriculture has a different characteristic from industry.

In industry, products are manufactured every month and every day, so the results of labour can be assessed accurately and immediately. But agriculture works by the year, so that results can only be assessed correctly after the year’s work is done. In industry an uncompleted monthly quota can be made up the following month. But in agriculture, a season missed can never be regained and this will spoil the year’s farming. This characteristic of agricultural production makes it necessary for the farmers to work with a higher degree of consciousness than the workers. Moreover, since much of the farm work is manual labour and the work is highly seasonal, if the farmers work with conscious zeal and put in a lot of effort, the yields will show an increase and if they lack enthusiasm and put in little effort, the harvest will fall short.

In this way, the ideological consciousness of the farmers exerts a decisive influence on agricultural production and the development of the joint economy. So before we bring the cooperative economy under public ownership, farmers’ thinking has to be remodelled on communist lines.
If cooperative property is turned into public property before the farmers are armed with communist ideas, this could have dire consequences.

This year the per-hectare yield of rice was only 6.8 tons on the Anak State Farm. This is a much lower yield than on the Chongsan Cooperative Farm in Kangso County and the cooperative farms in Mundok and Sukchon Counties. The Anak State Farm has fertile land and the level of mechanization for arable farming is also high because they have had many tractors from the state. Last year we visited that farm and learned that the crop growing was already fully mechanized and the workers’ standard of living there was also high. There is no reason at all why the Anak State Farm has smaller yields than cooperative farms. It has poor yields because the workers lack the enthusiasm of cooperative farmers. There can be no other reason. Under public ownership, farm workers can collect their wages whether they work well or not. So if their ideological education is not adequate, they may not work as hard as the cooperative farmers.

In the past the members of the Kajang Cooperative Farm in Taedong County were reported to be badly off on account of the farm’s weak economic foundation, so we took steps to convert this cooperative farm into a state farm and provide it with a large amount of state funds and machines with a view to improving the farmers’ lives rapidly. But once this cooperative farm became a state farm, women farm workers broke away from it one by one. Women did not stay away from work because nursery facilities were bad or because there were any other bad conditions. The nursery had been developed well and other conditions were also better than before. But they did not go to work. This was all because they had no worries about their living because even though they did not work, their husbands were paid wages and they were supplied with provisions as their husbands’ dependents. Some three years later the farm was again made into a cooperative farm, and the women who had been staying at home turned out to work. This is an example which shows that the peasants are still ideologically backward and still have ideas about living without working.
In Unggi, Ryongyon and Kwail Counties we tried public ownership experimentally on a county scale for more than 10 years and there have been both good and bad results.

In Unggi County agriculture, stock farming, fishing, local industry and all other local economic branches have a unified management, which has the advantage of concentrated use of labour. Both farming and fishing are doing well, because the agricultural workers go fishing in the fishing season and the fishermen help on the farm in the busy farming season.

But the workers of state farms still lag behind the cooperative farmers in protecting and managing state property. If cooperative farms use tractors, they have to pay the state for their hire, and if they misuse common property and damage it, they have to pay compensation out of their earnings, and the farmers’ incomes are that much lower. So, cooperative farmers are not careless with state property or cooperative farm property. But state farms are supplied with farm implements and materials by the state, and if state property is damaged and the farms pay for the losses, this affects the workers’ wages little, so they are not bothered about state property. On cooperative farms there are few cases of management workers using lorries for long journeys for their personal business, but state farm management workers have been known to use lorries as private cars for any trifling errand.

These facts show that the ideological consciousness of our farmers is not yet high enough to make the change to public ownership. So, before we can turn cooperative property over to public ownership the farmers’ level of ideological consciousness must be raised steadily by stepping up the ideological revolution amongst them.

In order to turn the cooperative farms over to public ownership, agricultural production should be highly mechanized while the farmers’ level of ideological consciousness is raised.

Since the change in ideological consciousness is connected with the material foundation and the production relations in society are linked with the level of development of the productive forces, this
Development in agriculture is an important condition for converting cooperative property into public property. Only when a high degree of mechanization, electrification and application of chemistry are achieved in agricultural production to reduce manual farm labour considerably and to do all the basic farming operations by machinery, chemistry and electricity, can we say that a material foundation has been created for turning over cooperative farms to public property.

There are many cooperative farms, including the Chongsan Cooperative Farm, where farm mechanization has reached a high level. But even at the Chongsan Cooperative Farm which falls into the most highly mechanized category in our country, it is far from complete.

They say that at present 70 to 80 man-days are needed to tend one hectare of paddy field on Chongsan Cooperative Farm. This works out at one farmer for four hectares. And there are cooperative farms where a farmer only works one hectare, that is, 300 man-days are put in to cultivate one hectare of paddy. In order to turn over the cooperative farms to public ownership the level of farm mechanization should be raised to a point where a farmer can deal with at least 5 or 6 hectares of paddy and 10 hectares of dry field.

There are units where farm mechanization has reached a very high level. At the agricultural congress this year a woman workteam leader from the Jangnyon Cooperative Farm, Unnyul County, said that she would ensure that each farmer would tend 10 hectares of dry field, and all honour to her, she has carried it out—they say that this year each farmer in workteam No. 10 cultivated 10 hectares of dry field and they harvested 10.3 tons of maize per hectare.

At present on Integrated State Farm No. 5 each worker also tends 10 hectares of dry field; and though the per-hectare yield on this farm is slightly lower than in the flat country, it is the highest for the mountain areas.

From the experience of workteam No. 10 at the Jangnyon Cooperative Farm and also Integrated State Farm No. 5, it is quite feasible for a farmer to cultivate up to 10 hectares of dry field. That is a definite conclusion, drawn from our long experiments.
In order to make our agriculture highly mechanized, more tractors and other farm machinery will be needed in the rural areas. In our opinion, 100 hectares of cultivated land must have at least seven or eight Chollima tractors and three or four smaller tractors, that is, 10-12 tractors all told. In addition to tractors, there must be a large number of different farm machines, including trailers. There must also be loading and unloading machinery, fertilizer-sprayers and ridge-making machines. Every year tractors damage the ridges when ploughing the paddies in the rice-transplanting season, and a large amount of labour is spent on repairing them. This is work which should be mechanized. And the exacting work of pulling up rice seedlings from the nursery beds should also be mechanized.

In addition to supplying much more farm machinery including tractors, land realignment should be properly done for successful farm mechanization. Unless the tiny plots are abolished through realignment, machines cannot get into the fields to work there.

However, land realignment takes time. We cannot afford to leave the fields fallow while this is done, so it must be done while we continue farming, which gives us very little time each year; three months is the maximum, two months after the harvest and one month before the spring ploughing. On top of that, there are not many of the Phungnyon tractors that are necessary for this work. So it will be quite a long time before realignment is completed so that farm work can be fully mechanized.

It will not take very long to increase the number of tractors per 100 hectares of arable land and to supply the necessary trailers. But even though tractors and farm machinery are supplied, it will be quite a long time before realignment is completed so that they can be used to the greatest effect.

A long time ago we emphasized the need to press ahead simultaneously with the struggle to take the ideological and material fortresses in order to build socialism and communism. This is a scientific theory based on a profound analysis of historical experience of revolution and construction.
Since both the questions of raising the farmers’ ideological consciousness and of highly mechanized farm production have to be settled before converting cooperative property to public property, it is obviously still premature to turn over all cooperative farms to public ownership in our country.

For all that, we should not ignore the views the deputies have expressed at this SPA session. We are of the opinion that cooperative farms where the farmers’ ideological level and the level of mechanization are high should first be turned over to public ownership on an experimental basis and then gradually, as the ideological and material preparations are completed, cooperative property should become public property.

When we reorganized agriculture along socialist lines, we decided to advance step by step through the experimental stage at first, and so we were able to carry out agricultural cooperativization smoothly without any deviations. In turning cooperative property into public property, we should also choose and experiment on a few cooperative farms where the farmers are ideologically advanced and the mechanization level is high, and then move forward step by step. As for which cooperative farms should be turned over to public ownership, the Party Central Committee and the Administration Council should decide that after careful consideration.

It is vital to adhere to the socialist principle of distribution on the cooperative farms which are to make the experimental changeover first. Unless the socialist principle of distribution according to the quality and quantity of work is strictly observed, loafers may appear in the country areas. To avoid deviations in converting cooperative property, we shall have to be strict in applying the socialist principle of distribution during the experimental stage. During this stage it will be good to continue with the sub-workteam management system and the workteam premium system now used on cooperative farms.

As a step for turning cooperative property into public property gradually we consider it necessary to put more community funds aside than is now done on the cooperative farms. At present the cooperative
farms’ rate of accumulation is rather low. Cooperative farms should increase the accumulation for community funds to lighten the burden of the state. Then the state will be able to provide more tractors and lorries and trailers to the rural areas.

In order to transfer the cooperative economy to public ownership it is necessary to increase the size of farms a little.

Once public ownership is established, tractors now used on cooperative farms will be placed completely under the control of the farms, and so the question arises whether farms will be able to deal with their maintenance by themselves. At present county organizations look after the tractors in a unified manner with their own technicians and repair shops, so the machines are technically well maintained. But when they are distributed amongst the farms, maintenance could be poor and they might be left to stand idle because there is no adequate repair centre and the technical forces are weak. However, it is impossible to establish a repair centre on every farm or to create such vast technical forces immediately.

In order to make it possible for farms to repair and maintain tractors by themselves, it is necessary to create county-sized farms or to increase the size by dividing the county into some three areas. We are now running three cooperative farms on an experimental basis in Samsok District of Pyongyang. If we organize large farms such as these, the farms will be able to maintain tractors by themselves.

In order to turn cooperative into public property, the cultural revolution must be pressed forward vigorously, in conformity with the policy set forth in the rural theses, to expand the ranks of technical personnel in the rural areas, such as agricultural technicians, mechanics and electricians, and to raise the general technical and cultural levels of the farming population. Technical education in schools should be intensified so that all senior secondary school leavers can drive tractors and cars.

In addition, one of the important problems that will arise in turning cooperative property into public property is to develop the county well and increase its functions.
The changeover of cooperative farms should be conducted in county units; the county is the most appropriate unit for guiding agriculture.

In fact, it is necessary to make the change on a few farms on an experimental basis to prevent problems which might arise in the changeover, but the county should always be the unit in turning over cooperative farms to public property. If some farms in a county were included and others not, this could create various anomalies.

If, for instance, out of the ten cooperative farms in Kangso County five developed farms including the Chongsan and Jamjin Cooperative Farms made the change and the other five farms remained cooperatives, the county would have two different supply and two different guidance systems for agriculture, which would create complications and make it difficult to coordinate agricultural guidance and management.

Therefore, the fundamental policy should be to make the changeover to public property in county units, only after developing all the cooperative farms in the county on an even basis by putting the backward farms on their feet quickly.

To make the change in county units, it is very important to develop the counties better and make them play a more active part.

The general material and technical foundations of counties still tend to be weak, as we can see this clearly from the fact that this year when yields have increased sharply counties have failed to deal with the grain speedily.

This year our grain harvest was much higher than last year; on many cooperative farms the output more than doubled. This is an amazing fact. Yet the state has failed to provide material backing to keep pace with this rapid growth of agricultural production. The cooperative farms are short of transport for their grain, and their granaries and rice mill capacities are inadequate. In particular, the threshing capacity of cooperative farms is well below the mark.

The thresher now available to a cooperative farm workteam can only handle ten tons of rice a day. If a workteam has an average of 120
hectares of paddies and a yield of ten tons per hectare, the workteam has 1,200 tons to thresh. With a daily thresher capacity of 10 tons, 1,200 tons of rice will take 120 days, that is, four months. If threshing takes a long time, a great deal of grain will be lost. According to a rough estimate, 150,000-200,000 tons of rice are lost every year because it is not threshed promptly; it is eaten by rats and birds or lost when sheaves of rice keep being moved.

The capacity of cooperative farm drying grounds is also very small. That is why grain which is not dry enough has to be put into granaries. We used to worry about the shortage of grain, and now we are worried because we have too much to handle.

All this shows that there are many problems yet to be solved in laying the material and technical foundations of agriculture.

The counties’ material and technical foundations for agricultural production are still weak and, on top of that, the level of guidance by county Party committees and county cooperative farm management committees is still failing to keep abreast of the farmers’ enthusiasm. In other words, the political and ideological guidance and technical guidance given by the county organizations do not yet meet the farmers’ requirements.

Where the county Party committees and the county cooperative farm management committees guide work efficiently and the county organizations play their part properly, everything goes smoothly, and where they do not, it does not do so.

This year farming was better done in South Phyongan Province than in other provinces because the senior personnel on county Party committees and county cooperative farm management committees did their work well. This year the senior officials of counties in South Phyongan Province spent nearly all their time guiding cooperative farms on the spot in work clothes. The farmers in this province worked tenaciously to make effective use of tractors and other farm machines and to carry through the Party’s policy under the guidance of county officials. As a result, they brought in a rich harvest.

In Sinyang, Yangdok, Maengsan and Taehung Counties which are
situated in the remote mountain recesses in South Phyongan Province a
good crop was also reaped this year. In these counties 100 per cent of
the maize seedlings were grown in humus soil before being bedded out
this year as instructed by the Party. And that is by no means easy. In
other provinces humus-growing of maize seedlings was not done on
any large scale, and, what is worse, in some provinces it was done on
only a small scale. The fact that all maize seedlings were humus-grown
in the mountain counties of South Phyongan Province shows clearly
how consistently their senior personnel and farmers have worked to
carry out the Party’s policy.

As we always say, we have no county with more sterile land than
Changsong County. All the good land in Changsong County was
submerged when Suphung Lake was created and the existing fields are
nearly all on steep slopes. This year, however, Changsong County also
reaped a good crop. This, too, is because the senior officials of
Changsong County did their work with people well and gave effective
technical guidance in farming on the cooperative farms.

The Party has already clearly charted the line and policy for
developing the rural economy. Our Party put forward the Theses on the
Socialist Rural Question in Our Country ten years ago and even
adopted a law aimed at carrying out the tasks set out in the theses at the
Third Session of the Third Supreme People’s Assembly held in March
that year. The validity of the rural theses has certainly been
substantiated by the proud achievements of the past ten years.

A new system of agricultural guidance has also been established by
our Party. The advantages of the new agricultural guidance system
with the county cooperative farm management committee as the axis
plus industrial guidance methods have been proved in practice.

Our Party put forward a correct line and policy, and has consistently
helped and advised officials in the lower organs to carry them out
correctly. Every year our Party summoned senior county officials to
the centre to teach them, and often sent out people to counties to help
them. There is no province and no county which is not reached by
direct guidance from our Party.
In the past the Party set out a policy for all counties and passed on good ideas and gave direct guidance to all alike. But some counties raised good crops while others failed. It always depends on whether county Party organizations are working well or not and whether they are capable of working with people, that is, working with officials and farmers, and whether county cooperative farm management committees provide sufficient supplies and technical guidance to the rural areas or not. However excellent the Party documents or laws, these will be mere scraps of paper if the organizational and political work is not done to implement them. And however fine the agricultural guidance system, its advantages will remain dormant if the senior personnel do not work hard.

For a long time we have underlined the need to develop counties properly and improve their work. And now that the question of turning cooperative property into public property has been placed on the agenda, it has become more urgent than ever.

We must improve the work done by county Party committees and county cooperative farm management committees, so that the counties give more effective political, ideological and technical guidance to agriculture.

The material and technical foundations of counties must also be consolidated.

First, the transport capacity of counties has to be increased. Some time ago, when we inspected cooperative farms in the mountain areas we saw stacks of maize left in the fields because of the lack of transport, and in the plains sheaves of rice were lying in the paddies. This year many workteams harvested ten tons of rice per hectare. Suppose each workteam has 120 hectares of paddy fields. Then, there will be 2,400 tons of rice and straw to transport, more than could possibly be carried by the farm’s own tractors. And the existing tractors cannot only be used for transport purposes. They must meanwhile plough the fields before the ground is frozen.

Therefore, strong measures are needed to increase the capacity of county transport. The state should produce more lorries and supply them
to counties to increase their motor transport capacity so that the rapidly-increasing loads in the country areas can be dealt with promptly.

Tractor repair bases must also be developed properly in the counties.

No one can say that the number of tractors supplied to our cooperative farms is small. The cooperative farms have a large number of tractors, but the level of utilization is low because the supply of spare parts is inadequate. At present many tractors stand idle on cooperative farms for lack of tyres and spare parts.

It is of little use to increase the tractor fleet without organizing speedy repairs to keep the ones you do have running. Each county should have its tractor repair bases established properly so that they are able to repair the tractors in the county.

Local industries in counties should also be further developed to improve the supply of commodities to the farm villages.

With the rise in their living standards, the farmers largely want not only fine clothes and shoes but also high-grade furniture and good-quality consumer durables such as washing machines, refrigerators, sewing machines, TV sets and bicycles. These demands cannot be satisfied by the products of central industry alone. Therefore, in each province a cornstarch factory should be developed as well as a bicycle factory, and steps must be taken to manufacture sewing machines, washing machines and refrigerators. A larger number of food-processing factories and various other local industry factories should also be built in counties.

If the material and technical foundations of the counties are to be developed well, the state has to increase investments and give more assistance to them. The state should also provide early supplies of the machine tools needed to develop repair bases in the counties.

At present, assistance to the rural areas is not as active as demanded by the Party. This is because even now some officials retain the former disparaging attitudes to the country areas. Agriculture is one of the two major branches of the national economy. It is more difficult to develop agriculture than industry, because agriculture cannot develop without
material and technical support from industry. Therefore, the administrative and economic officials must do away with the remnants of the capitalist ideas that neglect the countryside and must give it more support.

In developing the counties it is important to give full scope to local initiative while strengthening state support. The county officials should make a positive effort to develop their county by themselves on the principle of self-reliance.

Every one of our counties has large factories and enterprises. If their workers are determined to give rural areas more help, it ought not to be so difficult to lay the material foundation for the counties. At present Kangso County of South Phyongan Province alone has scores of times as many machine tools as the whole country had immediately after liberation. If the county officials organized things properly and launched the let-each-machine-tool-make-more movement, they would be able to develop as good farm machine repair centres in the county as anyone could wish for.

All county officials must make a thorough study of methods to develop their county so as to satisfy the farmers’ needs for turning cooperative property into public property in accordance with the message in the discussion at the current SPA session, and must work responsibly and hard to bring about the farmers’ desire as soon as possible.

I should like to emphasize once again that we must approach the question of changing over cooperative farms to public ownership very carefully. The view of the deputies who suggested at this session that cooperative farms should be turned over to public ownership is right; it reflects the farmers’ own desire for swift advance. However, the desire and putting it into practice do not always correspond in time. We cannot yet say that the ideological and material preparations for changing over cooperative ownership to public ownership have been completed. Therefore, we should not be hasty in making this change, but deal with it prudently by analysing its advantages and possible difficulties carefully from every angle.

It is important for the moment that while a few cooperative farms are
turned over to public ownership and we accumulate experience in operating them, the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions should be accelerated energetically in the country areas to make good ideological and material preparations for changing over all cooperative farms to public ownership. All comrades present at this session should make a further study of the way to turn cooperative into public property efficiently and discuss the matter widely with the cooperative farmers.

In conclusion, I should like to say a few words on the grain goal of 10 million tons.

Our Party has set the target of 10 million tons of grain production, and reaching this target should not be too difficult. When we proposed the 10-point long-term goal of economic construction, we estimated that the target of 10 million tons of grain would be reached at the end of the next long-term plan. But now it appears that it will not take so long to hit this target. There is no need to regard this as an obscure goal.

There are still many reserves for increasing grain production. The intermediate zones, in particular, have great reserves. If advanced farming methods are introduced and crops are raised scientifically in these zones, the grain yields can still be increased a great deal. In the mountain areas, too, there can be great reserves for grain production, once the seed problem is solved.

We can increase grain production considerably if we build humus-soil factories quickly, and raise all maize seedlings in humus soil before bedding them out and then spread this soil over the fields.

In the whole country good land realigning alone will put another 100,000 hectares under crops. This is a tremendous reserve of land which can be obtained much more easily than reclaiming tidelands. We can find as many reserves as we search for.

At the present session, many comrades have said quite confidently that they can achieve the 10 million-ton goal at an early date. Your comments that this goal can be met within the coming few years are correct: it is perfectly feasible.

It is our belief that you will definitely attain the 10 million-ton goal in two or three years, as you yourselves have resolved to do.
CONGRATULATORY MESSAGE

To the Workers, Technicians and Office Employees
Who Have Participated in the Construction
of the Large Blast Furnace of the Kim Chaek Iron
and Steel Complex
December 31, 1974

On behalf of the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic, I wish to offer my warm congratulations and thanks to the workers, technicians, office employees and designers of the construction agencies and other enterprises, who have contributed to building the large blast furnace of the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex in a short space of time and to producing the first molten iron. In order to do this they conducted a forceful “speed campaign” by fully displaying their boundless loyalty to the Party and the revolutionary zeal, upholding the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea.

Allow me also to express my congratulations and thanks to the workers, technicians and office employees of the factories and enterprises who were in charge of the supplies of materials and the production of equipment ordered for the construction of the furnace, as well as to those who volunteered to take part in this project.

Supporting the decisions of the Fifth Congress of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee, you widely introduced the Juche-oriented method of building operations and showed mass heroism to the full, smashing flunkeyism, dogmatism, conservatism and fear in construction
technique. As a result, you built the large blast furnace by your own efforts in slightly over six months, which would have taken other people several years. Thus you achieved a proud success in carrying out your assignments set by the Party with credit.

By erecting the large furnace in a short period while braving many hardships and difficulties, you have opened up bright prospects for fulfilling the goal of steel production of the Six-Year Plan and our Party’s programme of great socialist construction far ahead of schedule. You have successfully discharged your duty as a shock brigade, as pioneers, in the general advance campaign for great socialist construction.

Your unparalleled deeds are another great revolutionary demonstration of the heroic spirit and inexhaustible creativity of the Korean working class, who accept our Party’s policies unquestioningly and hold them in good faith and continue to advance, upholding the revolutionary policy of the “speed campaign” and “finish-one-thing-at-a-time tactics” set by the Party.

Your successes are a brilliant example which gives a strong encouragement and stimulus to all the Party members and working people, who are endeavouring to attain all the goals of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and step up the general advance campaign for great socialist construction under the banner of the three revolutions.

We have the heavy and honourable task of carrying out all the goals of the Six-Year Plan ahead of the set time by the 30th anniversary of the foundation of the Party and of making good preparations for the successful fulfilment of the tremendous ten long-term objectives, by vigorously expediting socialist economic construction, with pride in having reached the goal of grain production of the Six-Year Plan by harvesting a bumper crop this year.

Steel always stands for Height 1211 in attaining higher goals of the socialist economy.

You must continue to carry out your honourable duty brilliantly as a shock brigade, as pioneers, to scale this Height 1211.

You should never rest on your laurels, but should expedite the
“speed campaign”, as you have done so far, upholding the banner of the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions. Thus, you should ensure that the coke oven, the hot rolling shop and the pipeline between Musan and Chongjin and all other works which are now under construction, start operating sooner so as to increase steel production drastically.

You should, first of all, equip yourselves with the Juche idea of our Party more firmly and continually revolutionize and working-classize yourselves, so that you can thoroughly establish the revolutionary habit of defending and carrying the Party’s policies through to the end, unconditionally, in any adversity.

You should bear deep in your minds the great honour and pride of taking the lead in the fight for great socialist construction, create new speeds ceaselessly by means of “finish-one-thing-at-a-time tactics” and “lightning operation”, and show to the full a high sense of responsibility and creative initiative in a way worthy of masters of the revolution and construction.

You must always conduct a dynamic collective technical innovation drive in a spirited, vigorous, bold and broad way and introduce new methods of building operations and up-to-date techniques, thereby implementing the Party’s policy of capital construction thoroughly.

You should carry into effect the requirements of the Taean work system thoroughly to put enterprise management on a regular and normal footing, and implement the Chongsanri spirit and the Chongsanri method in all fields. In this way you should manage the economy of the country assiduously, further strengthen the struggle for increased production and economy and construct more, faster and better with the existing equipment, manpower and materials.

At the same time, with the intensification and development of the Chollima Workteam Movement, you should see that the communist way of work and life—“One for all and all for one”—pervades the collective and society.

Senior officials must be deeply concerned about providing the
builders with suitable conditions for rest and living and further improve supply services for them so that they can devote all their energies to construction work.

I firmly believe that the workers, technicians, office employees and all the volunteers in the erection of the large blast furnace will, in future too, uphold the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea and accelerate the speed of construction to the maximum with an attitude befitting the masters of the revolution so that they will make great, new strides in building monumental structures in order to fulfil the Six-Year National Economic Plan and the great, long-term objectives of the socialist economic plan, and thus live up to the Party’s expectations and trust with a loyal heart.